Content

A-Z

OWNER'S MANUAL.

BMW X5.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B64677 - II/25

WELCOME TO BMW.

Owner's Manual.

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with the vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest the following:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle. It contains important notes on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and traffic safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. After a vehicle software update – such as a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

You can find supplementary information in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable ride.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B64677 - II/25

TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update – such as a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

NOTES

Information 6

QUICK REFERENCE

Getting in 16
Set-up and use 19
On the road 22

CONTROLS

Dashboard 30
Sensors of the vehicle 35
Operating state of the vehicle 40
BMW iDrive 44
BMW Remote Software Upgrade 60
Personal settings 64
Opening and closing 70
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel 100
Transporting children safely 115
Driving 121
Displays 135
Light and view 156
Safety 168
Driving stability control systems 207
Driver assistance systems 213
Parking 242
Driving comfort 272
Climate control 279
Interior equipment 298
Storage compartments 306
Cargo area 311

DRIVING TIPS

Things to remember when driving 320
Trailer and rear carrier 327
Saving fuel 336

MOBILITY

Refueling 340
Wheels and tires 342
Engine compartment 373
Operating fluids 376
Maintenance 383
Replacing components 385
Breakdown Assistance 390
Vehicle care 397

REFERENCE

Technical data 404
Appendix 409
Everything from A to Z 410

© 2025 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English ID8 II/25, -
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B64677 - II/25

Information

Using this Owner's Manual

Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

For an overview of the vehicle, we recommend reading the Quick Reference Guide in the Owner's Manual.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update such as via Remote Software Upgrade the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication is available as a printed book from an authorized service center.

The topics are also discussed in the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Media at a glance

General information

The contents of the Owner's Manual are available in various media formats. The following Owner's Manual media formats are available:

- ▷ Printed Owner's Manual.
- ▷ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Printed Owner's Manual

The printed Owner's Manual shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Principle

The Integrated Owner's Manual shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the control display.

Selecting the Owner's Manual

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Owner's Manual"
4. Select the desired method of accessing the contents.

Scrolling through the Owner's Manual

Swipe up or down until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context help

General information

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be accessed from any menu. Depending on the selected function, either the associated description or the main menu of the Integrated Owner's Manual will be displayed.

Selecting context help from a menu

1. Press and hold the desired menu item.
2. "General help"

Selecting context help from a Check Control message

Directly from the Check Control message on the control display:

"Owner's Manual"

Supplementary documentation

The media included with the Owner's Manual is supplemented by additional documents, e.g., Supplementary Owner's Manuals, brochures, or inserts. Supplementary Owner's Manuals or brochures contain, for example, information on special models or information that must be communicated in printed form due to legal requirements. Inserts may include different information than that given in the media included with the Owner's Manual. Follow all additional documents that may be enclosed with the onboard literature.

Additional sources of information

Authorized service center

An authorized service center, e.g., a BMW dealer or service center, will be happy to answer any questions you may have.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW such as on technology are available on the Internet: www.bmwusa.com.

BMW Driver's Guide app

The BMW Driver's Guide app shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver's Guide Web

The BMW Driver's Guide website shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models. The BMW Driver's Guide Web can be displayed in any current browser.

Icons and displays

Icons in the Owner's Manual

Icon	Meaning
⚠	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
♻	Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.
"..."	Texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.
›...‹	Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.
››...‹‹	Responses generated by the voice activation system.

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as a numbered list. These steps must be carried out in the order shown.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

Bulletpoint lists

Items or actions without strict order or alternative options are shown as a bulletpoint list.

- First possibility.
- Second possibility.

Icons on vehicle parts

This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Manual.

Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models, i.e., model series. Therefore, this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates equipment, systems and functions that are not available in a vehicle, for example due to the following situations:

- Selected optional equipment.
- National-market version or national-market equipment.
- Options for later release and software update.

This also applies to safety functions and systems.

Before starting a journey, verify whether the described equipment or function is available in the vehicle. For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

A claim for the availability of equipment, a system or a function in the vehicle cannot be derived based on the description in the Owner's Manual.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any equipment and models not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to any supplementary documentation included, e.g., Supplementary Owner's Manuals, inserts.

An authorized service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to the vehicle.

Status of the Owner's Manual

Basic information

The manufacturer of the vehicle pursues a policy of constant development to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may deviate from those in the vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update such as via Remote Software Upgrade the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

For Your Own Safety

Intended use

Heed the following when using the vehicle:

- ▷ Owner's Manual.
- ▷ Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- ▷ Technical vehicle data.
- ▷ The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- ▷ Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty

The vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applicable in the country of first delivery, also known as homologation. If the vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt the vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and registration requirements. Noncompliance with homologation requirements in a certain country may affect warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, for instance the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The vehicle manufacturer therefore recommends having corresponding work performed by an authorized service center, e.g., a BMW dealer or service center. If a different repair shop is selected, BMW recommends selecting a workshop that performs corresponding work such as maintenance and repair according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel. In the Owner's Manual, such workshops are referred to as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is not carried out properly, for instance maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damages and related safety risks.

Improperly performed work on the vehicle paintwork can lead to a failure or fault of components, e.g., the radar sensors, and thereby result in a safety hazard.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by BMW.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from an authorized service center.

BMW parts and accessories have been tested by BMW for their safety and suitability in BMW vehicles.

BMW warrants genuine BMW parts and accessories.

BMW does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. BMW does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for BMW vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California, the law requires vehicle manufacturers to provide the following warning:

WARNING

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of Automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. The vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet.

The vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate the vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt the vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for maintenance measures:

- BMW maintenance system.

  Maintenance, refer to page 383.
- Maintenance Booklet, available online and accessible via a QR code in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet.
- Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

If the vehicle is not maintained or is improperly maintained, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle.

A failure to maintain the vehicle or improper maintenance may affect your warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Refer to section on engine oil change regarding recommended service intervals for oil changes.

Data memory

General information

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Electronic control units process data they receive from vehicle sensors, self-generate or exchange with each other. Some control units are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance while driving, for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control units facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is marked with a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, the vehicle owner can be identified with the vehicle identification number, license plate and corresponding authorities. In addition, there are other ways to associate data collected from the vehicle with the driver or vehicle owner, e.g., the ConnectedDrive account used.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data to operate the vehicle.

This includes, for example:

- Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel RPM, wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration, engaged seat belt indicator.
- Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The processed data is only processed in the vehicle itself while the vehicle is being operated. Data is not stored beyond the operating time.

Electronic components, e.g. control units and vehicle keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle condition, component usage, maintenance recommendations, events or faults can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally documents the state of a component, a module, a system, or the surrounding area, for instance:

- Operating states of system components such as fill levels, tire pressure, battery status.
- Malfunctions and faults in important system components, for instance lights and brakes.
- Responses by the vehicle to special driving situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the driving stability control systems.
- Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required to perform the control unit functions. Furthermore, it also serves to detect and correct malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions.

The majority of this data is stored temporarily and is only processed within the vehicle itself. In some circumstances the vehicle may store some data for an additional but limited period of time.

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

An authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The diagnostic socket required by law in the vehicle is used to read out data.

The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the service network. The data documents technical conditions of the vehicle, which can be used to determine vehicle maintenance status, and facilitate quality improvement.

Vehicle fault and event memories can be reset by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop when performing repair or servicing work.

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified or reset at any time.

This includes, for example:

- ▷ Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- ▷ Chassis and air conditioning settings.

If necessary, data can be transferred to the entertainment and communication system of the vehicle, for instance via smartphone.

This includes the following depending on the respective equipment:

- ▷ Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- ▷ Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- ▷ Entered navigation destinations.
- ▷ Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time.

This data is only transmitted to third parties upon personal request as part of the use of online services. The transmission depends on the selected settings for the use of the services.

Incorporation of mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle operating elements.

The sound and picture from the mobile devices can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile devices at the same time. Depending on the type of incorporation, this includes, for instance, position data and other general vehicle information. This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle such as active access to vehicle data.

How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, it will enable data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for instance smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and

apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's web page. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection may also be found on the manufacturer's website. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for instance with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose.

Any collection, processing, and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on a legal permission, contractual arrangement or consent. It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. This excludes functions and services required by law such as Assist systems.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

Event data recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of this component is to record data that will help understand how vehicle systems performed in certain crash or near-crash situations, e.g., airbag deployment or a collision with a road obstacle. The event data recorder is designed to record data on driving dynamics and safety systems for a short time of max. 30 seconds, typically less.

This vehicle's event data recorder is designed to record data on the following, for example:

- ▷ How the vehicle's various systems performed.
- ▷ Whether or not the driver and passenger seat belts were fastened.
- ▷ How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- ▷ How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Under normal driving conditions, no data is recorded by the event data recorder and no personal data is stored, e.g., name, gender, age, and accident location.

However, other parties, e.g., law enforcement agencies, may combine the recorded data with the personally identifiable data that is routinely collected during a crash investigation.

Special equipment and access to the vehicle or event data recorder are required to read out recorded data. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, e.g., law enforcement agencies, may have the special equipment necessary to read this information if these parties have access to the vehicle or event data recorder.

Vehicle identification number

General information

Depending on the national-market equipment, the vehicle identification number is located in different positions in the vehicle. This chapter describes all possible positions for the series.

Engine compartment

The engraved vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Right nameplate

The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Left nameplate

The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the left-hand side of the vehicle.

Windshield

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

iDrive

It is also possible to display the vehicle identification number via iDrive.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Vehicle ID (VIN):"

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that the vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

Getting in

Opening and closing

Vehicle key

Buttons on the vehicle key.

Icon	Meaning
	Unlock.
	Lock. Pre-conditioning.
	Open the cargo area.
	Panic mode. Pathway lighting.

Access to vehicle interior

Unlocking with the vehicle key

Press the button on the vehicle key.

If only the driver's door and fuel filler flap have been unlocked due to the settings in place, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

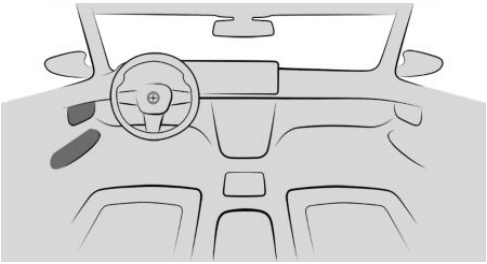
Locking with the vehicle key

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

All vehicle access points are locked.

Buttons for the central locking system

Overview



The central locking buttons are located on the front door.

Lock.

Unlock.

Locking the vehicle

Press the button with the front doors closed.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

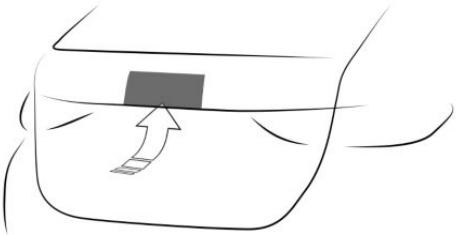
▷ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.

▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Access to the cargo area

Opening the cargo area

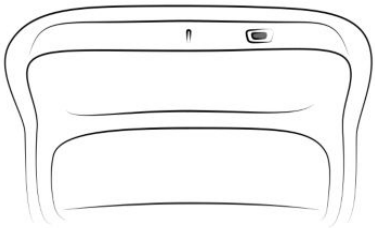


▷ Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the cargo area.

▷ Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Depending on the setting, the doors may be unlocked.

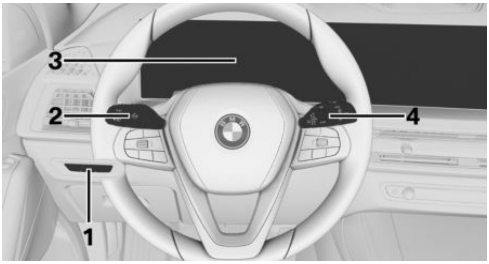
Closing the cargo area



Press the button on the inside of the cargo area.

Displays, operating elements

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



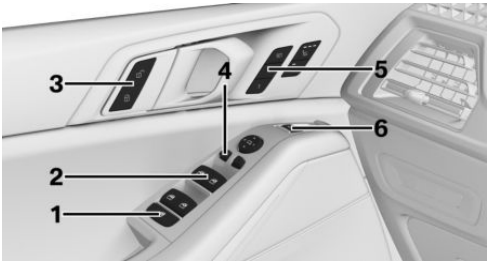
1 Light switch
2 Turn signal, high-beam headlights
3 Instrument cluster
4 Wipers

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator/warning lights can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and illuminate temporarily when drive-ready state is turned on.

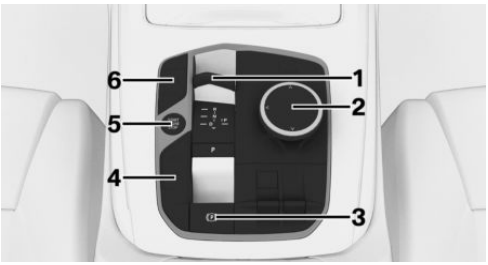
Driver's door



1 Safety switch
2 Power window
3 Central locking system
4 Exterior mirrors

5 Seats, comfort features
6 Cargo area

Switch console



1 Selector lever
2 Controller
3 Parking brake, Automatic Hold
4 Driving Experience Control
5 Start/Stop button
6 Assistance systems

BMW iDrive

Principle

BMW iDrive is the vehicle's display and operating concept and includes a wide range of functions.

Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
HOME	Call up the main menu.
MEDIA	Call up the Media/Radio menu.
TEL	Go to Phone menu.
MAP	Call up the navigation map.
NAV	Call up the destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Go to previous menu.
OPTION	Call up the Options menu.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Principle

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is a personal assistant that enables natural voice operation of various vehicle functions.

Activating the voice control system

1. Press the button on the steering wheel briefly.
2. Say the command.

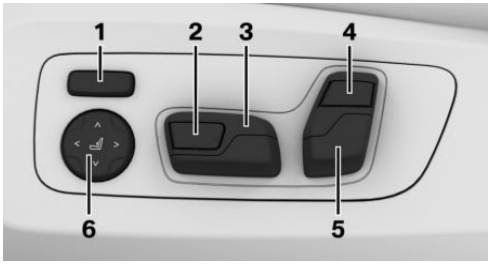
Canceling voice control

▷ Press the button on the steering wheel again.
▷ ›Cancel‹
▷ Slide the Controller to the right or left.
▷ Press the Controller.

Set-up and use

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

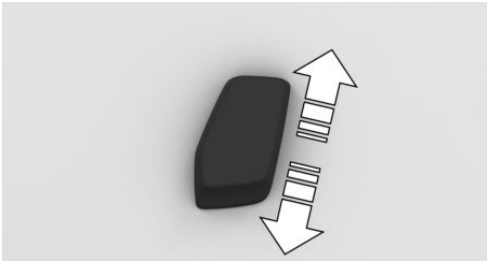
Adjusting seats



1 Backrest width
2 Thigh support
3 Longitudinal direction/height/seat tilt
4 Upper backrest
5 Backrest tilt/head restraint
6 Lumbar support

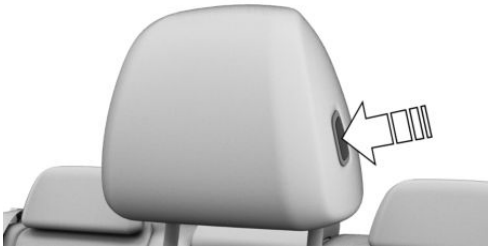
Adjusting the head restraint

Adjusting the height



Press switch up or down.

Adjusting the distance



- ▷ Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- ▷ Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

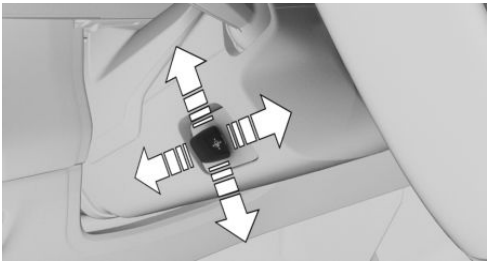
Side extensions

Fold the side extensions forward to increase side support.

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

Icon	Meaning
	Fold the exterior mirrors in and out.
	Adjust the exterior mirrors.
	Select exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor.

Adjusting the steering wheel position



Press the switch to adjust the steering wheel forward/back position and height to the seat position.

Memory function

Principle

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Exterior mirror adjustment.
- ▷ Steering wheel position.
- ▷ Height of the Head-up display.

Overview

The memory buttons are located on the front doors.

Storing settings

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the button. The LED illuminates.
3. Press the desired memory button as long as the LED is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired memory button 1 or 2.

Infotainment

Navigation destination input

1. Navigation menu
2. "Destination input"

   A search box and entered information such as the search history are displayed.
3. Select the desired entry or the search box.
4. When selecting the search box, enter characters or choose one of the POI categories displayed.

   If necessary, select OK to display more information, e.g., a map preview.

   If necessary, accept the suggested search keywords.

5. Select the desired entry.
6. "Start guidance"

Entertainment

Depending on model variant, the center console or instrument panel provide the following operating elements:

Operating element	Function
	Turn the volume button to adjust the volume. Press the volume button to turn off sound output. Pressing the button again restores the previous volume setting.
MEDIA	Change the entertainment source.
⏮ ⏭	Press once: changes the station/track. Press and hold: fast forward/rewind the track.

Using the mobile phone

General information

After the mobile phone is connected once to the vehicle, the mobile phone can be operated using iDrive and the steering wheel buttons.

Activate Bluetooth® on the mobile phone.

Connecting via Bluetooth®

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Connect new device"

   Mobile phones in range are displayed on the control display.
5. Select the desired mobile phone.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number in the display of the mobile phone, and confirm that they match.
7. If necessary, select the connection mode:

   "Use Bluetooth®"

The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Accepting a call

Depending on the equipment, incoming calls can be answered in several ways.

▷ Via iDrive:

"Accept"

▷ Press the telephone function button on the steering wheel.

Dialing a number

1. Bring up the Communication menu.
2. "More"
3. "Dial number"
4. Enter the desired digits.
5. Select the icon for calling. The connection is established via the mobile phone to which this function has been assigned.

On the road

Driving

Drive-ready state

Turning on the drive-ready state

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

Turning off drive-ready state

1. While the vehicle is stationary, depress the brake and engage selector lever position P.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The READY indicator goes out and a signal tone sounds.

The drive-ready state is switched off automatically if the driver's seat belt is not buckled when the driver's door is opened.

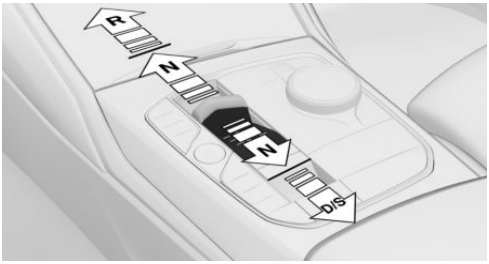
Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function helps to conserve fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic jam or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains switched on. The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.
- By the driver assistance systems activated, depending on vehicle equipment and driving situation.

Automatic transmission

Engaging selector lever position D, N, R, S



- D is drive.
- N Neutral.
- Reverse R.
- S Sport mode.

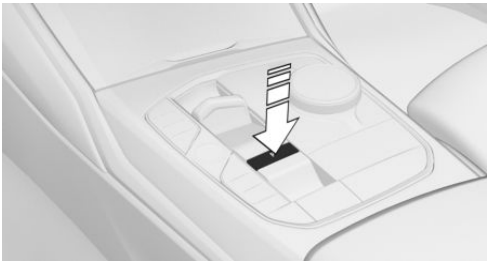
To prevent the vehicle from moving after engaging drive or reverse, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to drive off.

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

Sport program: the gearshift behavior is designed for a sportier driving behavior.

Engaging selector lever position P

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.



Press button P.

Parking brake

Setting the parking brake

Pull the switch.

The LED on the switch and the indicator light in the instrument cluster are illuminated.

Releasing the parking brake

With drive-ready state switched on:

Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set.

The LED and the indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

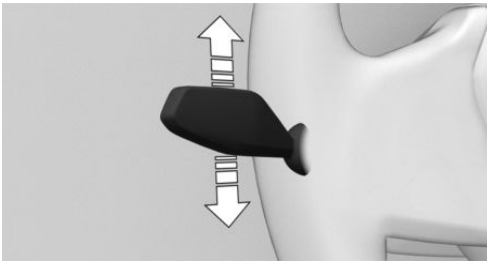
Parking

Make sure the parking brake is engaged.

Light and view

Turn signal, high-beam headlights, headlight flasher

Turn signal



- ▷ Flashing: press the lever past the resistance point.
- ▷ One-touch signaling: lightly tap the lever up or down.
- ▷ Brief flashing: press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flashing.

High-beam headlights, headlight flasher

Press the lever forward or pull it backward.

- ▷ High-beam headlights on, arrow 1.

  The high-beam headlights illuminate when the low-beam headlights are switched on.
- ▷ High-beam headlights off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Lights and lighting

Buttons in the vehicle

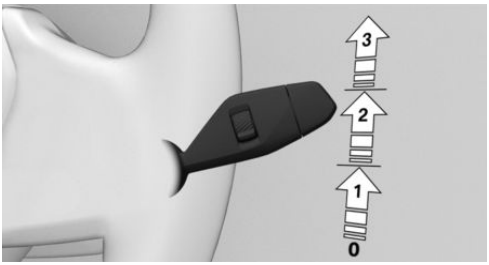
Icon	Function
	Exterior lighting menu.
D/AUTO	Automatic headlight control. Low-beam headlights. Exterior lighting off.
OFF	Exterior lighting off.

Functions via iDrive

Icon	Function
AUTO	Automatic headlight control.
D	Low-beam headlights.
D	Parking lights.
OFF	Exterior lighting off.
P	Left roadside parking light.
P	Right roadside parking light.

Window wiper system

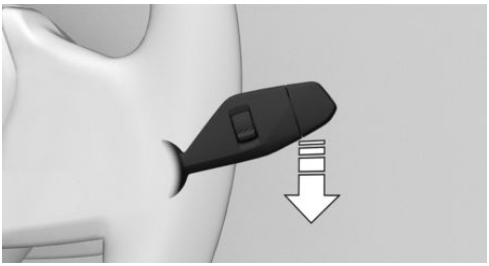
Turning on window wiper system



Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▷ Rest position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor mode, position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

Turning off the window wiper system and flick wipe

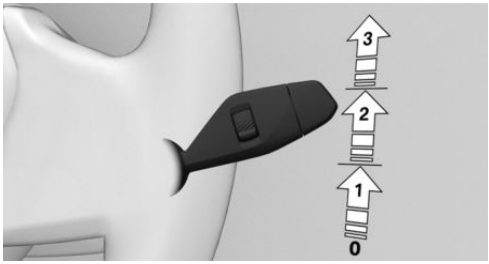


Press the lever down.

- ▷ Turning off: press the lever down until it reaches the 0 position.
- ▷ Flick wipe: press the lever down from the 0 position.

  The lever automatically returns to its 0 position when released.

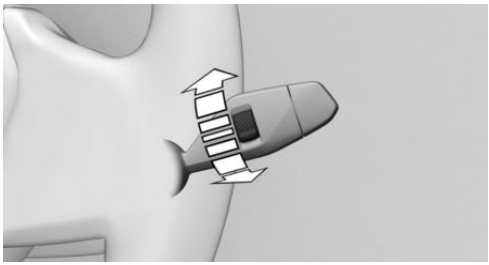
Activating/deactivating rain sensor



Enable: press lever up once from the 0 position, arrow 1.

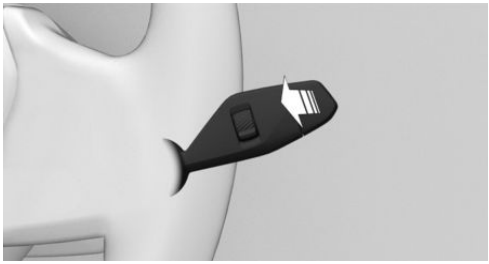
Disable: press lever back into the 0 position.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel on the wiper lever.

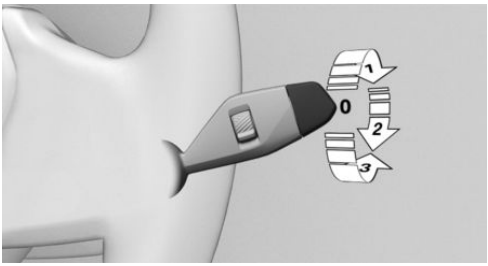
Cleaning the windshield



Pull the lever.

Rear wiper

Switching on the rear wiper



Turn the outer switch upward.

- ▷ Resting position of wiper, position 0.
- ▷ Intermittent operation, arrow 1. When reverse gear is engaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

Clean the rear window

Turn the outer switch in the desired direction.

- ▷ In rest position: Turn the switch downward, arrow 3. The switch returns to its rest position when released.
- ▷ In intermittent operation: turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch automatically returns to its interval position when released.

Climate control

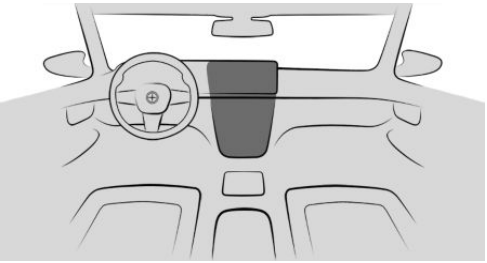
Climate control functions

Functions in the Climate menu

Icon	Function
⏻	Turn the air conditioning system on/off.
AUTO	Automatic program.

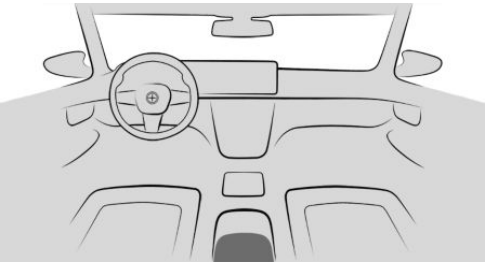
Icon	Function
72.0°F	Temperature.
A/C	Air conditioning.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
	Air recirculation mode.
A	Automatic recirculated-air control.
	Fresh air.
	Air flow.
	Air distribution.
SYNC	SYNC program.
	Seat and armrest heating.
	Active seat ventilation.
	Steering wheel heating.

Buttons, air conditioning system



Icon	Function
MAX	Defrost function.
REAR	Rear window defroster.

Buttons, rear air conditioning system



Icon	Function
AUTO	Automatic program.
▲ ▼	Temperature.
A/C	Air conditioning.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.

Icon	Function
OFF	Air flow.
	Air distribution.
	Seat and armrest heating.

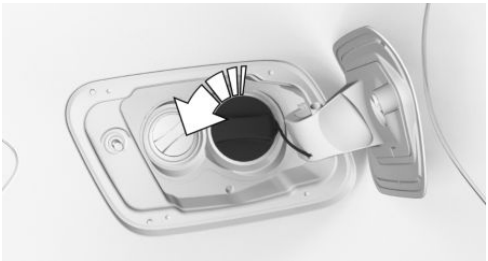
Intermediate stop

Refueling

Fuel filler cap

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.

2. Open the fuel filler cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel filler cap in the bracket on the fuel filler flap.

Wheels and tires

Tire pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure specifications can be found in the tire inflation pressure table in the printed Owner's Manual.

After correcting the tire pressure

If equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitor, the corrected tire pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made. With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the control display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM).

If equipped with a flat tire monitor, reinitialize the flat tire monitor.

Checking the tire pressure

Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed:

- ▷ At least twice a month.
- ▷ Before embarking on an extended trip.

Electronic oil measurement

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Engine oil level"

Adding engine oil

General information

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Adding engine oil

1. Opening the hood.
2. Open the lid counterclockwise.

3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the lid.

Providing assistance

Hazard warning system

Hazard warning system button

BMW Assistance

Contact BMW Assistance for information and support for all aspects of the vehicle.

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. If necessary, select the desired service.

   A voice connection to the selected service is established.

Dashboard

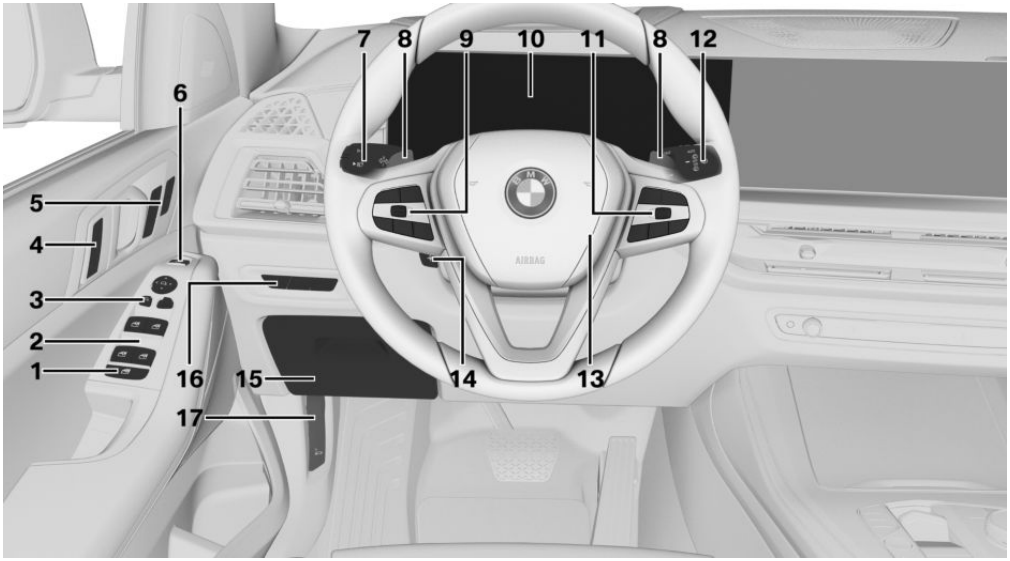
Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Safety switch for the windows and roller sunblinds 95

2 Power window 93

3 Operating the exterior mirrors 111

4 Central locking system 87

Unlocking the vehicle

Locking the vehicle

5 Seating comfort features

Front passenger seat functionality 103

Memory function 113

Massage function 100

6 Opening and closing cargo area 83

7 Turn signal lever

Turn signal 156

High-beam headlights, head-light flasher 156

High Beam Assistant 156

Trip data 149

8 Shift paddles

9 Steering wheel buttons, left

Turn speed control systems on/off 215

Select speed control system 215

Store speed 215

Resume speed control systems with the stored setting.

Interrupt speed control systems.

Adjusting the speed 215

10 Instrument cluster 135

11 Steering wheel buttons, right

Displaying menu bar in instru-ment cluster 135

Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Voice activation system 53

Selecting menu contents in instru-ment cluster 135

Changing the station/track, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Thumbwheel for selecting con-figuration menus for instrument cluster and Head-up display 135

Using infotainment selection lists in the instrument cluster 145

12 Wiper lever

Wipers 164

Rain sensor 165

Cleaning the windshield 166

Rear wiper in Canadian models 166

Rear wiper 166

Clean the rear window 166

13 Horn, entire surface

14 Adjusting the steering wheel 113

15 Fold-out compartment 307

16 Lights

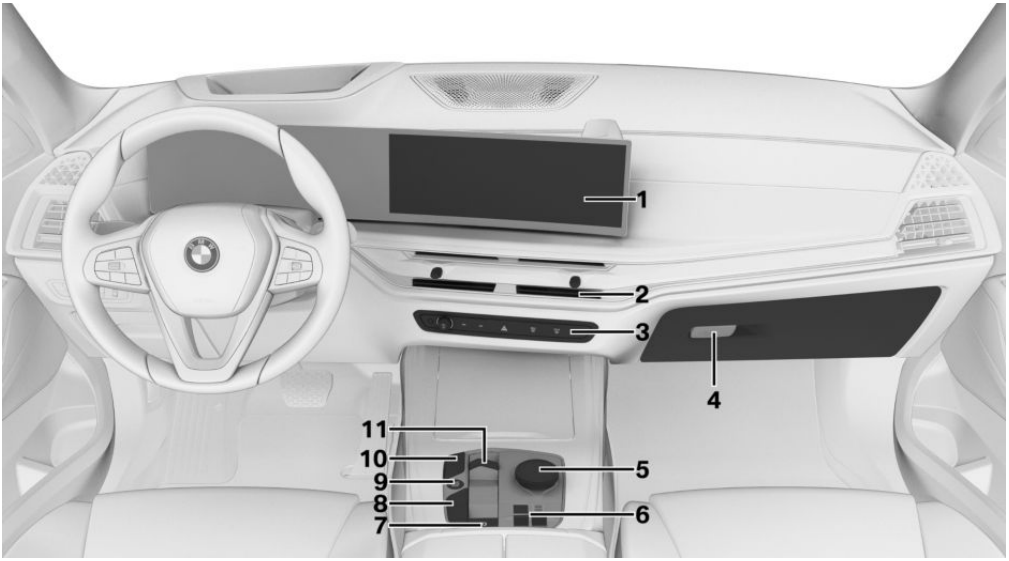
Exterior lighting menu 47

Driving lights automatic 159
Low-beam headlights 159
Adaptive lighting functions 161

Exterior lighting off 159

17 Unlocking the hood 374

In the vicinity of the center console



1 Control display 48

2 Ventilation 289

3 Hazard warning system 390

Climate control 279

Defrost function 286

Rear window defroster 287

Radio/multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication 6

Adjusting the volume

Station/title forward

Station/title back

4 Button for glove compartment 306

5 Controller with buttons 50

6 Two-axle ride level control 273

xOffroad package 276

7 Parking brake 130

Automatic Hold 133

8 Driving Experience Control 129

SPORT drive mode

COMFORT drive mode

ECO PRO drive mode

Hill Descent Control 210

9 Turning drive-ready state on/off 121

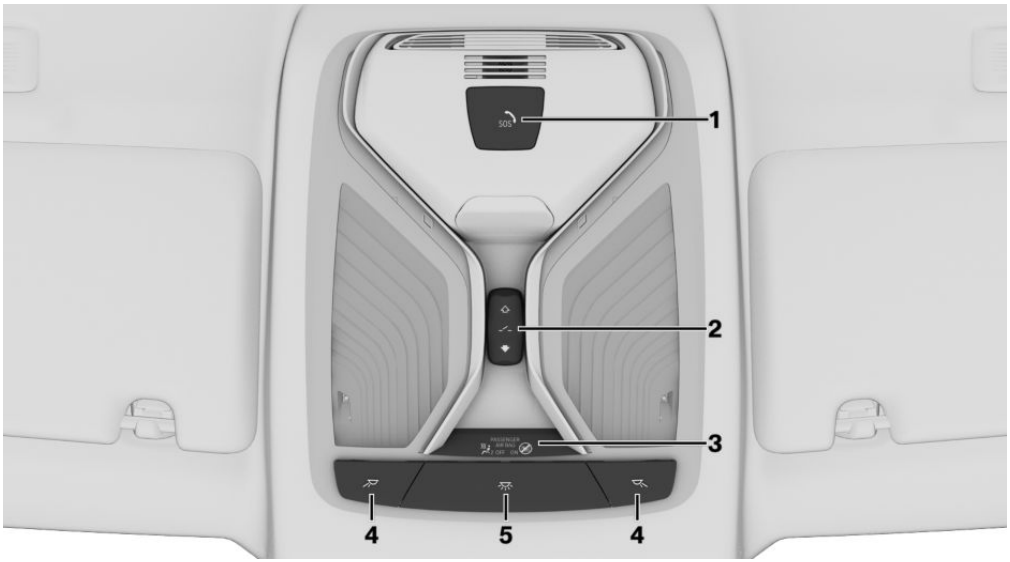
10 Auto Start/Stop function 121

Parking assistance systems 242

Dynamic Stability Control 207

11 Selector lever 124

In the vicinity of the headliner



1 Emergency Call, SOS 391

2 Glass sunroof 96

3 Indicator light, front passenger airbag 170

4 Reading lights 163

5 Interior lights 162

Sensors of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Overview

Depending on the equipment, the following cameras and sensors are installed in the vehicle:

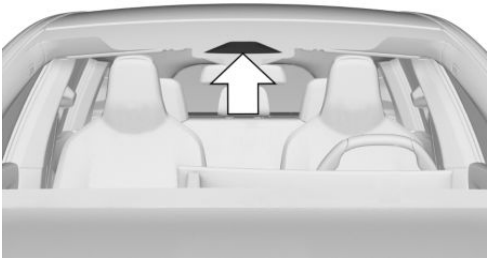
- Front camera.
- Camera behind the windshield.
- Top view cameras.
- Rear View Camera.
- Front radar sensor.
- Radar sensors, side, front.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.
- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Cameras

Front camera

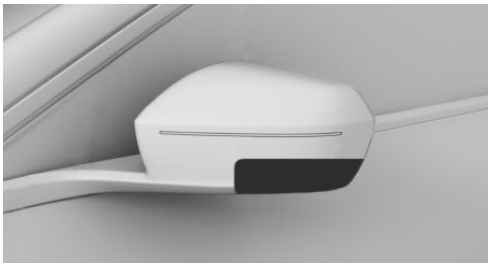
The front camera is located in the radiator grille.

Camera behind the windshield



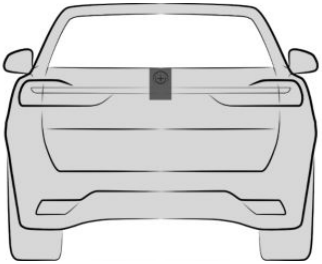
The camera behind the windshield is located near the interior mirror.

Top view cameras



One exterior mirror camera is located at the bottom of each exterior mirror housing.

Rear View Camera



The Rear View Camera is located in the handle strip on the rear of the vehicle.

Functional requirement of the cameras

The areas of the cameras are clean and clear.

Additional information:

- ▷ Washing the vehicle, refer to page 397.
- ▷ Vehicle care, refer to page 399.

System limits of the cameras

The cameras may not work properly, e.g., show something that is incorrect, in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▷ On steep hills, in steep depressions or in tight curves.
- ▷ When the camera field of view is covered, for instance by a fogged up windshield or labels.
- ▷ If the camera lens is dirty or damaged.
- ▷ With exterior mirrors folded in.
- ▷ With open doors or open cargo area.
- ▷ When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections, e.g., setting sun.
- ▷ When it is dark outside.
- ▷ The camera has overheated due to excessive temperatures and temporarily turned off.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

Radar sensors

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle radar sensors, and thus the driver assistance systems, can be negatively affected by external influences, e.g., interference. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

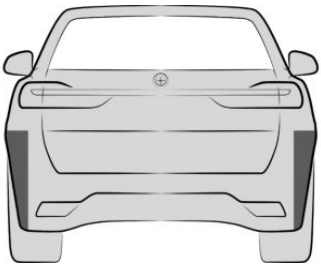
Front radar sensor

The front radar sensor is located in the front bumper.

Radar sensors, side, front

The radar sensors are located on the side of the front bumper.

Radar sensors, side, rear



The radar sensors are located on the side of the rear bumper.

Functional requirement of the radar sensors

The areas of the radar sensors are clean and clear.

Additional information:

- ▷ Washing the vehicle, refer to page 397.
- ▷ Vehicle care, refer to page 399.

System limits of the radar sensors

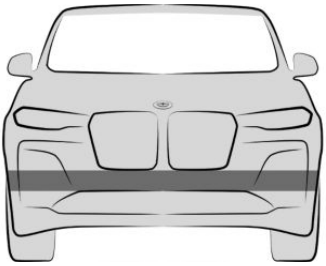
The function of the radar sensors may be restricted or not available, for instance in the following situations:

- ▷ In case of dirty sensors.
- ▷ In case of iced-up sensors.
- ▷ If sensors are covered such as by labels, films or a license-plate carrier.
- ▷ If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- ▷ If the radiation range of the sensors is covered, e.g., by protruding cargo.
- ▷ When the field of view of the sensors is covered, e.g., by garage walls, hedges, snow hills, vehicles or trailers.
- ▷ After improper paint work on the vehicle in the area of the sensors.
- ▷ On steep hilltops or in sharp dips in the road.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

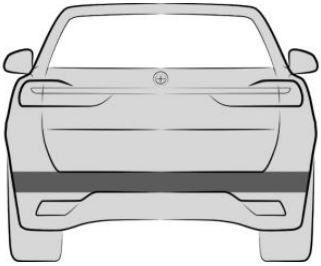
Ultrasonic sensors

Ultrasonic sensors, front



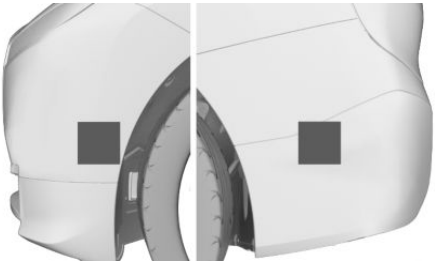
The ultrasonic sensors of the parking assistance systems are located in the front bumper.

Ultrasonic sensors, rear



The ultrasonic sensors of the parking assistance systems are located in the rear bumper.

Ultrasonic sensors, side



The ultrasonic sensors for the parking assistance systems are located on the sides of the front and rear bumpers.

Functional requirement of the ultrasonic sensors

The areas of the ultrasonic sensors are clean and clear.

Additional information:

- ▷ Washing the vehicle, refer to page 397.
- ▷ Vehicle care, refer to page 399.

System limits of the ultrasonic sensors

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- ▷ If the sensors are dirty or covered, e.g., by stickers.
- ▷ If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- ▷ After improper paint work on the vehicle in the area of the sensors.
- ▷ For small children and animals.
- ▷ For persons with certain clothing, for instance jacket.
- ▷ With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- ▷ In case of external interference with the ultrasonics, for instance from passing vehicles, loud machines or other ultrasonic sources.
- ▷ Under certain weather conditions, e.g., high moisture, wet conditions, snowfall, cold, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- ▷ With tow bars and trailer hitches of other vehicles.
- ▷ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ With moving objects.
- ▷ With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.
- ▷ With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.

- In the case of objects with fine surfaces or structures, e.g., wire mesh fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can be outside of the detection ranges of the sensors.
- With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- With plants and bushes.
- In automatic car washes.
- In the event of uneven floors, e.g. speed bumps.
- If there are large amounts of exhaust gas.
- Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the ultrasonic sensors.
- When the trailer hitch cover is not on straight.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

Operating state of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

General information

Depending on the situation, the vehicle will be in one of three operating states:

▷ Idle state, refer to page 40.
▷ Standby state, refer to page 41.
▷ Drive-ready state, refer to page 42.

Idle state

Principle

When the vehicle is in idle state, it is switched off.

General information

The vehicle is in idle state prior to opening from the outside and after exiting and locking.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

▷ Set the parking brake.
▷ Automatic transmission: Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
▷ Manual transmission: Make sure that first gear is engaged on uphill gradients and reverse gear on downhill gradients.
▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

▷ Establishing standby.
▷ Releasing the parking brake.
▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Establishing the sleep mode automatically

The sleep mode is established automatically such as in the following situations:

- ▷ After several minutes, if no operation takes place on the vehicle.
- ▷ If the charge state of the vehicle battery is low.
- ▷ Depending on the configuration via iDrive: one or both front doors will be opened after driving when exiting the vehicle.

In some situations, the idle state is not set automatically, for instance during a phone call or when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

Establishing idle state when opening the front doors

After a trip, the sleep mode can be established by opening the front doors. For this purpose, all passengers must exit the vehicle.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Turn off after opening door"

Establishing the sleep mode manually

To establish idle state in the vehicle after completion of trip:

Press and hold the volume button on the radio until all displays go out.

Deep sleep mode

Principle

Deep sleep mode is activated to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging when the vehicle is stationary for several weeks.

In deep sleep mode, the vehicle functions are limited to the essentials.

General information

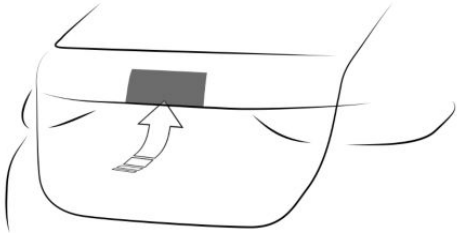
When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, some special measures are necessary. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Activating/deactivating deep sleep mode

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Deep sleep mode"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deep sleep mode deactivates automatically when drive-ready state is turned on.

Access to the vehicle



Press the button on the cargo area to access the vehicle while in deep sleep mode. Deep sleep mode remains on in this case.

Standby state

Principle

When standby state is switched on, most functions can be used while the vehicle is stationary. Desired settings can be adjusted.

General information

The vehicle is in standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

Turning on standby state manually

General information

Standby can be switched back on after the vehicle is automatically set to idle state.

Via the volume button

Press the volume button on the radio. The control display and the instrument cluster illuminate.

Using the Start/Stop button

Press the Start/Stop button.

The control display and the instrument cluster illuminate.

Display in the instrument cluster

OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. Drive-ready state is turned off and standby state turned on.

Drive-ready state

Principle

Turning on drive-ready state corresponds to starting the engine.

General information

Some vehicle functions can only be used with the drive-ready state switched on.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

⚠ Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Automatic transmission: Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- ▷ Manual transmission: Make sure that first gear is engaged on uphill gradients and reverse gear on downhill gradients.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

⚠ NOTICE

Repeatedly attempting to start the engine or repeatedly starting the vehicle in rapid succession can cause the starter to overheat. This also results in unburned or inadequately burned fuel, and can cause the catalytic converter to overheat. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid repeated starting of the vehi-

cle, particularly repeated starting in rapid succession.

Turning on the drive-ready state

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   Most of the indicator lights and warning lights on the instrument cluster illuminate for different lengths of time.

   Drive-ready state is switched on.

The engine will start automatically for a brief time until the engine is started.

Gasoline engine

Depending on the motorization, the full drive power may not be available for approximately 30 seconds after starting the engine. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate as usual.

Additional information:

Power gauge, refer to page 146.

Display in the instrument cluster

The activated drive-ready state is indicated in the instrument cluster, depending on the equipment, by the display of information required for driving or the READY display.

Turning off drive-ready state

1. While the vehicle is stationary, press the brake pedal and engage selector lever position P.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The READY indicator goes out and a signal tone sounds.

   The engine is shut off and the vehicle switches to standby.

BMW iDrive

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Display and operating concept

Principle

BMW iDrive is the vehicle's display and operating concept and includes a wide range of functions.

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, the functions can be operated as follows:

- ▷ Via the control display.
- ▷ Via the Controller.
- ▷ Via the touchpad.
- ▷ Via the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant.
- ▷ Via the operating elements on the steering wheel.

  Additional information:

  Instrument cluster, refer to page 135.

Safety information

Warning

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from surrounding traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Main menu

General information

The main menu is divided into different areas.

Overview

1 Widgets
2 Status information
3 Configuration bar for main display
4 Temperature setting
5 Menu bar

Menu bar

Apps menu

Access to apps and vehicle functions. A filter can be selected. If necessary, change the filter to see the desired apps.

- ▷ "All apps": all apps and functions are displayed.
- ▷ "Infotainment": only infotainment apps are displayed.

- "Vehicle": only vehicle adjustment functions are displayed.
- "Recently used": recently used apps are displayed.

Media menu

Access to functions of the entertainment system, e.g., radio stations or connection with external devices.

Communication menu

Access to the telephone and message function as well as the connection and management of mobile devices such as smartphones.

Navigation menu

Access to the navigation system, destination input and traffic bulletins. Configurable map views and other functions such as points of interest.

Climate menu

The Climate menu provides access to all climate control functions.

Apple CarPlay© menu

Depending on the national-market version with a connected function: access to Apple CarPlay. Apple CarPlay enables the secure use of certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone via iDrive.

Android Auto© menu

Depending on the national-market version with a connected function: access to Android Auto. Android Auto enables the secure use of certain functions of a compatible Android smartphone via iDrive.

Widgets

Widgets show real-time information and dynamic content such as current media or paired smartphones. The widgets also serve as buttons and allow jumping to the relevant menu.

Main display

The main display shows real-time information and dynamic content such as the navigation map. This display also contains buttons and lets you jump to the desired menu.

Status information

General information

The status field can be found in the upper area of the control display. Status information is displayed in the form of icons. Depending on the equipment and national-market version, different icons are available.

Telephone status information

Icon	Meaning
	Active call.
	Signal strength.
	SIM card missing.

Entertainment status information

Icon	Meaning
	USB audio.
	Bluetooth audio.
	Smartphone audio.
	Connected Music with Spotify.
	Time shift.
	Wi-Fi.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Android Auto.
sxm	Satellite radio is switched on.

Status information messages

Icon	Meaning
1	Number of notifications.
	Check Control message.
	Suppress private information.
	Do not disturb.
	Message.

Additional information:

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.

Other status information

Icon	Meaning
	Sound output active.
	Sound output deactivated.
	Activation word active.
	BMW ID or driver profile.
	Destination guidance active.
	Go to quick access.
	Wireless charging active.
	Park Distance Control: sound active.
	Park Distance Control: sound deactivated.

Input and display

Letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be entered using the controller, touchpad, control display, or voice control, depending on vehicle equipment.

Icon	Function
abc ABC	Change between capital and lower-case letters.
	Enter a blank space.
EN	Switching between languages.
	Use voice control.
OK	Confirm entry.
◀ ▶	Shift the input area to the left or right.

Entry comparison

When entering data from a database such as contacts, the selection is gradually narrowed down for each character entered, with characters being added as necessary.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Some menu items are preceded by an icon. Selecting the menu item enables or disables the function.

Icon	Meaning
	Function is activated.
	Function is deactivated.

Enabling/disabling audible feedback

For some functions, audio confirmation is given, e.g., sounds are emitted when operating the control display.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Sound settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

Quick access

The quick link provides access to shortcuts, certain settings, and app recommendations.

Input	Operation
Show quick link.	Swipe from top to bottom on the control display. Slide the controller up. — Tap the icon on the status bar.
Hide quick link.	Swipe from the bottom up on the control display. Slide the controller down.

Activating/deactivating pop-ups

For some functions, pop-ups are displayed automatically on the control display. Some of these pop-ups can be activated or deactivated.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Pop-ups"
5. Select the desired setting.

Shortcuts

General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the shortcuts and called up directly, for instance radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries.

Storing a function

1. Select the desired function.
2. Press and hold the desired function.
3. "Add to shortcuts"

Shortcuts can only be created with an active BMW ID or a driver profile.

Executing a function

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. Tap the desired shortcut.

The function will work immediately. This means for instance that the connection is established when a phone number is selected.

Deleting shortcuts

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. Press and hold the desired shortcut.
3. "Delete shortcut"

Direct access

General information

The vehicle has buttons that can be used to access menus for the respective function directly on the control display. Then continue the operation via iDrive.

Overview

Button	Function
	Go to the Exterior Lighting menu between the steering wheel and driver's door.

BMW Curved Display

Principle

The BMW Curved Display is a single-screen display in the instrument panel that is curved towards the driver. The BMW Curved Display comprises the instrument cluster on the driver's side and the control display.

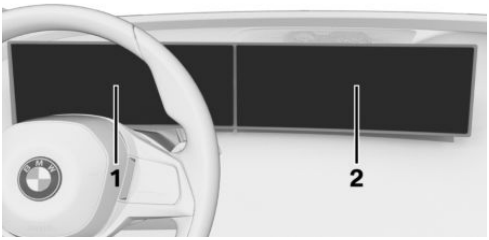
General information

Follow instructions for cleaning the BMW Curved Display in the Care chapter.

Additional information:

Caring for special components, refer to page 400.

Overview



1 Instrument cluster 135
2 Control display 48

Control display

Principle

The iDrive functions are displayed on the control display.

Safety information

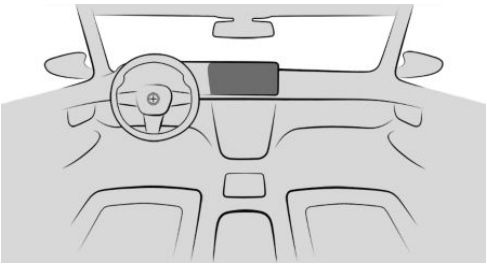
Warning

When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., mobile phones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

Warning

Objects in the area in front of a display can slip and damage the display. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not place objects in the area in front of a display.

Overview



Control display.

Switching the control display on/off automatically

The control display is turned on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or as soon as the control display is needed for operation.

In certain situations, the control display is switched off automatically, for instance if no operation is performed on the vehicle for several minutes.

Switching the control display on/off manually

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. "Screen off"

Tap the control display to turn it on again.

Setting the brightness

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Cockpit brightness at night"
5. Make the desired setting.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness control may not be clearly visible.

System limits

In the case of very high temperatures on the control display, for instance due to intense so-

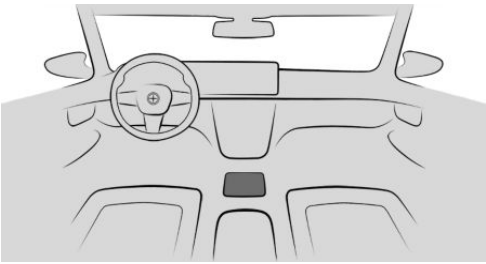
lar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shade or air conditioning system, the normal functions are restored.

Controller

Principle

The Controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings. The buttons can be used to open the menus directly.

Overview



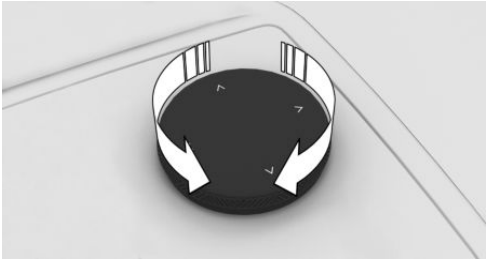
Controller.

Buttons on the Controller

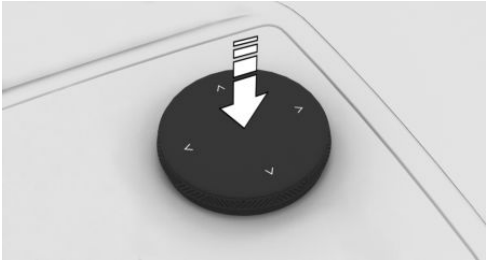
Button	Function
HOME	Call up the main menu.
MEDIA	Call up the Media/Radio menu.
TEL	Go to Phone menu.
MAP	Call up the navigation map.
NAV	Call up the destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Go to previous menu.
OPTION	Call up the Options menu.

Operation

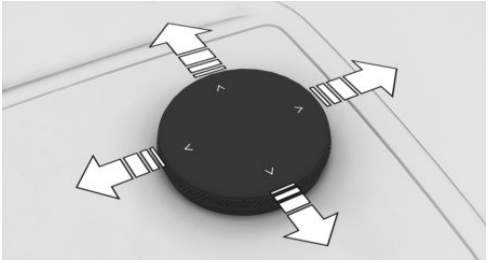
▷ Rotate the Controller to switch between menu options, for example.



▷ Press the Controller to select a menu option, for example.



▷ Slide the Controller in four directions to switch between menus, for example.



Operating via the Controller

Opening the main menu

HOME Press the button.

The main menu is displayed.

Selecting menu items

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.
2. Press the Controller.

Adjusting the main display

The main display can be adjusted in the main menu.

1. Press the button.
2. If necessary, tilt the Controller to select the main display.
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. Select the desired main display.

Selecting a widget

1. Use the Controller to select widgets.
2. If necessary, turn the Controller until the desired widget is selected.
3. Press the Controller.

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Press the button, if needed .
2. Using the Controller, select the widget, then press and hold the Controller.
3. The following adjustments can be made:
   - ▷ "Add widget below"
     A new widget can be added below the selected widget.
   - ▷ "Delete widget page"
     The widget is deleted.
   - ▷ "Sort widgets"
     The widget can be moved to the desired position.

A new widget can be added at the end of the list.

+ Tap the icon at the end of the list.

Switching between menus

A new display opens after a menu item is selected.

- ▷ Slide the Controller to the left.
  The current menu closes and the previous menu is displayed.
- ▷ BACK Press the button.
  The current menu closes and the previous menu is displayed.

Calling up the context menu

Depending on the menu item, a context menu with additional options can be displayed.

1. Select the desired menu item using the Controller.
2. Press and hold the Controller.

The menu consists of various areas, for instance:

- ▷ "General help": Go to the Integrated Owner's Manual.
- ▷ "Add to shortcuts": define menu item as shortcut.

Entering letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can only be entered when stationary.

Input

1. Turn the Controller: select letters or numbers.
2. OK : confirm entry.

Additional information:

Setting the system language, refer to page 56.

Deleting an entry

Icon	Function
⌫	Press controller: delete a letter or number.
⌫	Press and hold controller: delete all letters or numbers.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Turn the Controller to the left or right quickly.
2. Select the first letter of the desired entry.

   The first entry of the selected letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via touchpad

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, some iDrive functions can be operated with the controller touchpad.

The touchpad is located on the Controller. Touch the touchpad with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Selecting functions

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Touchpad"
5. Select the desired setting.

Entering letters and numbers

- ▷ Enter characters as they are displayed on the control display.
- ▷ Always enter associated characters such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized.
- ▷ The set language determines what input is possible. Where necessary, enter special characters via the Controller.

  Additional information:

  Setting the system language, refer to page 56.

Entering special characters

Function	Operation
Delete a character.	Swipe to the left on the touchpad.
Enter a blank space.	Swipe to the right in the center of the touchpad.
Enter a hyphen.	Swipe to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
Enter an underscore.	Swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Using the map

The map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad.

Tap the map on the control display and then continue operation using the touchpad.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Using alphabetical lists

Alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries permit a direct jump to letters for which an entry exists.

Enter the first letter on the touchpad.

The first entry of the entered letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via control display

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the control display is equipped with a touchscreen.

You can tap on menu items and widgets. Touch the control display with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Opening the main menu

Tap on the icon.

The main menu is displayed.

Adjusting the main display

The main display can be adjusted in the main menu.

1. Tap on the icon.
2. Swipe the configuration bar on the right side of the screen to the left.
3. Select the desired main display.

Switching between widgets

Widgets in the main menu display dynamic information and can be used as buttons.

To switch between widgets, scroll up or down through the widgets.

To display additional functions of the widgets, scroll left or right within the widgets.

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. If necessary, tap the icon.
2. Press and hold the widget.
3. The following adjustments can be made:
   - ▷ "Add widget below"

     A new widget can be added below the selected widget.
   - ▷ "Delete widget page"

     The widget is deleted.
   - ▷ "Sort widgets"

     The widget can be moved to the desired position.

A new widget can be added at the end of the list.

+ Tap the icon at the end of the list.

Sorting apps

To resort the app icons, press and hold the desired icon and move it to the desired location.

Switching between menus

A new display opens after a menu item is selected.

< Select the arrow symbol.

The current menu closes and the previous menu is displayed.

Calling up the context menu

Depending on the menu item, a context menu with additional options can be displayed.

Press and hold the desired menu item.

The menu consists of various areas, for instance:

- ▷ "General help": Go to the Integrated Owner's Manual.
- ▷ "Add to shortcuts": define menu item as shortcut.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. If necessary, tap the icon or control display.
2. Enter desired letters and numbers.

Deleting an entry

Icon	Function
	Tap icon: delete a letter or a number.
	Press and hold the icon: delete all letters or numbers.

Using the map

The navigation map can be moved on the control display.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out with the fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Tap the letter in front of the list.

   A letter box is displayed.
2. Tap the first letter of the desired entry.

   The first entry of the selected letter is displayed in the list.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Principle

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is a personal assistant that enables natural voice operation of various vehicle functions. The Personal Assistant makes it easier to operate the vehicle by providing proactive suggestions and automating habits.

General information

- ▷ BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available depending on national-market version.
- ▷ The system includes special microphones on the driver side and the front passenger side.
- ▷ Say the commands and numbers fluently as well as with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- ▷ ›...‹ identifies commands that can be spoken.

Functional requirements

- ▷ A language that is supported by the Personal Assistant must be set via iDrive.

  Setting the system language, refer to page 56.
- ▷ Always say commands in the configured system language.

For the full range of functions, you must activate, configure, or purchase the following functions:

- ▷ Online speech processing, refer to page 56.
- ▷ All settings under:

  Data protection, refer to page 64.
- ▷ Activation word, refer to page 54.
- ▷ BMW ID or a driver profile.

- Relevant ConnectedDrive services from the ConnectedDrive Store.
- Suggestions, refer to page 56.

Activating the voice control system

General information

There are various methods for activating the voice control feature:

- Press the button on the steering wheel briefly.

  The microphone on the driver's side is active.
- Speaking the activation word.

  The microphones on the driver's or front passenger's side are active with the following voice control, depending on where the activation word was spoken.

Then say the command. The activation word and the command can be spoken without pause in one sentence.

Microphone button on steering wheel

1. Press button briefly.
2. Say the command.

Activation word

General information

Saying the activation word will start the Personal Assistant. The Personal Assistant listens.

Preset activation word

›Hello BMW‹: The default activation word can be activated and deactivated.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Wake word"
7. ""Hello BMW""

Personal activation word

In addition to the preset activation word, a personal activation word can be set up with an active BMW ID or a driver profile. The personal activation word can also be changed or deleted.

The activation word should consist of multiple syllables to ensure good recognition.

›Hello‹: The additional phrase is not necessary for the activation word and does not need to be spoken.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Wake word"
7. "Personal wake word"
8. "Set"
9. "Start recording"

Activation word from third-party providers

Depending on national-market version, some third-party providers offer digital voice assistants, e.g., Amazon Alexa.

To use Siri, the smartphone must be connected via Apple CarPlay.

Supported voice assistants can be used with a connected smartphone in the vehicle.

The activation word from connected third-party providers can be used in addition to your preset or personal activation word from BMW.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"

4. "Voice control"
5. "Additional speech assistants"
6. Select the desired setting.

Canceling voice control

▷ Press the button on the steering wheel again.

▷ ›Cancel‹

▷ Slide the Controller to the right or left.

▷ Press the Controller.

Possible commands

General information

Commands can be used to give instructions or ask questions, with the Personal Assistant providing assistance.

For example, you can call contacts, navigate to an address, apply settings, or ask questions about a vehicle function. Most vehicle functions can be operated via voice commands, e.g., the Automatic Parking Assistant.

Most content on the control display can be spoken as commands, e.g., menu items or list entries.

Help for voice control

▷ ›Voice commands‹: have possible example commands suggested.

▷ ›General information on voice control‹: have information on the operating principle of the voice control announced.

▷ ›Help‹: have tips and example commands for voice control announced.

▷ Additional example commands for the current context are displayed in the widget of the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant.

Sample commands

▷ ›Call John Smith‹

▷ ›Drive me to JFK airport‹

▷ ›Play a classical music station‹

▷ ›Is my tire pressure still OK?‹

▷ ›Activate the climate control‹

▷ ›Increase the ACC distance‹

▷ ›Sport mode‹

Additional example commands can be displayed on the control display.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Personal Assistant"
4. "Help"
5. "Example commands"

Sample commands for the current context are displayed in the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant widget.

Additional information:

Adjust widgets, refer to page 52.

Menu items

The Personal Assistant can bring up menu items directly. Say the menu items as they are displayed on the control display. You do not have to follow the order of the menu items when speaking them out loud.

1. Activate the voice control system.
2. ›Media‹
3. ›Presets‹

   The stored stations are displayed on the control display.

Owner's Manual via voice operation

You can ask simple questions about vehicle functions and the operation of the vehicle.

The voice activation system and the feedback it provides do not replace the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual. The function

is available depending on the national-market version. The speech recognition and quality of the feedback may vary.

Example command: ›How can the passenger airbag be deactivated?‹

The Personal Assistant returns feedback. When stationary, the section of the integrated Owner's Manual is displayed on the control display.

Settings

Setting the system language

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Language"
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the response length

You can set the Personal Assistant to use standard dialog or a short version. In case of the short version, the announcements by the Personal Assistant are played back in an abbreviated version.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Response length"
7. Select the desired setting.

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during inquiries of the Personal Assistant. The function can be disabled if requests are often canceled unintentionally, for instance due to background noise or conversations in the vehicle.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Speaking during voice output"

Suggestions

General information

The Personal Assistant provides helpful, individual suggestions.

Activating/deactivating suggestions

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Receive suggestions"

Adapting suggestions

Suggestions can be adapted, for example, by category or to output a signal tone.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. Select the desired setting.

Online speech processing

Online speech processing improves the quality of the speech recognition and search results for points of interest. To use the functions, data is transmitted to a service provider via an encrypted connection and stored locally there. An active ConnectedDrive contract is required

for online voice processing. ConnectedDrive is available depending on the national-market version. Online speech processing is not available in all languages.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Online speech processing"

Configuring the visualization

How the Personal Assistant is visualized can be set.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Visualization"

Voice control from third-party providers

Depending on vehicle equipment, third-party voice control can be enabled by pressing and holding the microphone button on the steering wheel.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Long press"
6. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button during the voice guidance until the desired volume is set.

The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.

Using the voice activation of the smartphone

Depending on the device, a smartphone connected to the vehicle can be used via voice control.

The device must be connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

1. Press and hold the button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.

   The voice activation of the smartphone is activated.

   If activation is successful, a confirmation appears on the control display.

2. Press and hold the button on the steering wheel to cancel voice control of the smartphone.

Amazon Alexa Car Integration

Principle

Amazon Alexa Car Integration is available depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version. Alexa is a digital assistant from Amazon. With Amazon Alexa Car Integration, Alexa can be used in the vehicle. For safety reasons, the use of some Alexa functions may be restricted while driving your vehicle.

Functional requirements

- ▷ A BMW ID or driver profile is activated.
- ▷ An active Amazon account must exist.

Activating Amazon Alexa Car Integration

Amazon Alexa Car Integration is activated in the vehicle and My BMW app if necessary.

Follow the instructions from the Amazon Alexa app to set it up in the vehicle.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Amazon Alexa"
4. Select the desired setting.

After setting it up, use Amazon Alexa in the vehicle as follows:

Say the activation word "Alexa" and the desired command.

Information about the active function is displayed on the control display. If the function is restricted, reconnect Bluetooth and Wi-Fi as necessary.

Automating routines

General information

The Personal Assistant can automate routine actions such as automatically opening the windows when reaching a predefined location. Rules are created for this purpose, which can be activated and deactivated at any time.

Activating/deactivating routines

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Automate habits"
4. Select the desired setting.

System limits

- The Personal Assistant provides information about vehicle functions that may not be installed in the vehicle.

  This also applies to safety functions and systems.
- Certain noises can be detected and may lead to problems. Keep the doors and windows closed.
- Noises from the front passenger or occupants can impair the system. Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.
- Major language dialects can cause problems with the speech recognition feature.
- A poor data connection affects the response time of the Personal Assistant and search function.

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

Principle

Mobile devices can be used in the vehicle for various functions. Pairing with the vehicle is beneficial when using mobile devices:

- Operating the mobile device via iDrive.
- Making calls via the hands-free system.
- Better connection to the telephone network and internet using the vehicle's cell phone antennas.
- Listen to music on the vehicle's sound system.
- Surf the internet via personal hotspot on the vehicle's integrated SIM card.
- Operating smartphone apps, e.g., Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

General information

Detailed information on the functions and connection modes is provided in the following media from the Owner's Manual under the specified keyword:

- Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
- Printed Owner's Manual for navigation, communication and entertainment.

The following information sources can also be used:

- Driver's Guide app.
- Driver's Guide Web.

Safety information

Warning

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from surrounding traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Principle

Remote Software Upgrade can be used to update the entire software of the vehicle. This makes new functions, functional enhancements or quality improvements available.

General information

BMW recommends performing the Remote Software Upgrade as soon as it becomes available.

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- ▷ Establishing standby.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract.
- ▷ The integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.
- ▷ Cellular network reception.
- ▷ Consent to transmit the corresponding data was given in the Data Protection menu.

  Additional information:

  Data protection, refer to page 64.

Search for an upgrade

Functional requirement

Standby must be turned on to search for a Remote Software Upgrade.

Automatic search

The vehicle regularly searches for updates in the background.

Manual search

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Search for upgrades"
6. Follow the instructions on the control display.

Download of an upgrade

Automatic download

If available, the data for a Remote Software Upgrade is automatically downloaded to the vehicle. No download consent is required.

Via My BMW App

When an upgrade is available, the My BMW App will provide information on the new software version.

The data for the upgrade can then be downloaded to a mobile device, for instance via an existing WLAN connection.

Data can then be sent from the mobile device to the vehicle.

This transmission method accelerates the download of the data, for instance in areas with limited mobile network availability.

You do not need to be present in the vehicle to download the data to a mobile device.

1. Download the upgrade using the My BMW App on your smartphone.
2. Follow the instructions in the My BMW App.
3. Connect your smartphone to the vehicle via Bluetooth audio and Wi-Fi.

   Data for the upgrade is sent from the mobile device to the vehicle both while driving and when stopped. Depending on the size of the upgrade, it may be necessary to drive the vehicle to complete the data transfer.
4. Follow the instructions on the control display.

Additional information:

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Information about the version

General information

The information about the version contains a description of the updates included in the Remote Software Upgrade. During the download and after the installation has been successfully completed, the information about the version can be displayed on the control display.

This information is also available in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

Displaying information

Display in the vehicle:

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. ▷ Display currently installed version: "Installed version:"

   ▷ Display new available version: "Info on version"
6. Follow the instructions on the control display.

More information is provided on the corresponding BMW website.

Installing the upgrade

General information

▷ Installation of the Remote Software Upgrade may result in the deletion of software changes, e.g., performance increases not made by the manufacturer of the vehicle.

▷ Modifications to the electrical system of the vehicle, for instance to control units, that have not been made by the vehicle manufacturer can lead to an interruption of the installation.

▷ The installation does not occur until the consent was given.

- The installation may take around 20 to 30 minutes.
- The installation cannot be terminated.
- The vehicle cannot be used during the installation.
- The vehicle can be exited during the installation.

Prerequisites for the installation

- Sufficiently charged battery.
- The outside temperature is above 14°F/-10°C.
- The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- The hazard warning system is turned off.
- The selector lever position P is engaged.
- The engine is turned off and sufficiently cooled down.

If applicable, follow the notes for further prerequisites on the control display.

Your vehicle can establish some prerequisites automatically. Follow the instructions on the control display.

If the prerequisites are not met such as a sufficiently charged battery, the upgrade will not be offered for installation.

Pay attention to an offer for installation, e.g., after longer trips.

Preparing the vehicle

- Park the vehicle safely away from the public road.
- Cellular network reception must be ensured so that a fault message can be sent to the vehicle manufacturer, for instance if the installation is terminated.
- Close the windows.
- Close the glass sunroof.
- Close the cargo area.
- Remove energy consuming devices such as a mobile phone.
- Disconnect the trailer or load carrier.
- The vehicle key must be located in the vehicle for the consent for installation.
- Switch off the exterior lighting.
- Remove devices connected to the diagnostic socket.

Installing immediately

The upgrade can be installed immediately if all prerequisites have been met.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Start upgrade now"
6. Follow the instructions on the control display.

Installing with timer

When the trip is completed, a timer can be used to install the upgrade automatically at a configured time such as during the night. A later installation may make sense to meet functional requirements, e.g., a sufficiently cooled down engine.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. Select the desired settings.

The installation starts automatically when:

- All prerequisites for the installation have been established correctly.
- All prerequisites continue to be met at the time of installation.

The timer is turned off when the drive-ready state is turned on.

Installing via the My BMW App

Once all preparations are complete and all requirements are met, the upgrade installation can also be started using the My BMW App when the vehicle is parked. The upgrade installation can be started remotely.

Follow instructions in the My BMW App.

Functional limitations

During the upgrade, the majority of functions is temporarily unavailable, for instance:

- ▷ Hazard warning system.
- ▷ Central locking system and, if necessary, Comfort Access.
- ▷ Parking lights.
- ▷ Horn.
- ▷ Alarm system.
- ▷ Emergency call.
- ▷ Power window.
- ▷ Glass sunroof.
- ▷ Checking the fuel filler flap lock.
- ▷ Operate the tailgate or trunk lid.

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked from the outside using the integrated key.

After successful upgrade

The vehicle can be used again immediately.

Booked services such as Advanced Real Time Traffic Information or Remote Services are automatically reactivated during the next trip.

After an extended stationary period, charge the vehicle battery with an extended drive.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, follow the instructions on the control display or in the My BMW App.

If the malfunction cannot be corrected, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update such as via Remote Software Upgrade the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Personal settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Data protection

Data transfer

Principle

The vehicle offers different services, whose use requires a data transfer to BMW or a service provider.

General information

The data transfer can be deactivated for some services. When the data transfer is deactivated, the respective service cannot be used.

Settings

The data transfer can be configured in different stages or individually for separate services.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Principle

Depending on the usage, the vehicle stores personal data such as stored radio stations.

This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General information

Depending on the equipment, the following data is deleted:

- ▷ BMW IDs or driver profiles.
- ▷ Stored radio stations.
- ▷ Stored shortcuts.
- ▷ Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- ▷ Phone book.
- ▷ Online data, e.g., favorites, cookies.
- ▷ Office data, for instance voice memos.
- ▷ Login accounts.
- ▷ Digital key.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 15 minutes. In addition, the vehicle is removed from the My BMW App and ConnectedDrive customer portal so that remote functions can no longer be used.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Data can only be deleted while stationary.
- ▷ The vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

Deleting data

The personal data in the vehicle will be deleted when the vehicle is reset to the factory settings.

Additional information:

Resetting vehicle data, refer to page 64.

Reset vehicle data

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when the drive-ready state is

switched off. Data can only be deleted while the vehicle is stationary. The vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Reset vehicle data"
5. "Reset vehicle data"

If setting synchronization has been activated for a BMW ID in the vehicle, personal settings are kept in the BMW Cloud.

BMW ID/driver profiles

Principle

In ConnectedDrive countries, the BMW ID is the personal login for all relevant offers for the BMW brand. The BMW ID can be used in the vehicle to store and activate personal vehicle settings.

In non-ConnectedDrive countries, the personal vehicle settings can be stored in driver profiles.

If a vehicle is used by several people, each person can use their own BMW ID in the vehicle. If a BMW ID is activated, the settings stored for it are applied to the vehicle.

General information

The BMW ID must be registered once. Registration of a BMW ID can be completed on the My BMW App, in the ConnectedDrive portal, or at an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

A driver profile is created in the vehicle.

Many of the settings that are stored for a BMW ID in the vehicle can be synchronized with the BMW Cloud. This makes these settings available in any vehicle where the same BMW ID is used to log in.

The vehicle can store three BMW IDs or three driver profiles.

With driver recognition, a BMW ID or driver profile can be activated as soon as you unlock your vehicle. For this, a vehicle key or digital key must be linked with the BMW ID or driver profile. After unlocking, you can change the BMW ID or driver profile.

If no BMW ID or driver profile is activated when the vehicle is unlocked, the vehicle loads the guest profile.

Functional requirements

The vehicle must be stationary to create, change, delete, or edit a BMW ID.

Logging in the vehicle with a BMW ID and synchronization with the BMW Cloud are only possible when the vehicle has cellular network reception.

Welcome window

After unlocking the vehicle, a Welcome window is shown on the control display. The type of the welcome depends on the following prerequisites:

- ▷ The vehicle does not have a stored BMW ID or driver profile:

  The welcome is neutral. An option to add a BMW ID or create a driver profile is offered.
- ▷ The vehicle key or the digital key has not been assigned to a BMW ID or a driver profile:

  The welcome is neutral. The stored BMW IDs or the stored driver profiles are offered for selection. Additionally, it is possible to add a new BMW ID or create a new driver profile.
- ▷ A BMW ID or driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key or digital key:

  The welcome is personalized, the stored settings are activated. The BMW ID or the driver profile can be changed.

As soon as the drive-ready state is turned on or the control display is tapped outside of the Welcome window, the welcome will be hidden.

Adding the BMW ID

1. Tap the BMW ID icon or personal picture on the status bar.
2. "Add BMW ID"
3. Scan the displayed QR code with your smartphone.
4. Observe the instructions on your smartphone.
   - ▷ If you have installed the My BMW App on your smartphone and saved your BMW ID, the BMW ID is automatically transferred to the vehicle.
   - ▷ If there is currently no BMW ID, a new BMW ID can be registered.
5. Change additional settings as necessary, e.g., desired driver recognition.

   To configure driver recognition, the corresponding vehicle key or digital key must be located in the vehicle.

   Driver recognition can be set or changed in the settings at a later time.
6. Change any additional settings as necessary.

Alternatively, the BMW ID can be registered and added to the vehicle by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. The BMW ID must then be confirmed on the control display in the corresponding vehicle.

The vehicle is added to the user's My BMW App.

Confirming a BMW ID

If the BMW ID was created and added to the vehicle by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, the BMW ID must then be confirmed in the vehicle:

1. Select the BMW ID.
2. Scan the QR code shown.
3. Follow the instructions on your smartphone.

It may be necessary to register the BMW ID again.

This icon is displayed on the status bar and indicates when it is necessary to login again.

1. Select the BMW ID.
2. Scan the QR code shown.

Another registration will be attempted. Once successfully logged in, all functions can be used again.

My BMW app

If a BMW ID has been added to a vehicle, the vehicle is automatically added to the My BMW app. The My BMW App provides numerous beneficial functions and settings, e.g., user management.

Alternatively, a vehicle can be added to the My BMW App by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. In this case, the BMW ID must then be confirmed on the control display in the corresponding vehicle.

In rare cases, the use of My BMW App functions for this vehicle may be restricted. More information is shown on the control display.

Creating a driver profile

In countries where BMW ConnectedDrive is not available, driver profiles can be created.

1. Tap the icon or personal picture on the status bar.
2. "Add driver profile"
3. Enter the name for the driver profile.
4. Select the desired setting:

"Transfer settings"

If the vehicle is in the guest profile, the settings of the guest profile will be applied.

Primary user

The primary user is the person who first adds their BMW ID to the vehicle and first adds the vehicle to the My BMW app. Alternatively, the primary user can be specified by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The primary user has access to the following settings, for example:

- ▷ Removing BMW IDs saved to the vehicle.
- ▷ Transferring the primary user role to another BMW ID.
- ▷ Changing vehicle-wide data protection settings.
- ▷ Creating the main digital key.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 74.

Automatic driver recognition

If driver recognition has been established, automatic activation of the BMW ID or driver profile is triggered by the following actions:

- ▷ By unlocking the vehicle using the button on the assigned vehicle key.
- ▷ By unlocking the vehicle with a door handle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned digital key must be carried with you.
- ▷ By automatic unlocking when approaching the vehicle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned digital key must be carried with you. Depending on the country, it may not be possible to recognize the digital key.

If multiple vehicle keys or digital keys are located near the vehicle, the BMW ID or driver profile is activated according to the following priority:

- ▷ The key that triggers the door locks to release also activates the associated BMW ID or driver profile.

  The guest profile is activated when the vehicle is unlocked using a key that is not assigned to a BMW ID or driver profile.
- ▷ If a vehicle key and a digital key are detected at the same time, the digital key triggers the activation of the assigned BMW ID or the assigned driver profile.
- ▷ If another key is detected on the driver's door after activating the BMW ID or the driver profile, the BMW ID or the driver profile of the last key detected is activated.

  If no BMW ID and no driver profile are assigned to this key, the guest profile is activated.

Setting synchronization

If synchronization is enabled, settings from the following areas, for example, are continuously synchronized:

- ▷ BMW ID, e.g., profile picture.
- ▷ Navigation, e.g., recent destinations, home address, or map settings.
- ▷ iDrive, e.g., main menu configuration, language, or units.
- ▷ Personal Assistant, e.g., suggestions or activation word.
- ▷ Exterior lighting, e.g., one-touch signaling and home lights.

Settings from the following areas are only synchronized when you log in for the first time:

- ▷ Seating and climate comfort, e.g., driver's seat position or temperature setting.
- ▷ Data protection menu.

Selecting the BMW ID/driver profile

If the BMW ID or driver profile could not be recognized when unlocking the vehicle, select the BMW ID or driver profile on the welcome window.

The BMW ID or driver profile can be changed at any time via iDrive:

1. Tap the icon or personal picture on the status bar.
2. ▷ "Change BMW ID"
   ▷ "Change driver profile"
3. Select the BMW ID or driver profile.
4. If necessary, enter the PIN.

The BMW ID or the driver profile are activated, the stored settings are loaded.

Guest profile

The guest profile can be activated and changed by anyone.

In the following cases the guest profile is automatically active:

- ▷ The BMW ID has not yet been added or a driver profile has not yet been created.
- ▷ No BMW ID or driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key or the digital key that was used to unlock the vehicle.

The following limitations apply to the guest profile:

- ▷ Certain functions are not available, e.g., individual navigation functions or saving favorites.
- ▷ The guest profile cannot be renamed.
- ▷ It is not possible to assign a PIN to the guest profile.
- ▷ It is not possible to assign driver detection to the guest profile.
- ▷ In ConnectedDrive countries, the synchronization with the BMW Cloud is not possible.

The guest profile is selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive:

1. Tap the icon or personal picture on the status bar.
2. ▷ "Change BMW ID"
   ▷ "Change driver profile"
3. "Continue as guest"

Deleting the BMW ID/driver profile

1. Tap the icon or personal picture on the status bar.
2. ▷ "Manage BMW IDs"
   ▷ "Change driver profile"
3. Tap the icon for the desired BMW ID or driver profile.

Removing a BMW ID from the vehicle causes the vehicle to be removed from the My BMW App. If the BMW ID has been synchronized with the BMW Cloud, the data stored in the BMW Cloud is retained after the BMW ID is deleted. If the currently active BMW ID is removed, the guest profile is activated.

Removing a vehicle from the My BMW App removes the corresponding BMW ID from the vehicle. If the BMW ID was synchronized with the BMW Cloud, the BMW ID data stored in the BMW Cloud will be retained.

If the vehicle is removed from the primary user's My BMW App, it will also be removed from the My BMW App of the other users. The corresponding BMW IDs are removed from the vehicle.

If the vehicle is reset to factory settings, it is removed from each user's My BMW App, and all BMW IDs are removed from the vehicle.

Transfer of the vehicle key

A vehicle key that is assigned to a BMW ID or a driver profile can be used to view or change the stored personal settings.

Before giving a vehicle key to another person, remove the associated driver detection as necessary. Changes to the driver detection can be made in the settings of the BMW ID or the driver profile.

The BMW Digital Key provides the option to transfer a digital key to permit other persons the use of your own vehicle.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 74.

Settings

General information

Settings added when adding a BMW ID or creating a driver profile can be changed.

1. Tap the icon or personal picture on the status bar.
2. "Settings"

The following settings are available for the BMW ID:

- The type of driver detection.
- The profile picture.
- Synchronization with the BMW Cloud.
- The personal salutation.

The following settings are available for the driver profile:

- The type of driver detection.
- The profile picture.
- The profile name.

Selecting a profile picture

The profile picture can be selected from the predefined profile pictures:

1. Tap the icon or personal picture on the status bar.
2. "Settings"
3. "Manage profile picture"
4. "Select profile picture"

The profile picture from the My BMW App profile can be used for BMW IDs. Synchronization with the BMW Cloud must be enabled in the settings in order to use the profile picture from the My BMW App. The default pictures can only be selected after deleting the profile picture on the My BMW App or disabling synchronization.

System limits

A clear driver detection via the vehicle key or the digital key may not always be possible in the following cases, for example:

- The driver changes, but the vehicle is not locked and unlocked.
- If multiple vehicle keys or multiple digital keys linked to a BMW ID or driver profile are located outside the vehicle on the driver's side.
- When the vehicle was unlocked via the My BMW App.

There are technical limitations to using the settings for a BMW ID in other vehicles. For example, settings may be stored for a system that is not available, or available in a non-compatible version, in other vehicles.

Opening and closing

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Vehicle key

General information

The vehicle comes with two vehicle keys.

Vehicle keys contain a replaceable battery as well as an integrated key.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, various settings are possible for the button functions.

A BMW ID or a driver profile with personal settings can be assigned to a vehicle key.

To provide information on maintenance recommendations, the service data is stored in the vehicle key.

To prevent possible locking in of the vehicle key, take the vehicle key with you when exiting the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle key has a button cell battery. Batteries or button cell batteries can be swallowed and lead to serious or fatal injuries within two hours, for example due to internal burns or chemical burns. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Keep the vehicle key and batteries out of reach of children. Immediately seek medical help if there is any suspicion that a battery or button cell battery has been swallowed or is located in any part of the body.

Overview

Buttons on the vehicle key.

Icon	Meaning
	Unlock.
	Lock. Pre-conditioning, refer to page 295.
	Open the cargo area.
	Panic mode. Pathway lighting, refer to page 161.

Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be disabled and replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If the lost vehicle key has an assigned BMW ID or driver profile, the connection to this vehicle key must be deleted. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the BMW ID or driver profile.

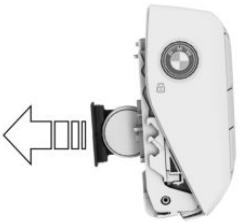
Replacing the battery

NOTICE

Improper batteries in a battery-operated device can damage the device. There is a risk of property damage. Always replace the discharged battery with a battery with the same voltage, the same size and the same specification.

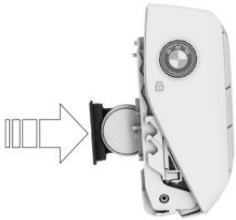
1. Press and hold the button, arrow 1, and push the cover, arrow 2, forward and remove it from the side.

2. Remove the battery housing from the vehicle key to the side.



3. Remove the battery from the battery housing.

4. Insert a CR2032 3V battery with the positive side facing down.
5. Insert the battery housing into the vehicle key.



6. Insert the cover into the vehicle key.

Have old batteries disposed of by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, or take them to a collection point.

Batteries contain harmful chemicals. Disposing of batteries with household waste is prohibited by law.

Integrated key

General information

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked manually using the integrated key.

Depending on the national-market version, the integrated key will fit in the glove compartment.

Safety information

Warning

For some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with particular knowledge.

There is a risk of injury and danger to life if people or animals remain in the vehicle for a long period of time and are exposed to extreme temperatures. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people or animals in it. Do not leave babies, toddlers or animals alone in the vehicle.

Removing the integrated key

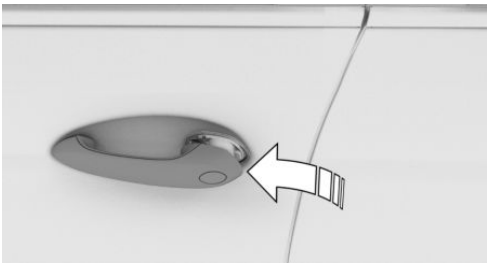
1. Press and hold the button, arrow 1, and push the cover, arrow 2, forward and remove it from the side.

2. Slide out the integrated key at the open side of the vehicle key.

3. Remove the integrated key from the vehicle key.

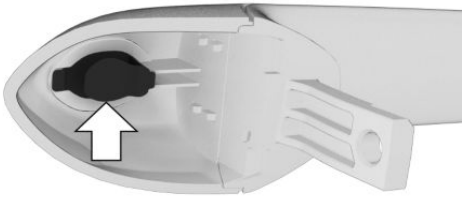
Unlocking the vehicle manually

1. Pull and hold the driver's door handle outward with one hand.



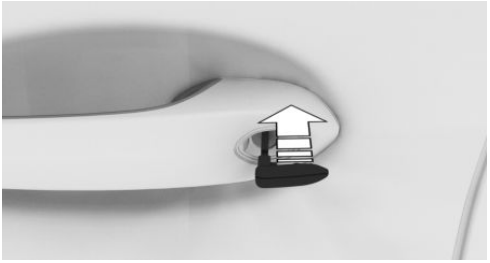
2. Guide one finger of your other hand from the back under the cover cap and push the cover cap out.

   Use the thumb for counter support to prevent the cover cap from falling out of the door handle.



3. Remove the cover cap.
4. The position of the integrated key in the door lock depends on the vehicle.

   Unlock the door lock with the integrated key by turning it counterclockwise.



5. Open the driver's door.
6. Press the central locking button to unlock the other doors.

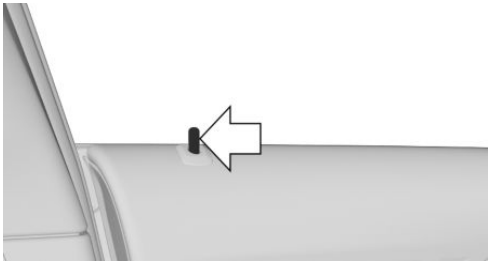
   With the vehicle de-energized: pull the door opener of the other doors from the inside.

Locking the vehicle manually

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the vehicle.

Overview



Lock button for manual locking of the doors.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close all doors.
2. Enter the vehicle on the front passenger's side and close the front passenger door.
3. Press the central locking button to unlock all doors.

   If vehicle is de-energized: press down the lock buttons on all doors except the front passenger door.
4. Exit the vehicle through the front passenger door.
5. Press down the lock button on the front passenger door and close the front passenger door.
6. Pull the door handles to make sure they are locked. If necessary, repeat the process.

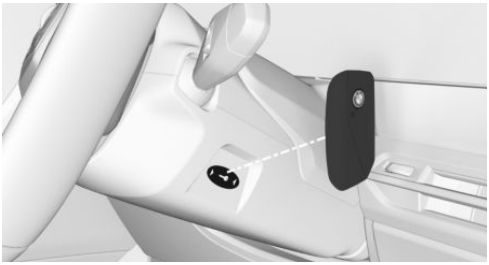
Alarm system

If the vehicle is unlocked with the integrated key via the door lock, the activated alarm system will be triggered when the door is opened.

In this case, use the vehicle key emergency detection to switch off the alarm.

If the vehicle is locked with the integrated key via the door lock, the alarm system will not be activated.

Emergency detection of the vehicle key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the vehicle key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. To turn on drive-ready state via emergency detection of the vehicle key, hold the back of the vehicle key to the marking on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. ▷ If the vehicle key is detected:

   Turn on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

   ▷ If the vehicle key is not detected:

   Slightly change the position of the vehicle key and repeat the procedure.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

Vehicle key detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.
- Fault of the radio link from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.
- Fault of the radio link from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.

  Do not carry the vehicle key in close proximity to other electronic devices.
- Wireless transmission interrupted by mobile device charging process, e.g., charging a mobile phone.
- The vehicle key is located in direct proximity of the wireless charging tray.

  Place the vehicle key in a different location.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key. Use the Emergency detection of the vehicle key to turn on drive-ready state.

BMW Digital Key

Principle

BMW Digital Key makes it possible to unlock, lock, and start the vehicle using digital keys.

BMW Digital Key can be used with a compatible smartphone or other compatible mobile devices.

To unlock and start a vehicle with a compatible smartphone, this function must be offered by the smartphone manufacturer. The My BMW app can be used to check if the smartphone and vehicle are compatible and which functions are supported.

Each vehicle can be provided with a main digital key. Additional digital keys can be shared and then deleted.

General information

BMW Digital Key availability and functionality depend on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

The Key Card is part of the BMW Digital Key.

A BMW ID or a driver profile with individual settings can be assigned to a digital key.

When using a smartphone as a digital key, the deactivated Key Card must be located in the vehicle.

In situations where the vehicle is to be given to another person, they can be given the Key Card instead of the smartphone. For service appointments, the Key Card or vehicle key must be handed over to the service center. The Key Card must be activated before it can be handed over.

Additional information:

- BMW ID/driver profiles, refer to page 65.
- Key Card, refer to page 77.

The BMW website provides additional information under the keyword “Digital Key”.

Functional requirements

The following functional requirements must be met for BMW Digital Key:

- The smartphone is compatible with BMW Digital Key.
- The vehicle is linked with the ConnectedDrive account of the vehicle owner.
- The smartphone's rechargeable battery has sufficient charge. The necessary minimum charge of the rechargeable battery depends on the smartphone.
- Bluetooth must be activated on the smartphone for contactless unlocking and locking using the digital key.

Enabling the main digital key

Vehicle owner's smartphone is enabled as a main digital key in the vehicle. The vehicle owner must prove his authorization for the vehicle for this purpose.

Both vehicle keys must be located in the vehicle to be enabled.

To enable, follow the instructions on the smartphone and control display.

Sharing digital keys

General information

Digital Key allows the sharing of digital keys with other people. This is possible using the vehicle owner's smartphone or a smartphone with the corresponding authorization. This function must be supported by the smartphone.

Forwarding authorization

To share the digital key, select the corresponding function on the smartphone, for instance in the Wallet app.

As soon as a digital key is shared with another person, the person will receive an invitation. When the invitation is accepted, the digital key on the recipient's smartphone will be activated.

Limiting the range of functions

Certain functions of the digital key can be limited before handing it over. For instance, if the digital key is passed on to a novice driver, the switch-off for driving stability control systems can be disabled and the engine power can be reduced.

To activate the functional limitations, unlock the vehicle with the corresponding digital key. To turn on drive-ready state, place the smartphone in the tray. A Check Control message appears when the functional limitation activates. The Check Control message can be viewed again in the Message Center.

If functional limitations do not activate, additional digital keys or vehicle keys may have been detected. In this case, manually switch to the driver profile with the functional limitations.

For more information, refer to the ConnectedDrive Portal and My BMW app.

Authentication

Depending on the recipient's smartphone model, an authentication may be required for security and safety reasons.

A vehicle key, a digital key with corresponding authorization, or another method can be used for authentication. Follow the corresponding instructions on the smartphone or the control display.

Deleting digital keys

General information

Deleted digital keys will be removed from the list of enabled digital keys.

Deleted digital keys cannot be restored.

Deleting the main digital key

The main digital key can be deleted using a smartphone or via iDrive.

The main digital key is deleted immediately.

Deleting a shared key

Shared keys can be deleted using a smartphone with the corresponding authorization, using the smartphone with a shared key, or via iDrive.

A key can only be deleted via smartphone with corresponding authorization once the vehicle is used with a key other than the key to be deleted.

If the smartphone associated with a shared key or iDrive is used to delete a shared key, it will be deleted immediately.

Deletion via iDrive

To delete a digital key via iDrive, a vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Keys"
4. Tap "Digital Key" as necessary.
5. If necessary, select the digital key.
6. Delete the Digital Key.

Resetting the function

To reset the BMW Digital Key function, a vehicle key must be located in the vehicle.

When resetting the BMW Digital Key function, all digital keys including the main digital key will be deleted. The Key Card's digital key is retained.

After the reset, the vehicle can no longer be unlocked, locked or started with a digital key.

The main digital key must be enabled again to be able to use BMW Digital Key again.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Keys"
4. Where applicable, "Digital Key".
5. "Reset function"

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

The vehicle can be unlocked and locked as follows:

- ▷ Using the door handle.
- ▷ With Comfort Access: depending on the national-market version, the vehicle can be locked and unlocked with no-touch activation.

  BMW Digital Key availability and functionality depend on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

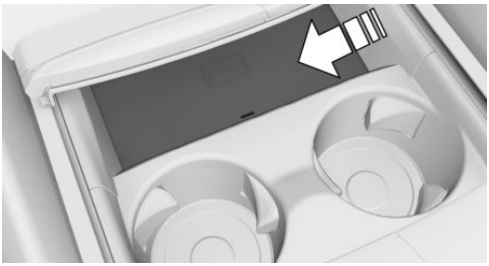
Additional information:

Access to the vehicle interior, refer to page 79.

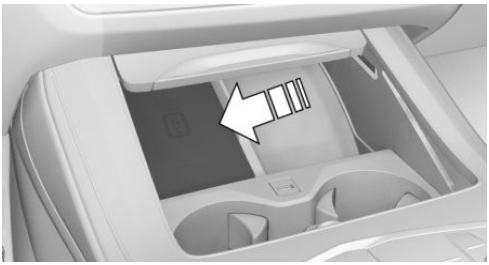
Turning on drive-ready state with the BMW Digital Key

Using the smartphone tray

Tray with thermoelectric cooling and heating system for a cup holder:



Tray without thermoelectric cooling and heating system for a cup holder:



1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place the smartphone in the middle of the smartphone tray.

   Ensure that the display is facing up.
3. Close the cover of the smartphone tray.
4. Press the Start/Stop button to turn on drive-ready state.

Inside the vehicle

With Comfort Access, it is sufficient, depending on the country, for the smartphone with Bluetooth enabled to be located inside the vehicle.

Press the Start/Stop button to turn on drive-ready state.

Sale of the smartphone

Delete all digital keys on the smartphone prior to selling the smartphone. This ensures that the smartphone can no longer be used for the vehicle.

Changing smartphones

To use a new smartphone as a master Digital Key, activate the new smartphone according to the instructions for the master Digital Key. The previous main key can be deleted when the new smartphone is activated.

Sale of the vehicle

Prior to selling a vehicle, reset the Digital Key function or remove the vehicle from the ConnectedDrive account of the current vehicle owner.

When the vehicle is removed from the ConnectedDrive account, all digital keys for the vehicle will be deleted. The Key Card's digital key is retained and deactivated.

System limits

The interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor of the alarm system cannot be switched off with a digital key.

Additional information:

Alarm system, refer to page 91.

Malfunction

Digital key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The smartphone is shielded from the sensors in the vehicle by a smartphone cover that is not suitable.
- Objects such as a chip card or the Key Card are located between the smartphone and the smartphone cover.
- Fault of the connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the smartphone due to buildings or metal objects.
- Some smartphones offer the option to protect the digital key with additional authentication. If using the digital key, the user must authenticate themselves, e.g., via PIN, fingerprint, or facial recognition.

  If the recognition system is defective, the digital key can no longer be used. If neither the vehicle key nor the Key Card is available, the vehicle can be locked/unlocked using Remote Services in the My BMW App on another smartphone. Alternatively, the vehicle can be unlocked by the BMW ConnectedDrive call center upon request.

Key Card

Principle

The Key Card is part of the BMW Digital Key. A digital key that has already been paired with the vehicle is installed on the Key Card. When using a smartphone as a digital key, the deactivated Key Card must be located in the vehicle. In situations where the vehicle is to be given to another person, they can be given the Key Card instead of the smartphone. The key is handed over with the Key Card for service appointments and if only the digital key is used. The Key Card must be activated before it can be handed over.

General information

Key Card availability depends on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

The Key Card should be left in the vehicle. Before leaving the vehicle, deactivate the Key Card. This is because, if activated, the Key Card can be used to start the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the Key Card and a mobile device are in the wireless charging tray at the same time, the Key Card could become damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not place the Key Card in the Wireless Charging tray at the same time as a mobile device.

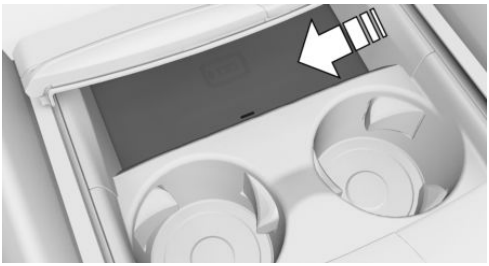
Activating/deactivating the Key Card in the vehicle

Functional requirement

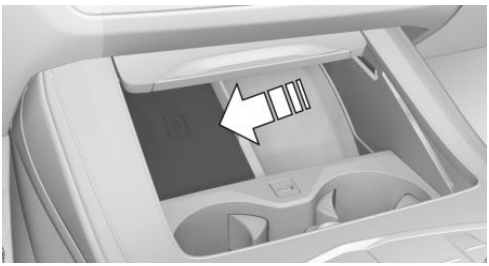
A vehicle key must be located in the vehicle to activate and deactivate the Key Card.

Activating the Key Card

Tray with thermoelectric cooling and heating system for a cup holder:



Tray without thermoelectric cooling and heating system for a cup holder:



1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place the Key Card in the middle of the smartphone tray.
3. Follow the instructions on the control display.

Deactivating the Key Card

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Keys"
4. Where applicable, "Digital Key".
5. Select the Key Card option.
6. Select the “Deactivate Key Card” option.

A deactivated Key Card remains in the list of paired digital keys.

If using a digital key or vehicle key while an activated Key Card is detected, the control display will show an additional message to deactivate the Key Card.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

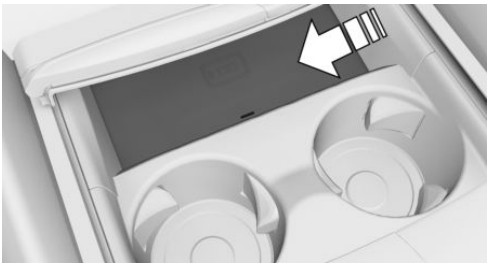
The vehicle can be unlocked and locked with the activated Key Card.

Additional information:

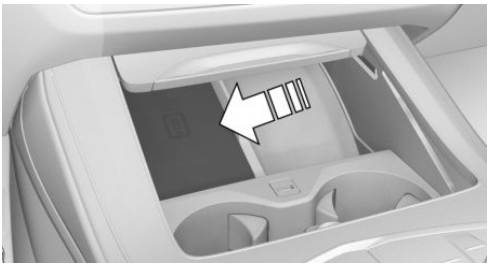
Access to the vehicle interior, refer to page 79.

Turning on drive-ready state with the Key Card

Tray with thermoelectric cooling and heating system for a cup holder:



Tray without thermoelectric cooling and heating system for a cup holder:



1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place the activated Key Card in the middle of the smartphone tray.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

After drive-ready state is switched on, the Key Card can be removed from the tray.

Malfunction

The vehicle may not be able to detect the Key Card if there are objects between the smartphone tray and the Key Card, e.g., a wallet or smartphone case.

Access to vehicle interior

Safety information

Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

Warning

For some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with particular knowledge.

There is a risk of injury and danger to life if people or animals remain in the vehicle for a long period of time and are exposed to extreme temperatures. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people or animals in it. Do not leave babies, toddlers or animals alone in the vehicle.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- ▷ Establishing standby.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Actions during unlocking

Depending on the settings, the following functions are performed when unlocking the vehicle:

- Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap will be unlocked or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked.
- The unlocking of the vehicle can be confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- The welcome light can be turned on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- If a BMW ID or a driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this BMW ID or driver profile will be activated.
- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, folded-in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in using the button inside the vehicle, they will not fold out when the vehicle is unlocked.
- Anti-theft protection is switched off.
- The alarm system is switched off.

Additional information:

- Settings, refer to page 89.
- Welcome lights, refer to page 160.
- BMW ID/driver profiles, refer to page 65.

Actions during locking

Depending on the settings, the following functions are performed when locking the vehicle:

- The locking of the vehicle can be confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, the exterior mirrors can be folded in automatically when locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning system is turned on.

The following functions are executed:

- All doors, the cargo area, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- Anti-theft protection is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or the door openers.
- The alarm system is switched on.

If the drive-ready state is still turned on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn will honk twice. In this case, drive-ready state must be turned off using the Start/Stop button.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 89.

With the vehicle key

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

If only the driver's door and fuel filler flap have been unlocked due to the settings in place, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

The lighting functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

All vehicle access points are locked.

On the door handle

Principle

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

General information

The function is available with Comfort Access.

Depending on national-market version, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked via the door handle using a compatible smartphone and digital key.

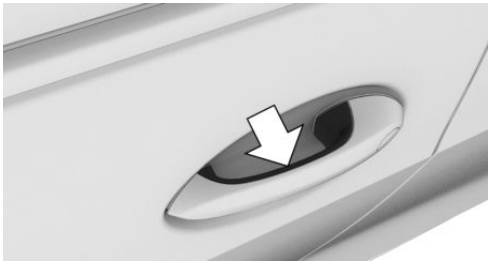
Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 74.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Carry the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- ▷ Bluetooth must be activated on the smartphone to unlock and lock using the digital key.
- ▷ To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- ▷ After locking, approx. 2 seconds must elapse before unlocking is possible.

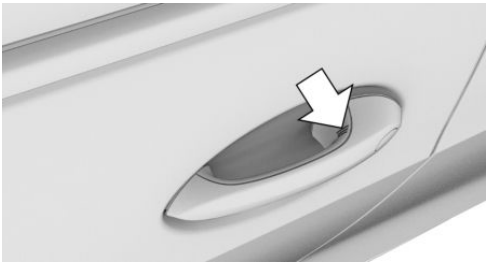
Unlock vehicle



Fully grasp the handle of a front door.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. With your finger, touch the grooved surface on a closed front door handle for approx. 1 second without gripping the door handle.



Malfunction

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the locking request detection on the door handles.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the vehicle key or use the integrated key.

Touchless unlocking/locking of the vehicle

Principle

When the driver approaches the locked vehicle with the vehicle key, the vehicle is unlocked.

When the driver walks away from the unlocked vehicle with the vehicle key, the vehicle will be locked.

General information

The function is available with Comfort Access.

The vehicle will be unlocked when an authorized vehicle key is detected in the unlocking zone.

The unlocking zone is located within a radius of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m around the vehicle.

The vehicle will be locked when the vehicle key leaves the locking zone.

The locking zone is located within a radius of approx. 9 ft/2 m around the vehicle.

Depending on the national-market version, touchless unlocking and locking is also possible for compatible smartphones with a digital key. Enable Bluetooth on your smartphone to do so.

If the vehicle key is located in the unlocking zone for an extended period of time without movement, the vehicle will be locked automatically.

If someone is detected on a seat while locking the vehicle, the following restrictions apply:

- The vehicle will be locked but not secured against theft.
- The alarm system is not activated.
- The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 74.

Actions during unlocking

If the settings specify that only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap will be unlocked, note the following:

The driver's door and fuel filler flap will only unlock when the driver is within the driver's door unlocking zone.

Settings, refer to page 89.

Functional requirements

- Carry the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- Automatic unlocking and locking must be activated in the settings.
- The drive-ready state must be turned off.
- If the vehicle has been in the idle state for several days, contactless unlocking/locking will only be available after the vehicle has been driven.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 89.

With the Key Card

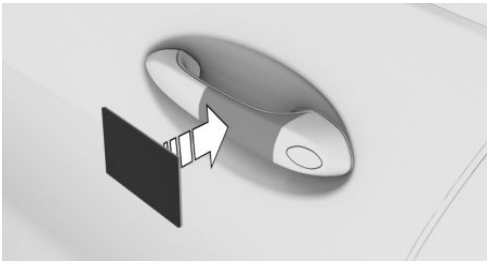
Principle

The Key Card is a chip card on which the digital key is installed. The Key Card can be used to unlock and lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

Key Card, refer to page 77.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle with the Key Card



Hold the activated Key Card directly at the center of the driver's door handle.

When locking the vehicle with the Key Card, make sure that all doors and the cargo area are closed.

If the Key Card is not detected, slightly change the position of the Key Card and repeat the procedure.

With the BMW Digital Key

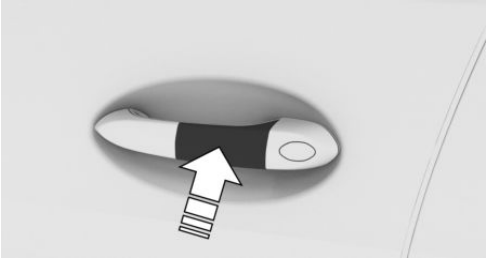
Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, a digital key can be installed on a compatible smartphone and used to unlock and lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 74.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle



Hold the smartphone NFC antenna directly at the center of the driver's door handle. The position of the near field communication antenna depends on the smartphone model.

When locking the vehicle with the smartphone, make sure that all doors and the cargo area are closed.

Frequently Asked Questions

What precautions can be taken to be able to open a vehicle, despite accidentally locking in the vehicle key?

- ▷ The app's remote services offer the option to lock and unlock a vehicle.

  This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract, and the app must be installed on a smartphone.
- ▷ Unlocking the vehicle can be requested via the BMW ConnectedDrive Call Center.

  An active BMW ConnectedDrive contract is required.

Access to the cargo area

General information

The cargo area will be opened to the configured opening height.

The tailgate consists of the upper and the lower tailgate. The lower tailgate opens downward to make loading the cargo area easier.

The opened lower tailgate can be loaded with up to 250 kg.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the travel path of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

Warning

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Foreign objects such as sand or icing between the bumper and tailgate may cause damage when operating the lower tailgate. There is a risk of property damage. If necessary, remove foreign objects from the bumper and the lower tailgate before operating the lower tailgate.

Warning

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heating elements while driving. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

NOTICE

Manual operation of the tailgate in the wrong sequence can damage the tailgate. There is a risk of property damage. Close the lower tailgate first before closing the upper tailgate manually.

With the vehicle key

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the following settings can be changed:

- ▷ Unlocking the cargo area with the vehicle key also unlocks the doors.
- ▷ Before unlocking the cargo area with the vehicle key, first unlock the vehicle.
- ▷ Only the upper tailgate can be opened, or the upper and lower tailgates together, using the vehicle key.
- ▷ The tailgate can be operated using the button on the vehicle key.

Functional requirements

To open the cargo area with the vehicle key, the trailer power socket must not be occupied.

Selector lever position P must be engaged to open the cargo area with the vehicle key.

You must enable the setting for opening with the vehicle key.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 89.

Opening the cargo area

- ▷ Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.
- ▷ Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

If necessary, the lower tailgate will also open.

On the cargo area

General information

With Comfort Access, the cargo area can be accessed without activating the vehicle key.

The key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

Depending on the national-market version, compatible smartphones with a digital key are also detected automatically. In this case, the cargo area can be opened with a smartphone.

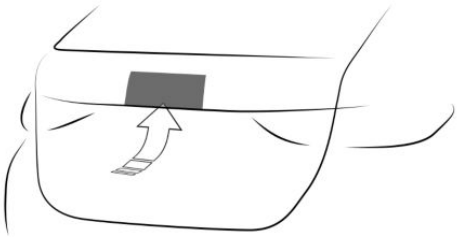
Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 74.

Functional prerequisites

- ▷ Carry the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- ▷ Bluetooth must be activated on the smartphone to detect the digital key.

Opening the upper tailgate



- Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the cargo area.
- With Comfort Access: carry the vehicle key with you and press the button on the cargo area.

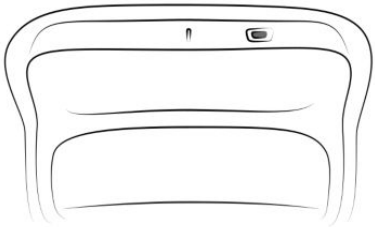
  Locked doors are not unlocked.

Opening the lower tailgate

The upper tailgate must be open.

Press the button on the lower tailgate.

Closing the upper tailgate



-

  Press the button on the inside of the upper tailgate.
-

  Press the button on the inside of the upper tailgate.

  The vehicle is locked after closing the cargo area. To do so, the driver's door must be closed and the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the cargo area.

The lower tailgate will be closed automatically with the upper tailgate.

Closing the lower tailgate

Make sure that there is no cargo on the lower tailgate.

Press the button on the lower tailgate.

Inside the vehicle

Functional requirements

To open the cargo area using the button inside the vehicle, the trailer power socket must not be occupied.

The vehicle key or digital key must be located within the vehicle in order to close the cargo area using the button inside the vehicle.

When the vehicle is locked, selector lever position P must be engaged before the tailgate can be opened using the button inside the vehicle.

Opening the cargo area

Press the button in the driver's door.

If necessary, the lower tailgate will also open.

Closing the cargo area

Pull and hold the button in the driver's door.

The lower tailgate will be closed automatically with the upper tailgate.

An acoustic signal sounds before the cargo area is closed.

Interruption of the opening procedure

The opening procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- When the vehicle starts moving.
- By pressing the button on the outside of the cargo area. Pressing it again closes the cargo area again.
- By pressing the button on the inside of the cargo area. Pressing it again closes the cargo area again.
- By pressing the button on the vehicle key.

Pressing the button again continues the opening process.

- By pressing or pulling the button in the driver's door. Pressing again continues the opening procedure.

Interruption of the closing procedure

The closing procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- If the vehicle drives off with a jerky movement.
- By pressing the button on the outside of the cargo area. Pressing it again opens the cargo area again.
- By pressing the button on the inside of the cargo area. Pressing it again opens the cargo area again.
- By pressing the button on the vehicle key. Pressing it again opens the cargo area again.
- By releasing the button in the driver's door. Pulling again and holding continues the closing motion.

Opening and closing the cargo area contactlessly

Principle

You can open the cargo area contactlessly when carrying the vehicle key on your person. With automatic tailgate activation, the cargo area can also be closed contactlessly.

Sensors detect specific foot movements near the center of the rear area, and the cargo area opens or closes.

General information

Function availability depends on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

If the vehicle key is within the sensor range, the cargo area may open or close inadvertently if you unintentionally move your foot or if a foot movement is detected.

The sensor has an approximate range of 5 ft/1.50 m extending from the rear area.

If contactless opening is used for the cargo area, the locked doors will not be unlocked.

Depending on the national-market version, contactless opening and closing of the cargo area is also possible for compatible smartphones with a digital key.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 74.

Safety information

Warning

With hands-free opening of the cargo area, there may be unintentional contact with vehicle parts, e.g., hot exhaust system. There is a risk of injury. When moving your foot, make sure you have a firm stance and do not touch the vehicle.

NOTICE

When using rear carriers, the cargo area may open unintentionally if the trailer socket is not occupied. If opened unintentionally, the tailgate may collide with the rear carrier. There is a risk of property damage. Do not carry the vehicle key with you when mounting a rear carrier. When using rear carriers, make sure that the trailer socket is occupied.

Functional requirements

- To close the cargo area contactlessly, the automatic tailgate must be installed.
- Selector lever position P must be engaged.
- Contactless opening and closing of the cargo area must be activated in the settings.

- Bluetooth must be activated on the smartphone to open and close the cargo area contactlessly using the digital key.
- No trailer hitches should be mounted.
- Carry the vehicle key with you, for instance in your pants pocket.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 89.

Hands-free opening of the cargo area

1. To open the cargo area hands-free, walk behind the vehicle and hold the vehicle key in the middle at approx. arm's length.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the driving direction and immediately pull it back. During these movements, the foot must be passed through the range of both sensors.

   If necessary, move the foot slightly to the right or left of center again.

Before the cargo area opens, the hazard warning system flashes.

Depending on vehicle equipment, moving a foot again will stop the opening process. The subsequent foot movement will close the cargo area again.

Hands-free closing of the cargo area

Perform the foot movement for opening the cargo area.

The hazard warning system flashes and an acoustic signal sounds.

Moving a foot again will stop the closing process. The subsequent foot movement will open the cargo area again.

System limits

The detection of the foot movement may be limited due to the following external conditions:

- Ice, snow or slush on the rear of the vehicle.
- Dirt or road salt on the rear of the vehicle.

Movement in range of the sensors may cause the cargo area to open unintentionally, e.g., due to running water when cleaning the vehicle or from heavy rainfall, or due to the moving brushes in a car wash. To prevent such unintended opening of the cargo area in such cases, keep the vehicle key at a sufficient distance from the rear of the vehicle.

Malfunction

Warning

With manual operation of a blocked tailgate, it can release itself unexpectedly from the blocking. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not operate the tailgate manually if it is blocked. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

In the event of an electrical malfunction in the automatic tailgate, operate the unlocked tailgate slowly with a smooth motion by hand.

To close the tailgate fully, press down lightly only. Closing occurs automatically.

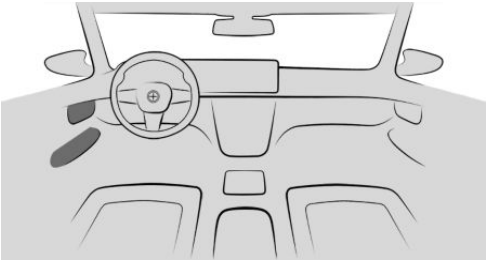
Buttons for the central locking system

General information

The vehicle is automatically locked when driving off.

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights are illuminated.

Overview



The central locking buttons are located on the front door.

Lock.

Unlock.

Locking the vehicle

Press the button in the driver's door or front passengers door with the front doors closed.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button in the driver's door or front passenger's door.

Opening the door

▷ Press the button to unlock all the doors.

Pull the door opener above the armrest.

▷ Front doors: pull the door opener on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.

▷ Back doors: pull twice on the door opener on the door to be opened; the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

Soft-close automatic function

Principle

The soft-close automatic function reduces effort and noise when closing vehicle doors.

The door can be pushed into the door lock without effort and the door will close automatically.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed while operating the doors. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear while opening and closing.

Closing

To close the doors, push lightly.

The closing process is automatic.

Valet parking mode

Principle

In the valet parking mode, the control display is disabled.

E.g., this mode can be used when the vehicle is handed over for valet parking.

General information

Depending on the national-market version, the valet parking mode may not be available.

Valet Parking mode has the following restrictions:

- ▷ Vehicle settings cannot be changed via iDrive.
- ▷ Settings stored to a BMW ID or guest profile cannot be changed.
- ▷ Personal data cannot be displayed.
- ▷ The audio system is muted, with the possible volume of the audio system being limited.
- ▷ The integrated Universal Remote Control is deactivated.
- ▷ Dynamic Stability Control cannot be turned off.
- ▷ The availability of certain settings of the driving modes is limited.
- ▷ The Head-up display may turn off.

Additional information:

BMW ID/driver profiles, refer to page 65.

Functional requirement

The driver has registered in the vehicle with a BMW ID.

Activating the valet parking mode

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Valet parking mode"
5. "PIN"
6. Enter the one-time PIN to activate valet parking mode.
7. "Activate valet parking mode"

Deactivating valet parking mode

1. Activate the desired BMW ID on the lock screen.
2. Enter the valet parking mode PIN associated with the BMW ID.

   If the one-time PIN for valet parking mode has been forgotten: enter the login information for the BMW ID or scan the QR code.

Settings

General information

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.

Unlocking and locking

Doors

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Unlock"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"

     Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "All doors"

     The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Touchless unlocking/locking

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Comfort access"
5. Select the desired setting.

Automatic unlocking

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Unlock doors at end of trip"
   - ▷ "Unlock doors when in P"

If locked, the vehicle unlocks automatically when drive-ready state is turned off or selector lever position P is engaged.

Automatic locking

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Lock after a short time"

The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if no door is opened after unlocking.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Flash on lock/unlock"

     Unlocking is signaled by flashing twice, locking by flashing once.
   - ▷ With alarm system:

     "Sound on lock/unlock"

     Unlocking is confirmed with two sound signals, locking is confirmed with one sound signal.

Folding mirrors in automatically

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Fold mirrors on lock/unlock"

Cargo area

Upper or both tailgates

The button in the car's interior can be set up to open only the upper tailgate or the upper and lower tailgate together:

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Tailgate"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Upper tailgate"

     Only the upper tailgate opens.
   - ▷ "Both tailgates"

     The upper and lower tailgate will be opened together.

     To open the upper and lower tailgate at the same time, the upper tailgate must be closed when the button is pressed.

     This setting is also valid for the touchless opening of the tailgate.

Tailgate and doors

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, this setting may not be offered.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Tailgate"
5. Select the desired button.
6. Select the desired setting:

- "Upper tailgate"

  The upper tailgate is opened.
- "Upper tailgate and door(s)"

  The tailgate is opened and the doors unlocked.
- "Both tailgates"

  The upper and lower tailgate will be opened.
- "Both tailgates and door(s)"

  The upper and lower tailgate will be opened and the doors unlocked.

The following settings are available for the button on the vehicle key:

- "Tailgate will only open if vehicle is already unlocked"

  The vehicle must be unlocked before the tailgate can be used with the vehicle key.
- "Lock tailgate button"

  The operation of the tailgate via the vehicle key is disabled.

Adjusting the opening height

You can set how far the upper tailgate can be opened.

When adjusting the opening height, make sure the clearance above the tailgate is at least 4 in/10 cm.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Tailgate"
5. "Opening height"
6. Monitor the tailgate and set the desired opening height.

Opening/closing the cargo area contactlessly

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Tailgate"
5. Select the desired setting.

Alarm system

Principle

The alarm system issues a visual and acoustic signal when someone attempts to open the locked vehicle incorrectly.

General information

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- Opening a door, the hood, or the cargo area.
- Movements in the vehicle interior.
- Changes in the vehicle inclination such as during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
- Disconnected battery voltage.
- Incorrect use of the diagnostic socket.
- Locking the vehicle while a device is connected to the diagnostic socket.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

- Acoustic alarm:

  Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- Optical alarm:

  By flashing of the hazard warning system and headlights, where required.

Do not modify the system to ensure function of the alarm system.

Turning the alarm system on/off

The alarm system is turned on as soon as the vehicle is locked from the outside.

The alarm system does not turn on if the vehicle is locked manually from the inside.

The alarm system is switched off as soon as the vehicle is unlocked.

Opening the doors with the alarm system switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if the door was unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Opening the cargo area with the alarm system switched on

The cargo area can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After closing the cargo area, the cargo area will be locked and monitored again. The hazard warning system flashes once during closing.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- ▷ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- ▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Indicator light on the interior mirror

- ▷ The indicator light flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  The alarm system is switched on.
- ▷ The indicator light flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or tailgate are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

  When the remaining open access points are closed, the interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be turned on.
- ▷ The indicator light flashes even though all access points have been closed:

  Alarm system error.
- ▷ The indicator light goes out after unlocking:

  The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- ▷ The indicator light flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

  The alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The inclination of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The vehicle interior is monitored.

The alarm system triggers when movement is detected inside the vehicle.

The windows and the glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

General information

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- In car washes.
- In duplex garages.
- During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- With animals in the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked after start of refueling.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the button on the vehicle key within 30 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator light illuminates for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

Ending the alarm

Unlock the vehicle.

If the vehicle is unlocked with the integrated key, the drive-ready state must subsequently be turned on via the emergency detection of the vehicle key.

Window

General information

When a window is frequently opened to the same position, this task can be performed by the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant. This is useful if you frequently use the same parking garage, for example.

Additional information:

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, refer to page 53.

Safety information

Warning

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the windows is clear while opening and closing.

With the vehicle key

Opening windows

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows open for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Closing the windows

With Comfort Access: Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after locking.

The windows close for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, exterior mirrors are folded in unless they were folded in during locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning system is turned on.

On the door handle

Principle

The windows can be closed using the door handle without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

General information

The function is available with Comfort Access.

Depending on national-market version, the windows can also be closed via the door handle using a compatible smartphone and digital key.

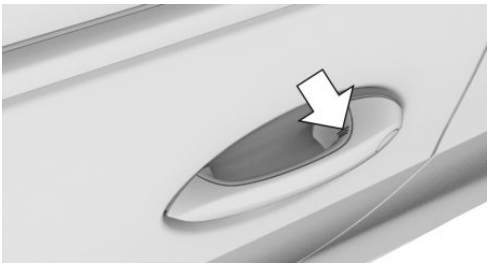
Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 74.

Functional prerequisites

- ▷ Carry the vehicle key with you, for instance in your pants pocket.
- ▷ Bluetooth must be activated on the smartphone to close the window(s) using the digital key.

Closing the windows



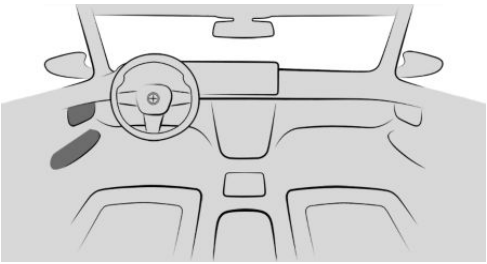
With your finger, touch and hold the grooved surface on a closed door handle without grasping the door handle.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, exterior mirrors are folded in unless they were folded in during locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning system is turned on.

Inside the vehicle

Overview



Power window

Functional requirements

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.

The vehicle key or digital key must be inside the vehicle.

Opening windows

- ▷ Press the switch to the resistance point.

  The window opens while the switch is being held.
- ▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Closing the windows

- ▷ Pull the switch to the resistance point.

  The window closes while the switch is being held.
- ▷ Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window closes automatically. Pulling again stops the motion.

Anti-trap mechanism

Principle

The anti-trap mechanism prevents objects or body parts becoming jammed between the door frame and window while a window is being closed.

General information

If resistance or blockage is detected while a window is being closed, the closing will be interrupted.

Safety information

Warning

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact anti-trap mechanism. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the travel path of the windows.

Closing without the anti-trap mechanism

In case of danger from the outside or if icing might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

   The window closes with limited anti-trap mechanism. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without the anti-trap mechanism.

Window roller sunblinds

Safety information

Warning

With closed roller sunblinds and open windows, the roller sunblinds may be strained while driving due to the air stream. The roller sunblinds may be damaged and vehicle occupants may be harmed. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not open the windows while driving if the roller sunblinds are closed.

Operation

Pull out the roller sunblind at the loop and hook it onto the bracket.

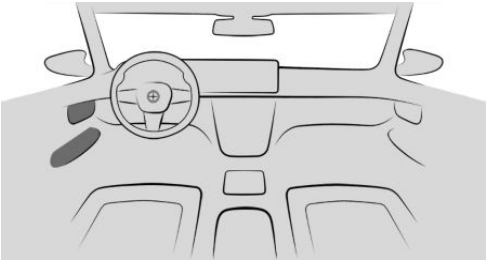
Safety switch

Principle

The safety switch can be used to prevent children, for instance, from opening and closing the rear windows using the switches in the rear.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the safety function is switched off automatically.

Overview



The safety switch is located on the driver's door.

Turning the safety functions on/off

To activate/deactivate the safety function, press the safety switch on the driver's door.

The LED in the button illuminates when the safety function is switched on.

Glass sunroof

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the glass sunroof. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.

With the vehicle key

Opening glass sunroof

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The glass sunroof with sun protection will be opened for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Closing glass sunroof

With Comfort Access: press and hold the button on the vehicle key in close range of the vehicle after locking.

The glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, exterior mirrors are folded in unless they were folded in while locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning system is turned on.

On the door handle

Principle

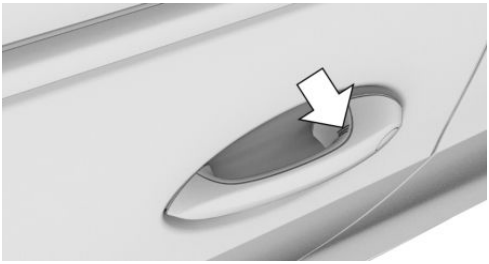
The glass sunroof can be closed using the door handle without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

Functional prerequisites

- ▷ Carry the vehicle key with you, for instance in your pants pocket.
- ▷ Bluetooth must be activated on the smartphone to close the glass sunroof using the digital key.

Closing glass sunroof



Touch the grooved surface on the external door handle of a closed front door with your finger and hold it there without grasping the door handle.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, exterior mirrors are folded in unless they were folded in while locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning system is turned on.

Inside the vehicle

Functional requirements

The glass sunroof and sun protection can be operated under the following conditions:

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.

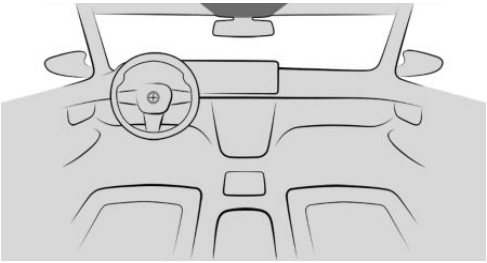
The vehicle key must be inside the vehicle.

General information

The glass sunroof and the sun protection are operated using the same switch.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Opening/closing the glass sunroof/sun protection.

Lifting/closing glass sunroof

Push switch briefly upward.

- ▷ The closed glass sunroof tilts and the sun protection opens slightly.
- ▷ The opened glass sunroof closes until it is in the tilted position. The sun protection does not move.

- ▷ The tilted glass sunroof closes.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection separately

- ▷ Slide switch back to the resistance point and hold.

  Holding down the switch opens the sun protection. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens.

- ▷ Slide switch forward to the resistance point and hold.

  The glass sunroof closes while the switch is being held. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes.

- ▷ Slide the switch back past the resistance point.

  The sun protection opens automatically. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens automatically.

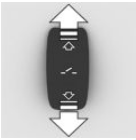
  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

- ▷ Push the switch forward past the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof closes automatically. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes automatically.

  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection together



- ▷ Briefly press out the switch twice in succession toward the rear past the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof and sun protection open together.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

▷ Briefly press out the switch twice in succession toward the front past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof and sun protection close together.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Comfort position

In some models, the wind noises in the car's interior are lowest when the glass sunroof is not fully open. In these models, the automatic function initially only opens the glass sunroof up to this comfort position.

Operating the switch inside the vehicle again opens the glass sunroof completely.

Anti-trap mechanism

Principle

The anti-trap mechanism prevents objects or body parts from becoming jammed between the roof frame and glass sunroof while the glass sunroof is closing.

General information

If a resistance or blockage is detected while the glass sunroof is closing, the closing operation is interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position, or it is stopped when closing from the tilted position.

Closing from the open position without the anti-trap mechanism

If an external hazard or ice prevents normal closure, proceed as follows:

1. Close all doors.
2. Switch on drive-ready state or stop a moving vehicle.
3. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

   The glass sunroof closes with limited anti-trap mechanism. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.
4. Push the switch forward again past the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without the anti-trap mechanism. Make sure that the closing path is clear.

Closing from the lifted position without the anti-trap mechanism

In case of danger from the outside or if icing might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Close all doors.
2. Switch on drive-ready state or stop a moving vehicle.
3. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

Initializing after a power interruption

General information

After a power interruption during the opening or closing process, the glass sunroof can only be operated to a limited extent. Initializing the system can help in this case.

The system can be initialized under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- The vehicle will not be moved until the initialization is completed.
- The drive-ready state is established.
- The outside temperature is above 41°F/5°C.

During initialization, the glass sunroof closes without the anti-trap mechanism.

Make sure that the closing path is clear.

Initializing the system

Press the switch up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

Initialization begins within 15 seconds.

- If the glass sunroof is closed, it opens then closes again.
- If the glass sunroof is open, it first closes, then opens and closes again.
- The sun protection is initialized in the closed position.

Initialization is complete once the glass sunroof and the sun protection have opened then closed again.

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Sitting safely

An ideal seat position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seat position plays an important role. Follow the information in the following chapters.

Additional information:

▷ Seats, refer to page 100.
▷ Seat belts, refer to page 106.
▷ Head restraints, refer to page 108.
▷ Airbags, refer to page 168.

Seats, front

Safety information

Warning

Seat setting while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only adjust the seats when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the protective effect of the seat belt can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the seat belt in an accident. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.

Warning

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Adjusting seats

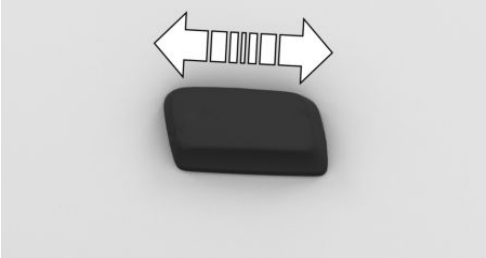
General information

The current seat position can be stored using the memory function.

Overview

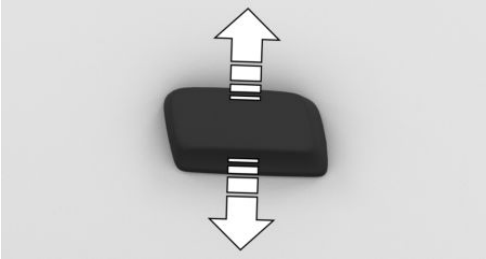
The switches for setting the seats are located on the front seats.

Setting the longitudinal direction



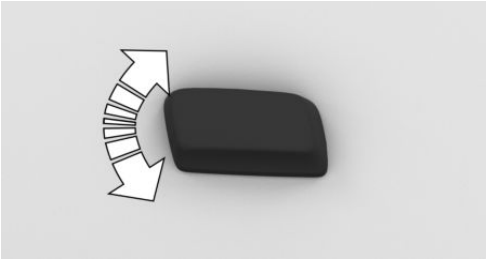
Press switch forward or backward.

Adjusting the height



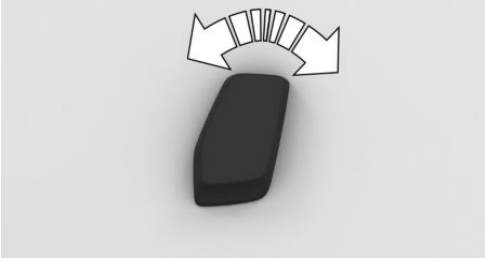
Press switch up or down.

Adjusting seat tilt



Tilt switch up or down.

Adjusting backrest tilt



Tilt switch forward or backward.

Adjusting the seat position automatically

General information

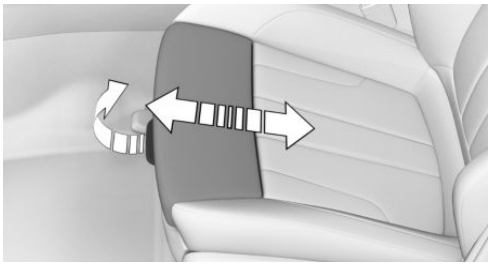
The seat setting for the driver's seat is stored in the active BMW ID or in the active driver profile. If the BMW ID or the driver profile is reactivated at a later time, the saved position will be called up automatically.

Activate/deactivate the function

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Seat comfort"
4. Select driver's seat.
5. "Use automatically"
6. Select the desired setting.

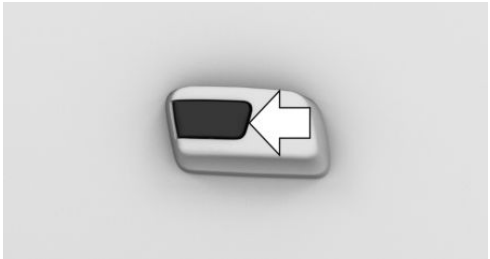
Thigh support

Sport seat



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and push the thigh support forward or back.

Multifunctional seat



Push the switch in the front or back.

Lumbar support

Principle

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright sitting position.

Adjusting the lumbar support

- ▷ Press the front/rear section of the button:

  The curvature is increased/decreased.
- ▷ Press the upper/lower section of the button:

  The curvature is shifted up/down.

Backrest width

Principle

Adjusting the backrest width may improve side support when cornering.

General information

The backrest width is changed by adjusting the side sections of the backrest.

Adjusting the backrest width

- ▷ Press the front section of the button:

  The backrest width decreases.
- ▷ Press the rear section of the button:

  The backrest width increases.

Upper backrest

Principle

The upper backrest supports the back in the shoulder region. A correct setting leads to a relaxed seat position and reduces strain on the shoulder muscles.

General information

When exiting the vehicle, the upper backrest moves all the way back. The last set position is automatically applied before you start driving.

Adjusting the upper backrest

- ▷ Press the front section of the button:
  The upper backrest is inclined forward.
- ▷ Press the rear section of the button:
  The upper backrest is inclined backward.

Front passenger seat functionality

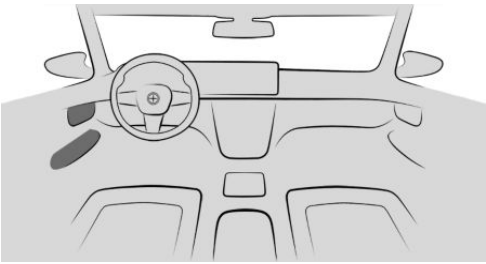
Principle

The front passenger seat can be adjusted with the switches of the driver's seat, for instance to increase the legroom in the rear.

If needed, the memory position for the front passenger seat can be stored.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Front passenger seat functionality

Turning on

1. Press the button. The LED illuminates.
2. Adjust the front passenger seat on the driver's seat.
3. If needed, store the memory position for the front passenger seat.

Turning off

Press the button. The LED goes out.

The function deactivates itself automatically after some time.

Seat massage

Principle

The seat massage keeps your muscles relaxed and improves blood circulation in the lumbar region, which can help avoid fatigue.

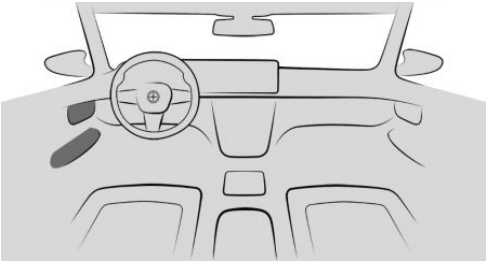
General information

Eight different massage programs can be selected:

- ▷ Hip activation.
- ▷ Upper-body activation.
- ▷ Whole body activation.
- ▷ Back massage.
- ▷ Shoulder massage.
- ▷ Lumbar massage.
- ▷ Upper body training.
- ▷ Whole-body exercise.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Massage function

Turning on

Press the button once for each intensity level.

The maximum intensity level is reached when three LEDs are illuminated.

Turning off

Press and hold the button until the LEDs turn off.

Adjusting the massage program

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Seat comfort"
4. Select desired seat.
5. "Massage"
6. Select the desired setting.

Calibrating the front seats

General information

As soon as the electric seat setting no longer functions precisely, a Check Control message is displayed on the control display.

To restore the accuracy of the electric seat setting, the front seats must be calibrated.

Safety information

Warning

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Functional requirements

To calibrate the front seats, the following functional requirements must be met:

- ▷ Selector lever position P is engaged.
- ▷ The seat to be calibrated is unoccupied.

Calibrating the front seats

1. To calibrate the rear seat position, press and hold the longitudinal direction switch backward until the seat stops.
2. Repeat step 1 until the seat stops then moves slightly in the opposite direction. The rear end position is calibrated.
3. To calibrate the front seat position, press and hold the longitudinal direction switch forward until the seat stops.
4. Repeat step 3 until the seat stops then moves slightly in the opposite direction. The front end position is calibrated.

As soon as the message on the control display disappears, the calibration is complete. If the message remains active, repeat the calibration.

If the message is still shown after repeated calibration, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Rear seats

Second row of seats

General information

You can adjust the backrest angle and longitudinal direction of the second-row seating as necessary.

The backrest tilt for the center section is adjusted together with the left rear seat backrest.

Safety information

Warning

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Warning

There is a danger of jamming when folding down the center armrest in the rear. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the center armrest is clear when folding down.

Warning

When folding back the second row of seats, there is a danger of jamming. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the second row of seats is clear prior to folding down.

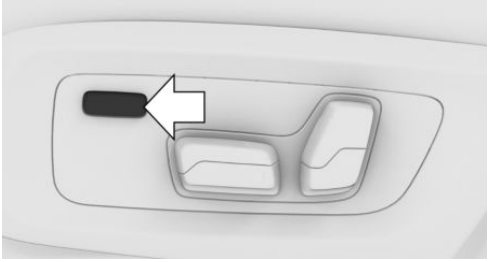
Warning

Seats in the second row of seats are not locked when they are folded down and they can move. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only fold the seats in the second row down while loading. When driving without a load, fold back and lock the seats in the second row before driving away.

Overview

The seat setting switches are located on the seats.

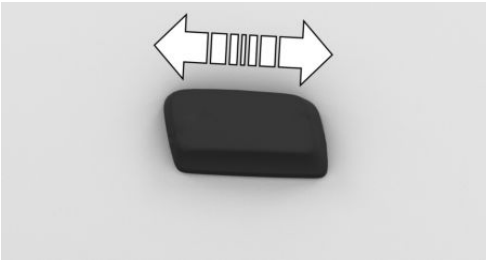
Resetting to base position



Press the button to reset to base position.

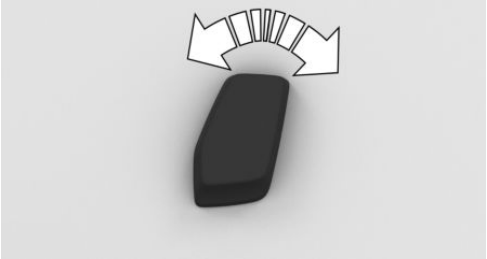
The process is canceled if the button is pressed again.

Longitudinal direction



Press switch forward or backward.

Backrest tilt



Tilt switch forward or backward.

Seat belts

General information

The vehicle is fitted with five or seven seat belts to ensure occupant safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

Always make sure that seat belts are being worn by the occupants before driving off. The airbags supplement the seat belts as an additional safety device. The airbags do not replace seat belts.

All seat belt anchorage points are designed to achieve the best possible protective effect of the seat belts when used properly and with the correct seat settings.

The two outer seat belt buckles of the rear seats are intended for the persons sitting on the left and right.

The center seat belt buckle of the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

Additional information:

Notes on sitting safely, refer to page 100.

Safety information

Warning

Use of a seat belt to buckle more than one person will potentially defeat the ability of the seat belt to serve its protective function. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Do not strap in more than one person per single seat belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, and must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.

Warning

The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, can be limited or lost when seat belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened seat belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing seat belts correctly.

Warning

With a rear seat backrest that is not locked, the protective effect of the middle seat belt is not guaranteed. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. If you are using the middle seat belt, lock the wider rear seat backrest.

Warning

The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, may not be fully operational or fail in the following situations:

- The seat belts or seat belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
- Seat belt tensioners or seat belt winders were modified.

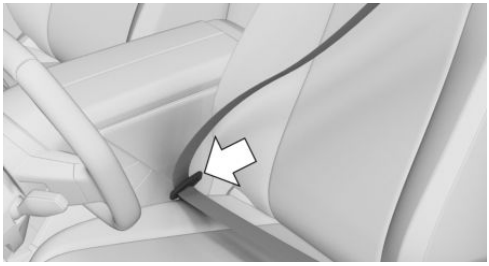
Seat belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Keep clean and do not modify: seat belts, seat belt buckles, seat belt tensioners, seat belt winders, and seat belt anchors. After an accident, have the seat belts checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Correct use of seat belts

- Wear the seat belt so that it fits tightly to your body over your pelvis and shoulder and is not twisted.
- Wear the seat belt low down on your hips in the pelvic region. The seat belt must not press on your stomach.
- Do not rub the seat belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- Avoid thick clothing.
- Re-tighten the seat belt frequently upward in your upper body area.

Fastening the seat belt

1. Guide the seat belt slowly over shoulder and hip to put it on.
2. Insert the buckle tongue into the seat belt buckle. The seat belt buckle must engage audibly.



To ease accessibility to the seat belt buckle, an adjustable slider is available on the belt to help position the buckle when not in use.

Unfastening the seat belt

1. Hold down the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the seat belt buckle.
3. Guide the seat belt back into the seat belt winder.

Seat belt reminder

General information

Make sure that the seat belts are positioned correctly.

The seat belt reminder becomes active in the following situations:

- When the seat belt on the driver's side or on the passenger's side is not fastened.
- When the seat belt is unfastened while driving.
- When objects are lying on a seat.

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates after turning on the drive-ready state when the seat belt reminder is active.

A Check Control message is displayed where applicable. Check whether the seat belt has been fastened correctly.

Icon	Meaning
	Seat belt on the driver's seat is not buckled.
	Seat belt on the passenger seat or another seat in the vehicle is not buckled.
	Seat belt is buckled on the corresponding seat.
	Seat belt is not buckled on the corresponding seat.

Safety mode

Depending on vehicle equipment, the driver and front passenger seat belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving off, if the seat belt is fastened.

If necessary, in critical driving situations, e.g., during emergency braking, the front seat belts are automatically pretensioned.

After a critical driving situation without an accident, the front seat belts are loosened again. If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the seat belt using the red button in the buckle. Fasten the seat belt before continuing to drive.

Front head restraints

General information

The current head restraint position can be stored using the memory function.

Safety information

Warning

The lack of protective effect due to removal or incorrect adjustment of head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- ▷ If possible, adjust the head restraint so that the center of the head restraint supports the back of the head at eye level.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.
- ▷ For manually adjustable head restraints: After adjusting, make sure that the head restraint is correctly engaged.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

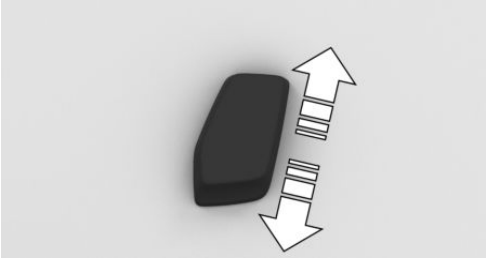
- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Active head restraint

In the event of a rear-end collision with a certain severity, the active head restraint automatically reduces the distance from the head.

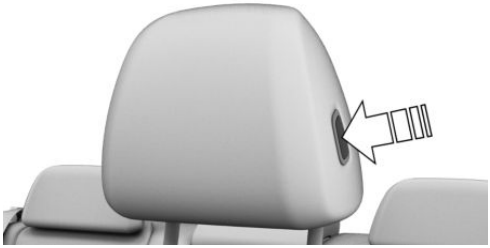
Have the active head restraint checked and if necessary replaced in the case of damage or if it was exposed to an accident.

Adjusting the height



Press switch up or down.

Adjusting the distance



- ▷ Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- ▷ Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

Adjusting the side extensions

Fold the side extensions on the head restraint forward for increased side support in the resting position.

Removing the head restraints

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Rear head restraints

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The lack of protective effect due to removal or incorrect adjustment of head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- ▷ If possible, adjust the head restraint so that the center of the head restraint supports the back of the head at eye level.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.
- ▷ For manually adjustable head restraints: After adjusting, make sure that the head restraint is correctly engaged.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

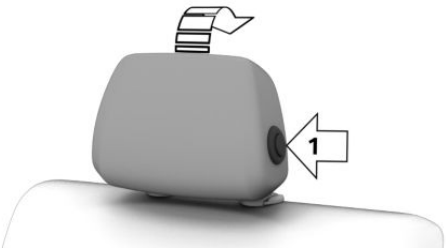
- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Folding down the head restraints

General information

To improve the view to the rear, the outside head restraints can be folded down. Fold down the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the corresponding seat.

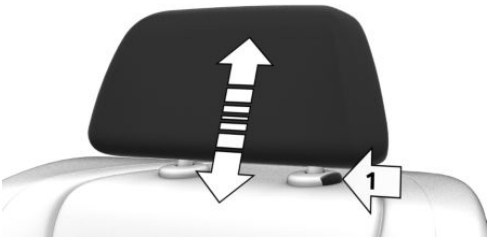
Folding down the head restraints



Press button, arrow 1, and fold the head restraint back.

To return the head restraint to its initial position, fold the head restraint forward as far as it will go. Make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height of the outer head restraints



- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- ▷ To raise: push the head restraint up.

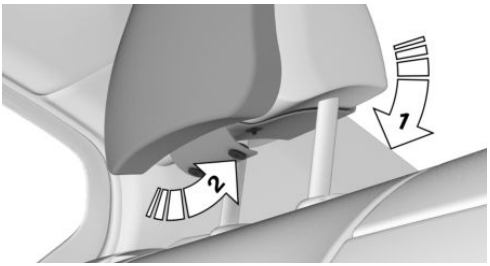
Removing the head restraint

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Cushions for head restraints in rear

Only use the pillow when the vehicle is switched off.

1. Bring the head restraint to a sufficiently high position.
2. Attach the pillow and place the pillow band around the back of the head restraint, arrow 1.



3. Close pushbuttons, arrow 2.

Exterior mirrors

General information

The front passenger's side exterior mirror is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

The exterior mirror adjustment is stored in the active BMW ID or in the active driver profile. If the BMW ID or the driver profile is reactivated at a later time, the stored position is called up automatically.

The current exterior mirror adjustment can be stored using the memory function.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the driver's side exterior mirror also dims automatically. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this.

Depending on vehicle equipment, both exterior mirrors are heated automatically as necessary and when drive-ready state is on.

Safety information

Warning

Objects in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the road users behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.

Overview

Icon	Meaning
	Fold the exterior mirrors in and out.
	Adjust the exterior mirrors.
	Select exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor.

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

Press the button.

The selected exterior mirror moves along with the button movement.

Selecting the exterior mirror

To change over to the other mirror:

Slide the switch.

Malfunction

In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the exterior mirror by pressing on the edges of the mirror glass.

Folding in/folding out the exterior mirrors

NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in car washes. There is a risk of property damage. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.

Press the button.

Folding is possible at vehicle speeds of up to approx. 12 mph/20 km/h.

Folding the exterior mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

- In car washes.
- On narrow roads.

Exterior mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated as needed and when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Automatic dimming

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this.

Automatic Curb Monitor

Principle

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the passenger's side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for instance.

Activating the Automatic Curb Monitor

1. Slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

When the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, the Automatic Curb Monitor is deactivated.

Deactivating the Automatic Curb Monitor

Slide the switch to the front passenger's side exterior mirror position.

Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature

General information

The interior mirror is dimmed automatically.

Photocells are used for control:

- In the mirror glass.
- On the rear of the mirror.

Overview

Functional requirements

- Keep the photocells clean.
- Do not cover the area between the interior mirror and the windshield.

Steering wheel

Safety information

Warning

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.

Electric steering wheel adjustment

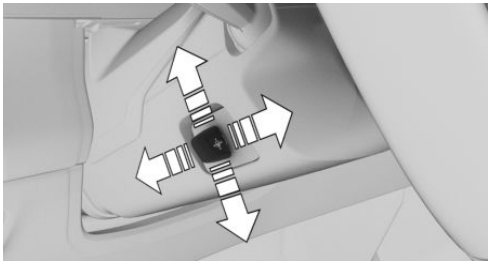
General information

The steering wheel adjustment is stored in the active BMW ID or in the active driver profile. If the BMW ID or the driver profile is reactivated at a later time, the stored position is called up automatically.

The current steering wheel position can be stored using the memory function.

To make it easier to enter and get out of the vehicle, the steering wheel moves temporarily into the upper position.

Adjusting the steering wheel position



Press the switch to adjust the steering wheel forward/back position and height to the seat position.

Memory function

Principle

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Exterior mirror adjustment.
- ▷ Steering wheel position.
- ▷ Height of the Head-up display.

General information

Two memory locations with different settings can be set for each driver profile.

The following settings are not stored:

- ▷ Backrest width.
- ▷ Lumbar support.

Safety information

Warning

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected seat or steering wheel movements. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Overview

The memory buttons are located on the front doors.

Storing settings

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the button. The LED illuminates.
3. Press the desired memory button 1 or 2 while the LED is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired memory button 1 or 2.

The stored position is called up.

The procedure stops when a seat setting switch or one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

The adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is interrupted after a short time while driving.

Seat climate control

Various climate control functions are available for the seats.

Additional information:

Climate control, refer to page 279.

Transporting children safely

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

The right place for children

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- ▷ Establishing standby.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Warning

A hot vehicle may result in death to persons, especially children, or animals. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Do not leave people, especially children, or animals unattended in the vehicle.

Warning

Exposure to intense sunlight can cause child restraint systems and their components to become very hot. Persons may sustain burn injuries when touching the hot components. There is a risk of injury. Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight or cover where necessary. If necessary, let the child restraint system cool down before transporting a child. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Children in the rear seat

General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm should be transported in the rear seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a seat belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight, or size.

Safety information

Warning

The seat belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft/150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, can be limited or lost when seat belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened seat belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft/150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.

Children on the front passenger seat

General information

When using a child restraint system on the front-passenger seat, observe the respective national and local regulations.

When using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated.

Additional information:

Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbag, refer to page 170.

Safety information

Warning

If activated, the front passenger airbag can injure children seated in a child restraint systems when deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light is illuminated.

Installing child restraint systems

General information

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

Safety information

Warning

The protective effect of child restraint systems and their fastening systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident can be limited or lost. A child cannot be properly restrained in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and danger to life.

Do not use child restraint systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident.

If attachment systems have been damaged or strained by an accident, have them checked and replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat setting or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible and necessary, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

Before installation

Before installing child restraint systems, ensure that the rear seat backrests are locked.

Move the rear seats into the rearmost position to facilitate installation of the child restraint system.

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating the airbag

Warning

If activated, the front passenger airbag can injure children seated in a child restraint systems when deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light is illuminated.

After mounting a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated.

Additional information:

Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbag, refer to page 170.

Seat position and height

After installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and, if possible, bring it up to the highest position. This seat position and height ensure the best possible position for the belt and offers optimal protection in the event of an accident.

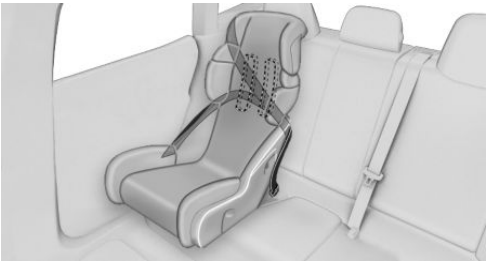
After mounting a universal child restraint system, adjust the tilt of the seat backrest so that the belt is not constrained.

If the upper attachment point of the seat belt is located in front of the seat belt guide of the child seat, move the front passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible seat belt guide position is reached.

Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: before installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Child seat security



To secure child restraint systems, the rear seat belts and front passenger seat belt can be locked to prevent them from being pulled out.

Locking the seat belt

1. Pull out the seat belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the seat belt.
3. Allow the seat belt strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The seat belt is locked.

Unlocking the seat belt

1. Unbuckle the seat belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the seat belt strap to be pulled in completely.

Lower anchors for child restraint systems

General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for CHildren.

Pay attention to the specifications, operating tips and safety instructions from the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

Mounts for lower anchors

General information

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lbs/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

Safety information

Warning

If the lower anchors on child restraint system are not engaged correctly, the child restraint system will not be able to provide suitable protection. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are correctly engaged and that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest.

Warning

The mounts for the lower anchors and attachment points of the child restraint system are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. If other objects are attached, the mounts or attachment points can be damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only attach child restraint systems at the corresponding mounts for the lower anchors or attachment points.

Position

Icon	Meaning
	The corresponding icon shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair (2) of LATCH icons. For vehicles equipped with a middle seat: It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to secure a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle seat belt instead for the middle seat.

Before installing child restraint systems

Before installing a child restraint system, pull the seat belt away from the area of the lower anchors of the child restraint system.

Installing child restraint systems

1. Mount child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Make sure that the child restraint system mount is correctly engaged in the lower anchor on both sides.

With comfort rear seats: installation of child restraint systems

To facilitate installation, you may need to change additional settings:

1. Tilt the backrest slightly backward.
2. Mount child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.

3. Make sure that the child restraint system mount is correctly engaged in the lower anchor on both sides.
4. After installation, move the backrest back up slightly so that the child restraint system rests lightly against the backrest.

Child restraint systems with tether strap

General information

When attaching child restraint systems to the upper attachment points, observe the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer.

Safety information

Warning

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect is reduced. There is a risk of injury. Ensure that the upper retaining strap is guided to the upper attachment point without twisting and not over sharp edges.

Warning

If the rear seat backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or nonexistant. In certain situations, for instance braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear seat backrest can fold forward. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that the rear seat backrests are locked.

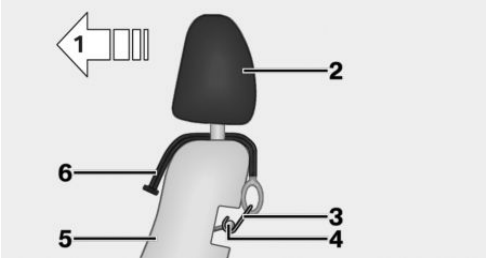
Warning

The mounts for the lower anchors and attachment points of the child restraint system are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. If other objects are attached, the mounts or attachment points can be damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only attach child restraint systems at the corresponding mounts for the lower anchors or attachment points.

Attachment points for upper retaining strap

Icon	Meaning
	The respective icon shows the attachment point for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this icon. It is located on the rear seat backrest, the rear shelf or the rear seat.

Routing the retaining strap



1 Driving direction
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for upper retaining strap
4 Attachment point
5 Seat backrest
6 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the attachment point

1. Bring the seat of the second seat row into the base position.

   Reset to base position, refer to page 105.
2. Raise the head restraint, if needed.
3. Guide the upper strap between or along both sides of the head restraint rods to the attachment point.

   Middle seat: raise the head restraint, if needed, press the button on the mounts for this purpose. Guide the upper strap between the head restraint rods, or along both sides of the head restraint rods, to the attachment point.
4. If there is a retaining strap, run it between the backrest and the cargo cover.
5. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the attachment point.
6. Tighten the retaining strap.

Locking the doors and windows in the rear

General information

In certain situations it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows, for instance when transporting children.

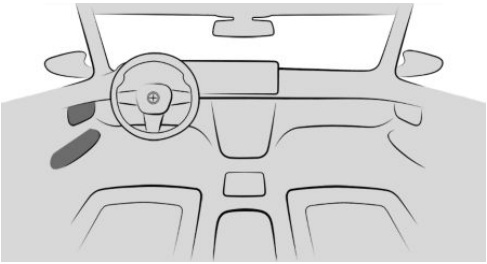
Doors

Push the locking lever on the rear doors up.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

After locking, make sure that the door cannot be opened from the inside.

Safety switch for rear



Press the button on the driver's door.

Various functions are locked and cannot be operated in the rear such as the power windows.

Driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

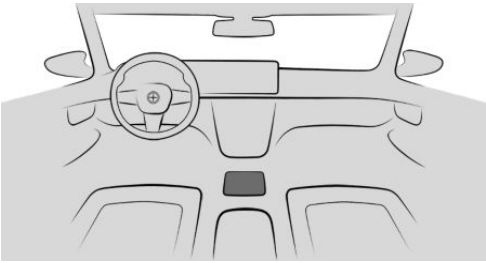
Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Start/Stop button

Principle

Pressing the Start/Stop button turns drive-ready state on/off.

Overview



Start/Stop button

Turning on the drive-ready state

Drive-ready state turns on when the brake pedal is pressed while pushing the Start/Stop button.

Pushing the Start/Stop button again will turn off drive-ready state and turn on standby state.

Additional information:

▷ Drive-ready state, refer to page 42.

▷ Standby state, refer to page 41.

Driving off

1. Depress brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.
3. Engage the desired selector lever position, e.g., D or R.
4. To drive off, release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal.

The parking brake releases automatically when the desired selector lever position is engaged.

Artificial driving noise

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, Acoustic Pedestrian Protection produces an artificial driving noise on vehicles with electric or electrically-assisted drives.

Additional information:

Acoustic pedestrian protection, refer to page 172.

Auto Start/Stop function

Principle

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic jam or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains switched on. The engine starts automatically for driving off.

General information

The Auto Start/Stop function switches to standby whenever the engine is started using the Start/Stop button.

The function is activated at low speeds.

Engine stop

Functional requirements

The engine is switched off automatically when stopping under the following conditions:

- ▷ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- ▷ The brake pedal remains depressed while the vehicle is at a standstill or the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold.
- ▷ The driver's seat belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

Manual engine stop

If the engine was not switched off automatically when the vehicle stopped, the engine can be switched off manually:

- ▷ Depress the brake pedal forcefully again from the current pedal position.
- ▷ Engage selector lever position P.

When all functional preconditions are fulfilled, the engine switches off.

Air conditioning system when the engine is switched off

The air flow from the air conditioning system is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Display in the instrument cluster

The display in the instrument cluster indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an automatic engine start.

Functional limitations

The engine does not switch off automatically in situations like the following:

- ▷ In case of a steep downhill grade.
- ▷ Brake pedal was not depressed hard enough.
- ▷ When the outside temperature is high and the air conditioning system is on.
- ▷ Vehicle interior has not yet been heated or cooled as desired.
- ▷ When there is heavy window condensation and the air conditioning system is on.
- ▷ Engine or other components are not at operating temperature.
- ▷ Engine cooling is required.
- ▷ Vehicle battery is deeply discharged.
- ▷ At higher elevations.
- ▷ The hood is unlocked.
- ▷ For stop-and-go traffic.
- ▷ After driving in reverse.
- ▷ Without Mild Hybrid technology: wheels are at a sharp angle or steering wheel is being turned.
- ▷ Hill Descent Control is activated.
- ▷ xOFFROAD driving mode is on
- ▷ Selector lever position is S or R.

Starting the engine

Functional requirements

The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

- ▷ By releasing the brake pedal.
- ▷ When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.
- ▷ By the driver assistance systems activated, depending on vehicle equipment and driving situation.

Driving off

Accelerating as usual after starting the engine.

Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:

- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- Hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lights illuminate for a varied length of time.

The engine can only be started using the Start/Stop button.

System limits

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- Vehicle interior is extremely hot when the cooling is on.
- Vehicle interior is extremely cold when the heating is on.
- When there is heavy window condensation and the air conditioning system is on.
- Without mild hybrid technology:

  In case of a steering operation.
- When changing selector lever position from D or P.
- In case of seriously discharged vehicle battery.
- When starting an oil level measurement.

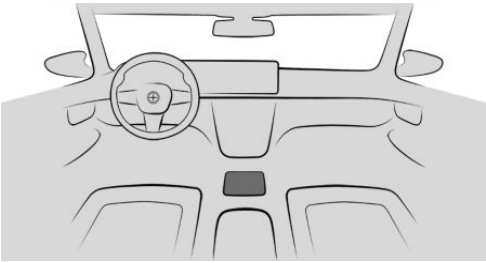
Deactivating the system manually

Principle

In certain driving situations, e.g., traffic jams, it may be helpful to deactivate Auto Start/Stop manually. The engine will then no longer switch off automatically.

If this function is deactivated while the engine is being stopped automatically, the engine will start.

Depending on vehicle equipment: Via button



Press the button.

- LED is illuminated: Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
- LED off: Auto Start/Stop function is enabled.

Depending on vehicle equipment: Via iDrive

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Drivetrain and chassis"
5. "Auto Start/Stop"
6. Select the desired setting.

Via selector lever position

The Auto Start/Stop function is also disabled in selector lever position S.

Via the Driving Experience Control

The Auto Start/Stop function is also deactivated in SPORT driving mode of the Driving Experience Control.

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

If the engine stops automatically, the vehicle can be parked safely, for example to leave it.

1. Press the Start/Stop button.

- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched off.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Selector lever position P is engaged automatically.

2. Set the parking brake.

Automatic deactivation

In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, for instance if no driver is detected.

Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. You may continue driving. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Automatic transmission

Principle

The automatic transmission automatically shifts all gears for driving forward. Shift paddles allow you to shift manually as necessary.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving your vehicle, secure it against rolling away, e.g., by applying the parking brake.

Selector lever positions

Gear position D

Selector lever position for normal driving. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

R reverse gear

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

N Neutral

The vehicle may be pushed or roll without drive, for instance in car washes, in selector lever position N.

Parking position P

General information

Selector lever position, for instance for parking the vehicle. The transmission blocks the drive in selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

P is engaged automatically

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically in situations such as the following:

- ▷ After drive-ready state is switched off, if selector lever position R, D, or S is engaged.
- ▷ After standby is switched off, if selector lever position N is engaged.
- ▷ If the driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is opened while the vehicle is stationary and selector lever position D, S, N, or R is engaged.

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that selector lever position P is engaged and the parking brake is engaged. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to move.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page 130.

Engaging selector lever positions

General information

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a gear position or reverse gear, main-

tain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to drive off.

In certain situations, e.g., to rock free on snow, it is possible to shift between reverse gear and gear position D without pressing the brake.

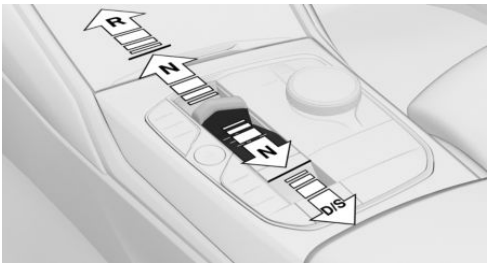
Functional requirements

Only when the drive-ready state is switched on and the brake pedal is depressed is it possible to change from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.

The selection lever position P cannot be changed until all technical prerequisites are met.

Engaging selector lever position D, N, R

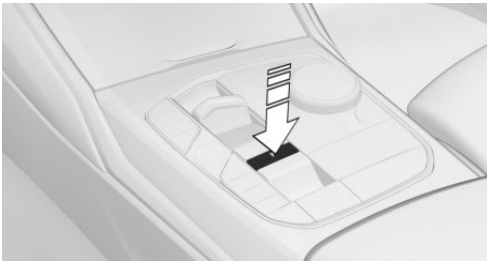
1. Fasten driver's seat belt.
2. Tilt or pull the selector lever into the desired direction, past a resistance point, if needed. The selector lever automatically returns to the center position when released.



Engaging selector lever position P

Press the button.

The parking brake is applied and the transmission lock is engaged.



Press button P.

The transmission lock is engaged.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General information

In some situations, the vehicle is supposed to roll without its own drive for a short distance, for instance in a car wash or to be pushed.

Engaging selector lever position N

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. The wheels are blocked. There is a risk of property damage. Do not switch off standby if the vehicle is meant to coast, e.g., in a car wash.

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake and switch off Automatic Hold.
3. If necessary, loosen the belt.
4. If necessary, open the door.
5. Depress the brake pedal.
6. Engage selector lever position N.
7. Switch off drive-ready state.

   In this way, standby state remains switched on, and a Check Control message is displayed.

   The vehicle can roll.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically after approximately 35 minutes.

If the system is not operational, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

Electronically unlock the transmission lock, if needed.

Additional information:

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock, refer to page 126.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance.

Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

S Sport mode

Principle

The shifting points and shifting times in the Sport program are designed for sportier handling. The transmission shifts up later, for example, and the shift times are shorter, depending on vehicle equipment.

Activating the Sport program

Pull the selector lever from selector lever position D to D/S.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance S1.

The sport program of the transmission is activated.

Ending the Sport program

Pull the selector lever to D/S.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selector lever position is displayed, for example P.

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock

General information

Unlock the transmission lock electronically, e.g., to maneuver the vehicle out of a hazardous area in the event of a malfunction.

Before unlocking the transmission lock, secure the vehicle against rolling away, for instance with a wheel chock.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Quickly press the Start/Stop button three times without pressing the brake.
2. Depress the brake pedal.
3. Press the selector lever to position N until position N is shown on the selector lever.

   An appropriate Check Control message is displayed.
4. Maneuver the vehicle from the hazardous area and secure it against rolling away.

Shift paddles

Principle

The shift paddles on the steering wheel are used to change gears manually.

General information

Shifting

The vehicle only shifts at suitable RPM and road speeds.

Even in manual mode, the transmission shifts automatically in certain situations, e.g., when speed limits are reached.

Temporary manual mode

In selector lever position D, pulling a shift paddle switches into manual mode temporarily.

The engaged gear is also displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance D1.

After conservative driving in manual mode without acceleration or shifting via the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

It is possible to switch into automatic mode:

- ▷ Pull and hold the right shift paddle until D is displayed in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ In addition to the pulled right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.

Continuous manual mode

In Sport program S, pulling a shift paddle switches to manual mode M permanently.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., M1.

It is possible to switch into automatic mode:

- ▷ Pull and hold the right shift paddle until S is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- ▷ In addition to the pulled right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.
- ▷ Pull the selector lever to D/S.

When M2 is set manually while the vehicle is stationary, the transmission will no longer shift back to M1. This shift behavior is maintained until M1 is engaged manually or manual mode M is exited.

Shifting

- ▷ Upshifting: pull the right shift paddle.
- ▷ Downshifting: pull left shift paddle.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

Advanced mode

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, the Steptronic transmission offers an advanced mode with adapted shift characteristics.

- ▷ Automatic downshift to lowest possible gear.

  If the left shift paddle is pulled and held, the Steptronic transmission automatically shifts down to the lowest possible gear.
- ▷ Avoid automatic upshifting in manual mode.

  In manual mode, the Steptronic transmission does not shift up automatically when speed limits are reached.
- ▷ There is no downshifting for kickdown.

Enabling advanced mode

The advanced mode is enabled in manual mode when Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the advanced mode can also be enabled in manual mode as follows, for example:

▷ "SPORT PLUS": Driving mode is selected.
▷ Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

Launch Control

Principle

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on roads with good traction under dry surrounding conditions.

General information

Using Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not turn the steering wheel when driving off with Launch Control.

Do not use Launch Control when breaking in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Break-in, refer to page 320.

Functional requirement

Launch Control can be used when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted trip of at least 6 miles/10 km.

Driving off with Launch Control

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. Engage forward gear.
3. Activate drive mode: "SPORT".
4. Enabling the driving dynamics setting: "SPORT PLUS".
5. With the left foot, press down forcefully on the brake.
6. Press the accelerator pedal all the way down and hold.

   Launch Control information is displayed in the instrument cluster.
7. The starting engine speed adjusts. Wait briefly until the engine speed is constant. Keep the accelerator pedal in this position.
8. Release the brake within a few seconds of the Launch Control information illuminating.

   The vehicle accelerates.

   Upshifting is performed automatically as long as the Launch Control information is displayed and the accelerator pedal is not released.

   Launch Control stays on as long as the Launch Control information is displayed and the accelerator pedal is not released.

Repeated use during a trip

After Launch Control has been used, the transmission must cool down for a short time before Launch Control can be used again. Launch Control adjusts to the surrounding conditions when used again.

After using Launch Control

To support driving stability, reactivate Dynamic Stability Control as soon as possible.

System limits

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF without Launch Control mode.

Automatic transmission: Sprint function

Principle

Depending on the equipment, the Sprint function can be used for an upcoming acceleration process. The Sprint function prepares the drivetrain for the acceleration process.

General information

When the Sprint function is activated, the response characteristics of the vehicle will become more dynamic.

Activating

1. Keep the left shift paddle pulled until SPRINT is displayed in the instrument cluster.
   - ▷ The transmission shifts down to the lowest possible gear and switches to manual operation M.
   - ▷ A dynamic setting has been activated for the drivetrain.
2. Change gears manually.

Automatic deactivation

The Sprint function is ended automatically when driving moderately for a defined period of time.

Manual deactivation

- ▷ Keep the right shift paddle pulled until SPRINT is no longer displayed in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ In addition to the pulled right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.
- ▷ Press the selector lever from selector lever position S to D.

Driving Experience Control

Principle

The Driving Experience Control influences, among other things, the vehicle's driving dynamics.

The vehicle can be adjusted depending on the situation using various driving modes.

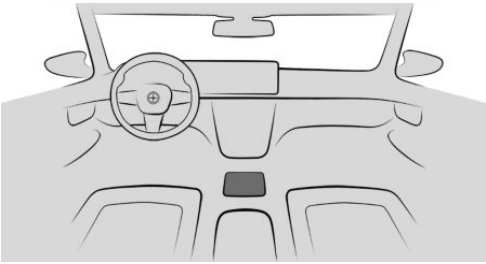
General information

The following systems may be affected, for instance:

- ▷ Drivetrain.
- ▷ Chassis.
- ▷ Steering.
- ▷ Display in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Cruise Control.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Button	Driving mode
SPORT	SPORT SPORT PLUS SPORT INDIVIDUAL
COMFORT	COMFORT
ECO PRO	ECO PRO ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selected driving mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Activating/deactivating drive modes

Press the button for the desired drive mode repeatedly until the desired drive mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

When changing the drive mode, the current drive mode is deactivated.

Driving modes in detail

COMFORT

The COMFORT driving mode is a balanced setting between sporty and consumption-optimized driving.

SPORT

The SPORT driving mode is a dynamic setting for more agility with an optimized suspension.

SPORT PLUS

The SPORT PLUS driving mode is a dynamic setting for maximum agility with an adjusted drive.

ECO PRO

In ECO PRO driving mode, consumption is optimized.

INDIVIDUAL configuration

General information

For some driving modes, there is another mode that can be adjusted individually.

The individual configuration set last is activated directly when the driving mode is called up again.

Configuring and resetting

E.g., ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL drive mode:

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Drivetrain and chassis"
5. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"
6. Select the desired setting.

Reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD"

Enabling INDIVIDUAL

Press the button for the desired driving mode several times.

Drive-off assistant

Principle

On inclines, in selector lever position D, S, or R, this system prevents the vehicle from rolling opposite the set driving direction and provides drive-off support.

Driving off

Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

Depending on the load and driving situation or when a trailer is used, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

If necessary, activate Automatic Hold and also apply the parking brake, as applicable. The parking brake is released automatically when you drive off.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page 133.

Parking brake, refer to page 130.

Parking brake

Principle

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling away when it is parked.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Automatic transmission: Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- ▷ Manual transmission: Make sure that first gear is engaged on uphill gradients and reverse gear on downhill gradients.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

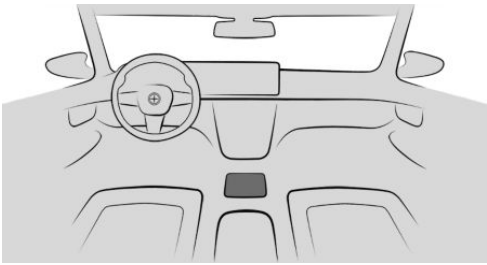
Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- ▷ Establishing standby.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview



Parking brake

Setting the parking brake

With a stationary vehicle

Pull the switch.

The LED illuminates.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red.

The parking brake is set.

While driving

Use while driving serves as an emergency braking function.

Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the switch is pulled.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red, a signal sounds, and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking brake is engaged when the vehicle is stationary.

Engaging the parking brake automatically

In some situations, the parking brake is engaged automatically, e.g., through Automatic Hold.

Additionally, the system can be set to automatically engaging the parking brake when the drive-ready state is turned off.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Drivetrain and chassis"
5. "Parking brake"
6. Select the desired setting.

In selector lever position N, the parking brake will not be engaged automatically.

Releasing the parking brake

Releasing the parking brake manually

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set.

   The LED and the indicator light go out.

   The parking brake is released.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

The parking brake releases automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ When switching from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.
- ▷ When driving off.

The LED and the indicator light go out.

Using the parking brake via iDrive

The parking brake can be engaged or disengaged via iDrive. When the parking brake is operated via iDrive, the current selector lever position remains engaged. Additionally, further information is displayed.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Drivetrain and chassis"
5. "Parking brake"
6. Select the desired setting.

Malfunction

If the parking brake fails or malfunctions, secure the vehicle so that it does not roll away before you exit.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Secure the vehicle against rolling away, for instance with a wheel chock, after getting out of the vehicle.

After a power interruption

To reestablish parking brake operability after a power interruption, an initialization may be required.

1. Turn on standby state.
2. Pull the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set and then push.

This process may take a few seconds. Some mechanical sounds associated with this process are normal.

PARK (P) The indicator light is no longer illuminated as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation again.

Automatic Hold

Principle

Automatic Hold provides assistance by automatically applying and releasing the brake, e.g., when driving off on inclines or in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

General information

The parking brake is automatically engaged under the following conditions:

- ▷ If drive-ready state is turned off.
- ▷ The driver's door is open for more than one second and no pedal is pressed during this time.
- ▷ If the parking brake is used to brake the vehicle to a stop while driving.

In selector lever position N, Automatic Hold is temporarily deactivated.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Automatic transmission: Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- ▷ Manual transmission: Make sure that first gear is engaged on uphill gradients and reverse gear on downhill gradients.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

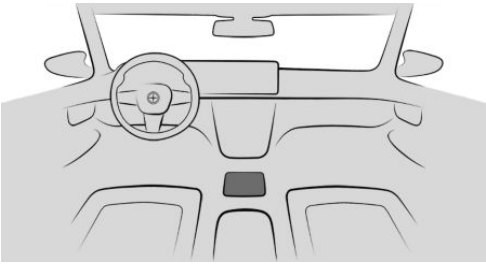
Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- ▷ Establishing standby.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview



AUTO H Automatic Hold

Activating Automatic Hold

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. AUTO H Press the button.

   The LED illuminates.

AUTO H The indicator light illuminates green.

Automatic Hold is activated.

Automatic Hold holding the vehicle

If Automatic Hold is activated and the driver's door is closed, the vehicle is automatically secured to prevent it from rolling away after stopping.

PARK (P) As soon as Automatic Hold secures the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away, the indicator light for the parking brake illuminates green.

Automatic parking brake application

The parking brake is automatically set if drive-ready state is switched off while the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold or if the vehicle is exited.

PARK (P) The indicator light changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not set automatically if the drive-ready state was switched off while the vehicle was coasting. Automatic Hold is temporarily deactivated in this case.

Driving off

Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator light of the parking brake is no longer illuminated.

The vehicle may roll back slightly when driving off, depending on the load and driving situation or when towing a trailer.

Drive off quickly to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward when driving off.

If necessary, also apply the parking brake. The parking brake is released automatically when you drive off.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page 130.

Deactivate Automatic Hold

AUTO H Press the button.

The LED goes out.

AUTO H The indicator light goes out.

Automatic Hold is deactivated.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, also press the brake pedal when deactivating.

Displays

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Instrument cluster

Principle

The instrument cluster comprises various digital displays, e.g., a speedometer, time, range, temperature as well as indicator and warning lights.

General information

The layout of the instrument cluster adapts to the respective driving mode. The positions of some displays may vary, e.g., the selector lever display.

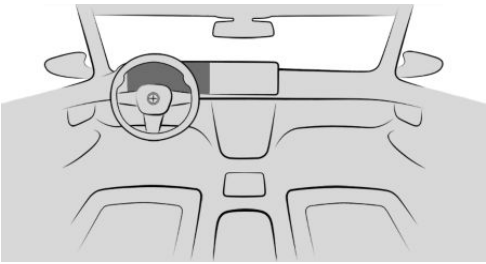
Some of the displays in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Manual.

Safety information

Warning

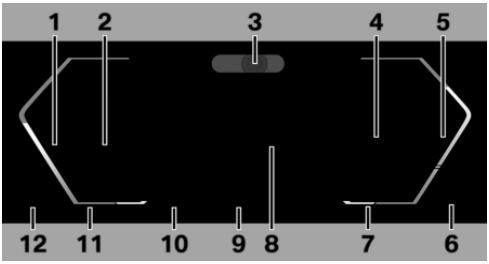
If the driving information displays on the instrument cluster fail, e.g., the speedometer, do not use the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe manner. Turning drive-ready state off and on again may correct the malfunction, allowing you to continue driving. If the malfunction cannot be corrected, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview



Instrument cluster

Display ranges on the instrument cluster



1 Speedometer
2 Driver assistance systems 213
Parking assistance systems 242
3 Driver Attention Camera 205
4 Check Control 138
Selector lever display 124
Gear shift indicator 146
Selection lists 145
5 Power gauge 146
Tachometer 147
6 Engine temperature 147

7 Outside temperature 148
8 Central display range 149
Shift lights 148
9 Drive mode 129
10 Speed Limit Info 213
Speed Limit Assistant 238
11 Time 152
12 Fuel gauge 152
Range 153

Additional information:

Indicator/warning lights, refer to page 139.

Operating elements on the steering wheel

Operating element	Function
	Display the menu bar on the instrument cluster.
	Press the corresponding arrow key to move the selection.
	Turn thumbwheel: scroll selection up or down. Press thumbwheel: confirm selection.

Configuring the layout

In COMFORT drive mode, the layout in the instrument cluster can be individually configured and displayed.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
   A menu bar is displayed in the instrument cluster.
2. "LAYOUT"
   Select the menu using the arrow buttons on the steering wheel where applicable.
3. Select the desired setting using the thumbwheel on the steering wheel.

Settings

Specific displays can be configured individually, e.g., a second actual speed.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. Select the desired setting.

Live Vehicle

Principle

Live Vehicle is a virtual representation of your vehicle with different information, e.g., vehicle status or current driving condition.

General information

Corresponding information is shown on the control display depending on the driving situation. Fault statuses are not taken into account. Adaptive content or various static content can be selected.

Adaptive content

The following content is displayed in alternating order and, if necessary, depending on the selected drive mode:

- Vehicle status, refer to page 153.
- Current driving condition, refer to page 154.
- Sport displays, refer to page 154.
- Efficiency trainer, refer to page 337.
- Trip data, refer to page 149.
- xOFFROAD display, refer to page 276.
- Terrain View, refer to page 209.

Static information

The following information may be shown permanently on the control display regardless of the driving situation and driving mode set.

- ▷ Vehicle status.
- ▷ Trip data.
- ▷ Terrain View, refer to page 209.
- ▷ xOFFROAD display.

Adjusting the display

In the Live Vehicle menu, adaptive content or various static content for the display can be selected on the left-hand side bar:

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. Select the desired setting.

BMW Head-up display

Principle

The Head-up display projects important information, e.g., speed, onto the windshield in the driver's field of view. Information can be recorded without you having to look away from the road.

The steering wheel buttons can be used to configure various views for the Head-up display. More settings can be configured on the control display, e.g., brightness, height, or rotation.

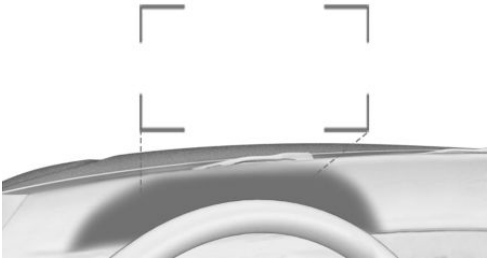
General information

Follow instructions for cleaning the Head-up display in the Vehicle Care chapter.

Additional information:

Caring for special components, refer to page 400.

Overview



Head-up display views are projected onto the windshield through a protective glass. The protective glass is located between the steering wheel and windshield.

Displayable information

The following information is displayed on the Head-up display:

- ▷ Vehicle speed.
- ▷ Navigation instructions.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Sport displays.
- ▷ Shift lights.
- ▷ Efficiency trainer.
- ▷ Lists and messages.
- ▷ Driver assistance systems.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

Configuring a view

The views for the Head-up display can be set independently of the display on the instrument cluster, e.g., a reduced view.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.

   A menu bar is displayed in the instrument cluster.
2. "HEAD-UP"

Select the menu using the arrow buttons on the steering wheel where applicable.

3. Select the desired setting using the thumbwheel on the steering wheel.

Turning the Head-up display on/off

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"

Settings

Various settings can be configured for the Head-up display, e.g., height, brightness, or rotation. In addition, individual displays in the Head-up display can be set up separately such as for Driver Assistance.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up display is influenced by the following factors:

- Seat position.
- Objects on the Head-up display's protective glass.
- Dust or dirt on the Head-up display's protective glass.
- Windshield dirty on inside or outside.
- Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- Wet road.
- Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the basic settings checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

The shape and coating of the special windshield enable the system to function.

If damaged, have the special windshield replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Check Control

Principle

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of faults in the monitored systems.

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator lights or warning lights and text messages on the instrument cluster and, if applicable, on the Head-up display. In addition, an acoustic signal may sound and a text message may appear on the control display.

Some Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds, but they will be stored. Stored Check Control messages can be displayed on the control display. Urgent Check Control messages are permanently displayed but may be hidden temporarily.

Hiding Check Control messages

Permanently displayed Check Control messages can be hidden temporarily. These messages are automatically displayed again after approx. 8 seconds.

❮ An arrow icon next to the Check Control message indicates whether the Check Control message can be hidden.

To hide Check Control messages, press the left arrow button on the steering wheel.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

Additional information such as the cause of a fault or the required action can be called up via Check Control.

Depending on the Check Control message, further help can be selected.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Check Control"
5. Select the desired text message.

Display

A Check Control message is displayed in the instrument cluster as a text message with an icon.

For urgent messages, an added text is automatically displayed on the control display.

If several faults occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

Certain messages displayed while driving are displayed again after drive-ready state is switched off.

Icons in the instrument cluster indicate an active or saved Check Control message.

Indicator lights and warning lights

Principle

The indicator lights and the warning lights on the instrument cluster show the status of some functions in the vehicle. The indicator lights and warning lights indicate faults in monitored systems.

General information

Indicator lights and warning lights can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and illuminate temporarily when drive-ready state is turned on.

Red lights

Seat belt reminder

Seat belt on the driver's seat is not buckled.

Additional information:

Seat belt reminder, refer to page 107.

Airbag system

Warning light illuminates briefly: indicates that the entire airbag system and seat belt tensioners are operational when drive-ready state is switched on.

Warning light does not illuminate or illuminates continuously: the airbag system or the seat belt tensioners may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Airbags, refer to page 168.

Parking brake

The parking brake is set.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page 130.

Brake system

The brake pads are worn or there is another issue with the brake system.

The braking assistance may not be operational. A higher pedal force may be required for braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emergency Stop Assistant

The Emergency Stop Assistant is triggered.

Additional information:

Emergency Stop Assistant, refer to page 197.

Risk of collision

Warning light illuminates or flashes in conjunction with an acoustic signal if there is risk of imminent collision.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 173.

Pedestrian Warning

Warning light illuminates: risk of collision with a person, e.g., a pedestrian or a cyclist. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and a signal sounds: risk of imminent collision with a person, e.g., a pedestrian or a cyclist. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Warning function for pedestrians, refer to page 179.

Forward Collision Warning

Warning light illuminates: risk of collision, e.g., with a vehicle, is detected. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and a signal sounds: risk of imminent collision with a vehicle detected. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Warning function in rear-end collision situations, refer to page 176.

Intersection Collision Warning: vehicle detected from the right

Warning light illuminates: risk of collision with vehicle crossing from the right detected. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and a signal sounds: risk of imminent collision with a crossing vehicle detected. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Warning function at intersections, refer to page 180.

Intersection Collision Warning: vehicle detected from the left

Warning light illuminates: risk of collision with vehicle crossing from the left detected. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and a signal sounds: risk of imminent collision with a crossing vehicle detected. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Warning function at intersections, refer to page 180.

Distance Control

Warning light flashes and acoustic signal sounds: Brake and evade as necessary.

Additional information:

Distance Control, refer to page 220.

Assisted Driving Mode

Warning light flashes and acoustic signal sounds:

The system is switched off or will be interrupted very soon.

Warning light illuminates and acoustic signal sounds:

The driver's line of sight is not directed at the surrounding traffic. System interruption is imminent. The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable. It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.

Assisted Driving Mode: hands are not on steering wheel

Warning light illuminates and acoustic signal sounds:

The hands are not on the steering wheel or, depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the driver's line of sight is not directed at the surrounding traffic. System interruption is imminent.

The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable.

It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements.

Immediately grasp the steering wheel with your hands and pay attention to the surrounding traffic.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.

Yellow lights

Antilock Braking System

The system may not be operational. The Antilock Braking System is not available.

The ability to steer may be restricted during full braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Antilock Braking System, refer to page 207.

Assisted Driving Mode

Warning light illuminates and acoustic signal sounds: A system interruption is imminent.

Warning light flashes: A lane boundary has been crossed.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.

Assisted Driving Mode: hands are not on steering wheel

Hands are not grasping the steering wheel. The system is still active.

Grab the steering wheel with your hands.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.

Dynamic Stability Control

Warning light flashes: Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the driving and brake power. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce the vehicle speed and adjust your driving style to the road conditions.

Warning light illuminates: Dynamic Stability Control has malfunctioned or is initializing. Driving stabilization is restricted or has failed.

If the warning light illuminates continuously, have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 207.

The Dynamic Stability Control deactivated or the Dynamic Traction Control activated

Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

Additional information:

- ▷ Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 207.
- ▷ Dynamic Traction Control, refer to page 209.

Flat tire monitor

Warning light illuminates: Flat tire or tire pressure loss has been detected.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Additional information:

Flat tire monitor, refer to page 361.

Tire Pressure Monitor

Warning light illuminates: Flat tire or tire pressure loss has been detected. Follow the information in the Check Control message.

Warning light flashes then illuminates continuously: Flat tires or tire pressure losses cannot be detected.

- ▷ Fault caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- ▷ In the case of tires with special approval: the tire pressure monitor was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- ▷ Wheel without wheel electronics installed: Have it checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- ▷ Malfunction: have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 353.

Steering system

The steering system may not be operational.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Integral Active Steering, refer to page 212.

Pollutant emissions

- ▷ The warning light illuminates:

The exhaust gas quality is declining, e.g., because the fuel filler cap is fitted incorrectly.

▷ The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

Reduce the vehicle speed and have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Diagnostic socket, refer to page 384.

Green lights

Turn signal

Turn signal is on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Additional information:

Turn signal, refer to page 156.

Parking lights

Parking lights are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights, low-beam headlights, refer to page 159.

Low-beam headlights

Low-beam headlights are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights, low-beam headlights, refer to page 159.

High Beam Assistant

Low-beam headlights are switched on and the High Beam Assistant is activated.

High-beam headlights are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

Additional information:

High Beam Assistant, refer to page 156.

Lane Departure Warning

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version:

Indicator light flashes: the system actively issues a warning. If necessary, the system performs a steering intervention.

Additional information:

Lane Departure Warning, refer to page 184.

Automatic Hold is activated

After stopping, Automatic Hold automatically secures the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page 133.

Automatic Hold holding the vehicle

Automatic Hold secures the stopped vehicle to prevent it from rolling away, e.g., when stopped at a traffic light.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page 133.

Hill Descent Control decelerates the vehicle

The system is active. The vehicle is braked.

Additional information:

Hill Descent Control, refer to page 210.

Cruise Control

The system is active.

Additional information:

Cruise Control, refer to page 217.

Distance Control

Indicator light illuminates: Vehicle has been detected ahead of you. The vehicle icon goes out if no vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

Indicator light flashes: Preceding vehicle has driven off.

Additional information:

Distance Control, refer to page 220.

Speed Limit Assistant

The detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button. As soon as the speed limit has been applied, a green checkmark is displayed.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page 238.

Assisted Driving Mode

The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.

Lane Change Assistant: lane change in progress

Arrow icon for lane change green: the system carries out a lane change.

Additional information:

Lane Change Assistant, refer to page 230.

Automatic Lane Change Assistant, refer to page 231.

Lane Change Assistant: lane change not possible

Gray line for lane boundary on the appropriate side: system detected a lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.

Additional information:

Lane Change Assistant, refer to page 230.

Assisted Driving Mode Plus

The system is active.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode Plus, refer to page 235.

Blue lights

High-beam headlights

High-beam headlights have been switched on.

Additional information:

- ▷ High-beam headlights, refer to page 156.
- ▷ High Beam Assistant, refer to page 156.

High Beam Assistant

High-beam headlights are switched on via the High Beam Assistant.

Additional information:

High Beam Assistant, refer to page 156.

Gray lights

Seat belt reminder

Seat belt on the passenger seat or another seat in the vehicle is not buckled.

Additional information:

Seat belts, refer to page 106.

Hill Descent Control is in standby

The system is in standby mode or temporarily deactivated.

Additional information:

Hill Descent Control, refer to page 210.

Cruise Control

The system is interrupted.

Additional information:

Cruise Control, refer to page 217.

Distance Control

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is interrupted.

Indicator light flashes: Conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

Additional information:

Distance Control, refer to page 220.

Assisted Driving Mode

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering movements.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.

White lights

Cruise Control with Distance Control

No Distance Control because accelerator pedal is being pressed.

Additional information:

Distance Control, refer to page 220.

Assisted Driving Mode Plus

The system can be used.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode Plus, refer to page 235.

Selection lists

Principle

Selection lists, e.g., entertainment sources, are shown on the Head-up display or on the instrument cluster, depending on vehicle equipment and settings. Lists can be displayed and used for certain functions as necessary:

- ▷ Entertainment source.
- ▷ Current audio source.
- ▷ List of most recent telephone calls.

If necessary, the corresponding menu will open on the control display.

Displaying and using the list

The selection lists can be displayed and operated using the operating elements on the steering wheel.

Operating elements	Function
	Turn the thumbwheel: display the entertainment list or scroll up or down in the list. Press thumbwheel: confirm selection.
	Press the corresponding arrow key to change the entertainment source.
	Show list of most recent telephone calls.

Gear shift indicator

Principle

The shift point indicator recommends the gear that best suits the current driving situation. Using the optimal gear supports an efficient driving style.

General information

The gear shift indicator is active in manual mode M depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

Displays

Information on upshifting, downshifting, or engaged gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.

On vehicles without a gear shift indicator, the engaged gear is displayed.

Example	Description
M3	In continuous manual mode M: Optimal gear is engaged.
D3	With shift paddles: temporary manual mode.
S3	With shift paddles: Sport program.
2▸3	Shift information.

Additional information:

Shift paddles, refer to page 126.

Power gauge

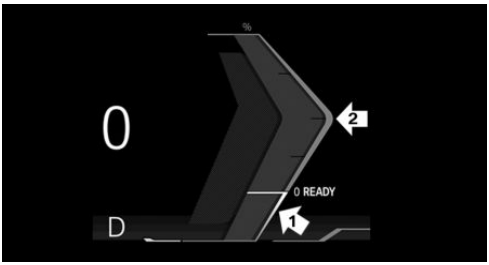
Principle

The power gauge indicates the currently drawn drive power as a percentage.

Enabling/disabling the power gauge

The power display or tachometer is shown depending on the driving mode selected or the individual configuration of the layout.

Display



Needle in range of arrow 1: display for energy recovery such as while decelerating CHARGE.

Needle in range of arrow 2: the drive power in percent, POWER.

Reduced drive power

The available power may be reduced due to certain factors. The power gauge is automatically adjusted accordingly.

In addition, the icons on the power gauge and tachometer indicate reduced drive power:

Icon	Description
	Blue icon: cold drivetrain. White icon: increased drive system temperature, for instance due to sustained or high power demand when driving on mountain roads.
	Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: Drive power limitation defined via the BMW Digital Key. With 8-cylinder engine: Power is reduced while the vehicle is broken in.
	System-related functional limitation. A Check Control message is displayed in addition where applicable.

Tachometer

General information

Always avoid RPM in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

Activating/deactivating the tachometer

The tachometer is displayed depending on the selected drive mode or the individually configured layout.

The tachometer display changes depending on the selected driving mode.

Reduced rotational speed range

The available rotational speed range may be reduced due certain factors such as a cold drive system. The tachometer display is automatically adjusted depending on the available rotational speed range.

Icon	Description
	Power is reduced while the vehicle is broken in.

Standby state and drive-ready state

OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. Drive-ready state is turned off and standby state turned on.

READY is displayed in the instrument cluster. The Auto Start/Stop function is ready for automatic engine start.

Additional information:

- ▷ Operating state of the vehicle, refer to page 40.
- ▷ Auto Start/Stop function, refer to page 121.

Engine temperature

- ▷ Cold engine: the needle is in the blue temperature range, close to the stop of the temperature display, and the word WARM-UP is displayed.

Drive at moderate RPM and vehicle speeds.

- ▷ Normal operating temperature: the needle is in the middle or in the left half of the temperature display.
- ▷ Hot engine: the needle is in the red temperature range. In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

Additional information:

Coolant level, refer to page 380.

Display

- ▷ Cold engine: the needle is in the blue temperature range, close to the stop of the temperature display, and the word WARM-UP is displayed.

  Drive at moderate RPM and vehicle speeds.
- ▷ Normal operating temperature: the needle is in the middle or in the left half of the temperature display.
- ▷ Hot engine: the needle is in the red temperature range. In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

Additional information:

Coolant level, refer to page 380.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

A red indicator light is displayed.

Outside temperature

General information

If the indicator drops to +37°F/+3°C or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

When the vehicle is stationary or at low speed, the temperature displayed may differ slightly from the actual outside temperature due to external environmental influences.

Safety information

Warning

Even at temperatures above +37°F/+3°C there is a risk of icy roads, for instance on bridges or shady sections of the road. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Modify your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.

Shift lights

Principle

Shift lights indicate the suitable upshift point at which optimal acceleration can be achieved.

General information

The shift lights are active in manual mode M and can be displayed on the instrument cluster or on the Head-up display in combination with the tachometer.

Functional prerequisite

Manual mode M must be activated for the shift lights to appear.

Display

Successive fields illuminating yellow indicate an upcoming shift point.

- ▷ Shift when all fields illuminate red at the latest.
- ▷ When the maximum rotational speed is reached, the entire display flashes red and the fuel supply is interrupted in order to protect the engine.

Central display range

Displayable content

The following settings can be selected:

- ▷ Reduced display.
- ▷ Trip data, refer to page 149.
- ▷ Assisted View, refer to page 151.
- ▷ Navigation system route preview.
- ▷ Navigation system map view.
- ▷ G-Meter, refer to page 152.
- ▷ Entertainment.
- ▷ Augmented View.

  Depending on vehicle equipment, Augmented View on the instrument cluster enables the visualization of driver assistance systems on the actual vehicle's surroundings.

  A gray line indicates the recommended minimum distance to the preceding vehicle when speed control systems are deactivated.
- ▷ Android Auto©.

  Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, select functions of a compatible smartphone can also be displayed, e.g., map views.

Some contents for the central display range can also be configured as a view in the Head-up display.

Additional information:

Head-up display, refer to page 137.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.

Configuring the central display range

The content of the central display range on the instrument cluster can be configured individually, for instance the trip data display.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.

   A menu bar is displayed in the instrument cluster.
2. "CONTENT"

   Select the menu using the arrow buttons on the steering wheel where applicable.
3. Select the desired setting using the thumbwheel on the steering wheel.

Trip data

Principle

The trip data display provides various information about the trip, e.g., average consumption or trip distance.

General information

The trip data can be displayed on the control display and in the instrument cluster.

Depending on the setting in the Live Vehicle menu, the trip data is shown on the control display.

The values can be displayed and reset depending on different intervals.

Display on the control display

General information

The following trip data is shown on the control display:

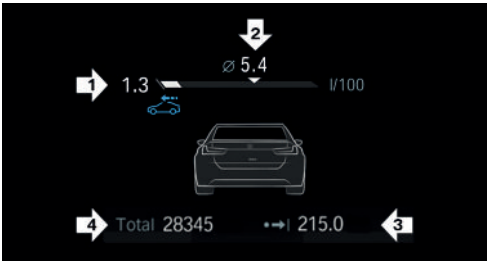
- ▷ Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- ▷ ∅ Average fuel consumption depending on the configured interval.
- ▷ Travel time depending on the configured interval.
- ▷ Distance traveled depending on the configured interval.
- ▷ Distance traveled in Coasting mode.

Displaying trip data continuously

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Vehicle status"

Display in the instrument cluster

Information on consumption and distance covered can be displayed in the instrument cluster.



- ▷ Current consumption, arrow 1.
- ▷ Average consumption, arrow 2.
- ▷ Distance traveled depending on the configured interval, arrow 3.

  The icon is displayed when the vehicle is in Coasting mode.
- ▷ Total mileage, arrow 4.

Current consumption

The current fuel consumption display allows you to check the current fuel consumption, e.g., to drive economically and in an environmentally-friendly manner.

Mild hybrid technology: depending on vehicle equipment, the fuel supply is interrupted and the engine continues to run when driving slowly or even when the vehicle is stationary. In this case, the internal combustion engine is operated electrically.

Average consumption

The average fuel consumption is displayed depending on how the intervals for displaying trip data are configured.

Adjusting the display of the trip data

The intervals for the display of the trip data in the instrument cluster and on the control display are adjustable.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"

4. "Time period for trip data"
5. "Values"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Since start of trip": the values are automatically reset approx. four hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.
   - ▷ "Since last refuel": the values are automatically reset after refueling with a larger quantity of fuel.
   - ▷ "Since factory": the values since the time of the factory delivery are displayed.
   - ▷ "Since Individual": the values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

Resetting average values manually

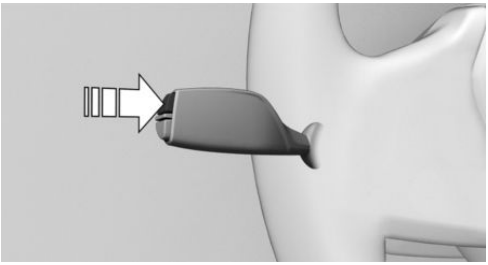
The following interval can be reset manually at any time:

"Since Individual ( )"

Using the button on the left steering column switch:

1. Press the button.

   The trip data is displayed.



2. Press and hold the button until the values are reset.

Via iDrive:

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Time period for trip data"
5. "Reset Individual"

The average values and counters are reset. Once the average values and counters have been reset, the following interval is automatically activated:

"Since Individual ( )"

Assisted View

Principle

With Assisted View, information on driver assistance systems can be displayed on the instrument cluster with a vehicle animation.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Permanent display

You can configure how Assisted View is displayed on the central display range and have it shown permanently.

Additional information:

Central display area, refer to page 149.

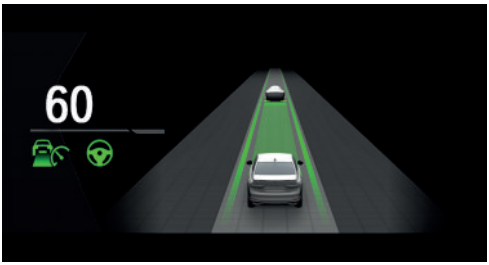
Temporary display

With the temporary display, Assisted View is always shown when driver assistance systems

are active, regardless of how the central display range is configured.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. "Assisted Driving info will appear in front of other content"

Display



An example of active Driver Assistance: Indicator and warning lights for Distance Control and Assisted Driving Mode are displayed. At the same time, the Distance Control is animated in Assisted View.

System limits

The system's detection capability is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Additional information:

- ▷ Cameras, refer to page 35.
- ▷ Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

G-Meter

General information

The G-Meter indicates the forces that are applied in longitudinal and transverse direction on the vehicle occupants while driving.

The display can be configured on the central display range of the instrument cluster.

The values are automatically reset whenever you start a new drive.

Additional information:

Central display area, refer to page 149.

Manually reseting G-Meter values

1. Display the G-Meter on the instrument cluster.
2. Press and hold the thumbwheel on the steering wheel until the values are reset.

Date and time

Various settings can be applied for the date and time display such as the date format.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the time zone can be set or automatic time zone enabled. With automatic time setting, the time, date and, if necessary, the time zone are updated automatically.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. Select the desired settings.

Fuel gauge

Principle

The current fill level of the fuel tank is displayed.

General information

Vehicle inclination may cause the display to vary.

Additional information:

Refueling, refer to page 340.

Display

An arrow beside the fuel pump icon shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

The current range is displayed as numerical value.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

The yellow indicator light illuminates, once the fuel reserve is reached.

Range

Principle

The range indicates the distance that can still be covered with the current tank of fuel.

General information

The estimated range with remaining fuel is permanently displayed on the instrument cluster.

With a low remaining range, a Check Control message is briefly displayed. A low remaining range means that engine functions cannot always be ensured for sporty driving, e.g., when cornering at speed.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a range below 30 miles/50 km, the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of property damage. Refuel promptly.

Display

The current range is displayed as a numerical value next to the fuel gauge.

Setting the units of measurement

Depending on the national-market version, you can set the units of measurement for some values, for instance consumption, distances, and temperature.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Units"
5. Select the desired setting.

Vehicle status

General information

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems such as for Check Control.

Displaying vehicle status

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"

Overview

Icon	Description
	"FLAT TIRE MONITOR": Status of the flat tire monitor, refer to page 361.
	"Tire Pressure Monitor": status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 353.
	"Engine oil level": electronic oil measurement, refer to page 378.
	"Check Control": displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page 138.
	"Service": display of the service notifications, refer to page 155.

Current driving condition

General information

The current driving condition is displayed dynamically while driving in the Live Vehicle menu on the control display.

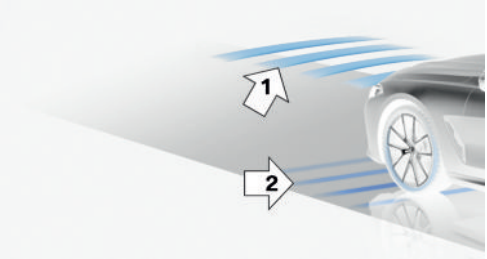
The following states can be displayed:

- ▷ Driving.
- ▷ Coasting.
- ▷ Battery is charging.

Functional requirements

- ▷ COMFORT or ECO PRO driving mode is selected.
- ▷ The following setting is selected for Live Vehicle: "Vehicle status"

Display



An example:

The adaptive recuperation is active, arrow 1.

The vehicle battery is charged when the vehicle decelerates, arrow 2.

Sport displays

Principle

The Sport displays especially support a sporty driving style.

Functional requirements

- ▷ SPORT driving mode is selected.
- ▷ The following setting is selected for Live Vehicle:"Adaptive content"

Display

The sport displays are displayed in the Live Vehicle menu on the control display.

The following information is displayed:

- ▷ Torque.
- ▷ Power.
- ▷ Boost pressure.
- ▷ Engine oil temperature.

Service

Principle

The service notifications indicate recommended maintenance work.

General information

After turning on drive-ready state, the instrument cluster briefly displays the next service appointment or the distance remaining until the next recommended maintenance measures.

These can be read out from the vehicle key at an authorized service center.

Display

More information may be displayed on the control display.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Service"

   Maintenance measures as well as legally mandated inspections are displayed.
5. Select the desired entry.

Entering appointment dates

Dates for mandatory vehicle inspections can be entered.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Service"
5. "Vehicle inspection"
6. "Date:"
7. Select the desired setting.

Light and view

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

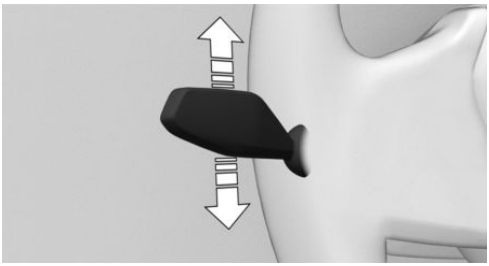
Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Turn signal

Turn signal in exterior mirror

When driving and during operation of the turn signals or hazard warning system, do not fold in the exterior mirrors so that the turn signal lights on the exterior mirror are clearly visible.

Flashing



Press the lever past the resistance point.

One-touch signaling

Lightly tap the lever up or down.

The one-touch signaling duration can be adjusted.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. "One-touch turn signal"
6. Select the desired setting.

Brief flashing

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High-beam headlights, headlight flasher

Press the lever forward or pull it backward.

▷ High-beam headlights on, arrow 1.

The high-beam headlights illuminate when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

▷ High-beam headlights off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when the high-beam headlights are turned on.

High Beam Assistant

Principle

The High Beam Assistant detects other road users early on and automatically switches the

high-beam headlights on or off depending on the traffic situation.

General information

The High Beam Assistant ensures that the high-beam headlights are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high-beam headlights are not switched on by the system.

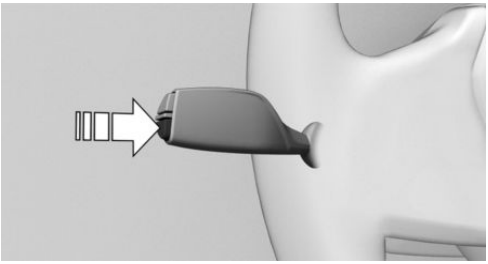
The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to ambient lighting, for instance in towns and cities.

The high-beam headlights can be switched on and off manually at any time.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Automatic headlight control is activated.
- ▷ Low-beam headlights are switched on.

Activating High Beam Assistant



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

The headlights are automatically changed between low-beam headlights and high-beam headlights.

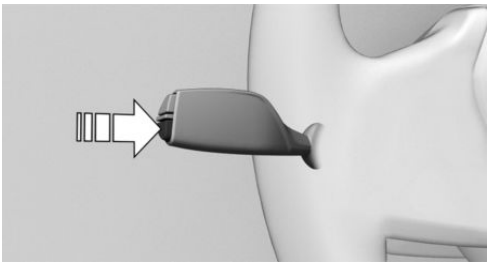
The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when the system switches on the high-beam headlights.

Interruption of the journey with activated High Beam Assistant: the High Beam Assistant remains activated when continuing the journey.

The High Beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high-beam headlights on and off.

To reactivate the High Beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

Deactivating High Beam Assistant



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

Sensitivity of the High Beam Assistant

General information

The sensitivity of the High Beam Assistant can be adjusted.

Safety information

Warning

If adjustments have been made or the sensitivity has been modified, oncoming traffic may be momentarily blinded. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. If adjustments have been made and the sensitivity has been modified, make sure that oncoming traffic is not momentarily blinded. Switch off the high-beam headlights manually if required.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Setting at standstill only.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ Light is turned off.
- ▷ For Canadian models: parking lights are on.

Increasing sensitivity

Push the turn signal lever to the front for approximately 10 seconds.

A Check Control message is displayed. The system responds more sensitively.

Resetting the sensitivity

Push the turn signal lever to the front again for approx. 10 seconds or switch off the drive-ready state.

The sensitivity of the High Beam Assistant is reset to the factory settings.

System limits

The High Beam Assistant cannot replace the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high-beam headlights. When appropriate, dim the high beams manually.

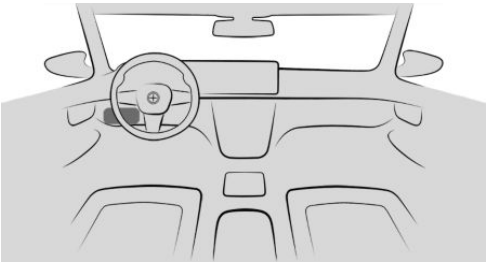
The system may not be fully operational in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- ▷ In very unfavorable weather conditions such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- ▷ When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; or at animal crossings.
- ▷ In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in crossing traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- ▷ In poorly-lit towns and cities or in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- ▷ When the windshield in the area in front of the interior mirror is fogged up, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Exterior lighting

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Icon	Function
	Exterior lighting menu.
D/AUTO	Automatic headlight control. Low-beam headlights. Exterior lighting off.
OFF	Exterior lighting off.

Functions via iDrive

Icon	Function
AUTO	Automatic headlight control.
	Low-beam headlights.
	Parking lights.
OFF	Exterior lighting off.

Icon	Function
	Left roadside parking light.
	Right roadside parking light.

Buttons on the vehicle key

Icon	Function
	Interior lighting. Parts of the exterior lighting.
	Pathway lighting.

Driving lights automatic

Principle

The low-beam headlights are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for example in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be turned on.

If the low-beam headlights are switched on manually, the automatic headlight control is deactivated.

Activate automatic headlight control

Press the button on the light switch.

The LED in the button illuminates.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

System limits

The automatic headlight control cannot replace your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. In these situations, turn the lights on manually.

Parking lights, low-beam headlights and roadside parking lights

General information

If the driver's door is opened when the drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off after a period of time.

Parking lights

General information

The parking lights can only be turned on at low speeds.

Turning on parking lights

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Parking light"

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates.

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, they might drain the vehicle battery and it would then be impossible to switch on drive-ready state.

Turning off parking lights

The following options are available to turn off the parking lights:

- ▷ OFF Press the button on the light switch.
- ▷ D/AUTO Press and hold the button on the light switch.
- ▷ Turn off light via iDrive.
- ▷ Turn on drive-ready state.

  After the drive-ready state is switched on, the automatic headlight control will be activated.

Low-beam headlights

Turning on low-beam headlights

D/AUTO Press the button on the light switch.

The low-beam headlights illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates.

Press the button again to switch on the low-beam headlights when the standby state is switched on.

Turning off low-beam headlights

Depending on the national-market version, the low-beam headlights can be turned off in the low speed range:

- ▷ OFF Press the button on the light switch.
- ▷ D/AUTO Press and hold the button on the light switch.
- ▷ Turn off light via iDrive.

Roadside parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, a one-sided roadside parking light can be switched on.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Left roadside parking light" or "Right roadside parking light"

Welcome lights

Principle

The welcome light turns on automatically for a limited period of time when approaching or unlocking the vehicle.

General information

Depending on the equipment, the exterior lighting of the vehicle can be set individually.

Activating/deactivating welcome light

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. Depending on the equipment, select the following setting:
   - ▷ "Welcome and goodbye"

     When unlocking the vehicle, individual lighting functions are turned on.
   - ▷ "BMW Iconic Glow"

     The radiator grille lighting can only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary and the drive-ready state is switched off.

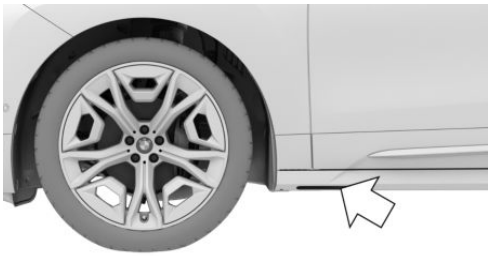
Turning on the welcome light

- ▷ Automatically on approach.
- ▷ During unlocking.
- ▷ Press the button on the vehicle key with the vehicle locked.

  Depending on the settings, the interior lighting and parts of the exterior lighting will be turned on.

  The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

Welcome Light Carpet



The light source is located in the position indicated.

Keep the light source clean and unobstructed.

Pathway lighting

Principle

For the pathway lighting, the exterior lighting turns on for a certain period of time after leaving the vehicle in order to illuminate the area surrounding the vehicle.

Switching pathway lighting on

- ▷ After switching off the drive-ready state, briefly push the turn signal lever forward.
- ▷ Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Setting the duration

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. "Pathway lighting"
6. Select the desired setting.

Daytime driving lights

General information

The daytime driving lights illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

Activating/deactivating daytime driving lights

In some countries, daytime driving lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime driving lights in front.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. Depending on vehicle equipment or national-market version:
   - ▷ "Daytime driving lights"
   - ▷ "Rear daytime driving lights"
   - ▷ "BMW Iconic Glow"

Adaptive lighting functions

Principle

Adaptive lighting functions enable dynamic illumination of the road.

General information

The adaptive lighting functions may consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment version:

▷ Cornering light.

Activating the adaptive lighting functions

Press the button on the light switch.

The LED in the button illuminates.

The adaptive lighting functions are active when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Cornering light

Principle

In tight curves, for instance on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional cornering light is switched on that illuminates the inside of the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

General information

The cornering light is automatically switched on depending on the steering-wheel angle or, where applicable, the use of turn signals.

When driving in reverse, the cornering lights may be automatically switched on regardless of the steering-wheel angle.

Adaptive headlight range control

The adaptive headlight range control feature balances out acceleration and braking as well as the vehicle load conditions in order to avoid blinding oncoming traffic.

Instrument lighting

Functional requirement

The brightness can only be adjusted in darkness and with turned on parking lights or low-beam headlights.

Setting the brightness

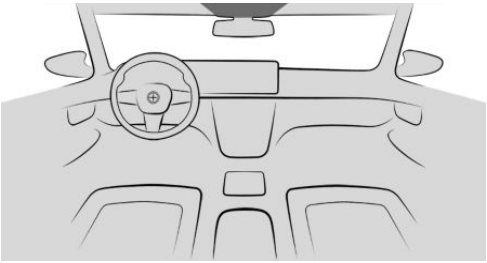
1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Cockpit brightness at night"
5. Select the desired setting.

Interior lighting

General information

Depending on the equipment version, interior lights, footwell lights, entry lights, ambient lighting, and speaker lighting are automatically controlled.

Overview



Reading lights

Interior lights

Turning interior lights on/off

Using the button:

Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button and hold for approx. 3 seconds.

The interior lights in the rear of the vehicle can be switched on and off independently. The button is located in the rear headliner.

Via iDrive:

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Reading light"
5. Tap on the icon.

Turning reading lights on/off

Using the button:

Press the button.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the reading lights are located next to the interior lights in the front and rear.

Via iDrive:

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Reading light"
5. Tap the desired seat.

Ambient light

General information

Depending on the equipment version, lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the car's interior.

Activating/deactivating ambient light

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Ambient lighting"

Turning ambient light on/off

The ambient light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient light was deactivated via iDrive, it will not be turned on when the vehicle is unlocked.

Selecting the color

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Color"
6. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Brightness"
6. Select the desired setting.

Dynamic light

Certain situations, for example incoming calls or obstacles detected when opening doors, are indicated by light effects. If the ambient light is disabled, the light effects are still displayed.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"

3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Lighting effects"
6. Select the desired setting.

Reduced for night drive

Some lights of the interior lighting are reduced when the vehicle is driven in the dark.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Reduced for night driving"

Panoramic glass sunroof, lighting

If the panoramic glass sunroof is opened or the sun protection is closed, the lighting is switched off.

Speaker lighting

Principle

Some speakers in the vehicle are illuminated.

Turning speaker lighting on/off

The speaker lighting is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

Window wiper system

Safety information

Warning

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded-away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

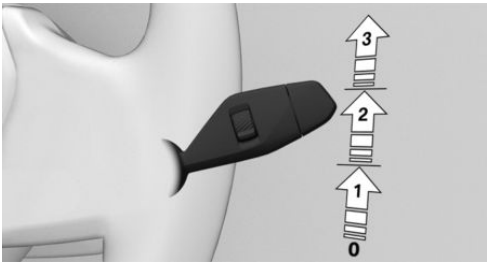
NOTICE

The wiper blades can wear out or become damaged prematurely when wiping on a dry window for a longer period of time. The wiper motor can overheat. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use the wipers when the window is dry.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of property damage. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Turning on window wiper system

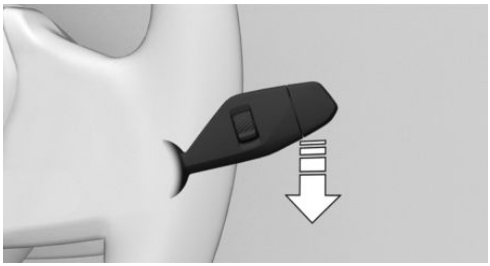


Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▷ Rest position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor mode, position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

When the journey is interrupted with the window wiper system turned on: when the journey continues, the wipers resume at their previous speed.

Turning off the window wiper system and flick wipe



Press the lever down.

- ▷ Turning off: press the lever down until it reaches the 0 position.
- ▷ Flick wipe: press the lever down from the 0 position.

  The lever automatically returns to its 0 position when released.

Rain sensor

Principle

The rain sensor automatically controls the wiper operation depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

General information

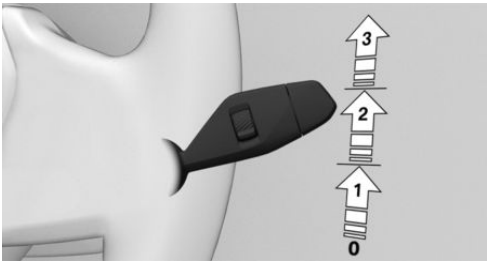
The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in car washes. There is a risk of property damage. Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes.

Activating rain sensor



Press lever up once from the 0 position, arrow 1.

Wiping operation is started.

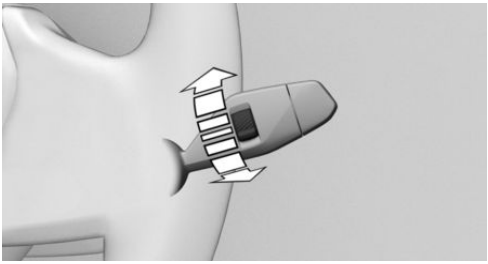
The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

In frosty conditions, wiping operation may not start.

Deactivating rain sensor

Press lever back into the 0 position.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

- ▷ Upward: high rain sensor sensitivity.
- ▷ Downward: low rain sensor sensitivity.

Window washer system

Safety information

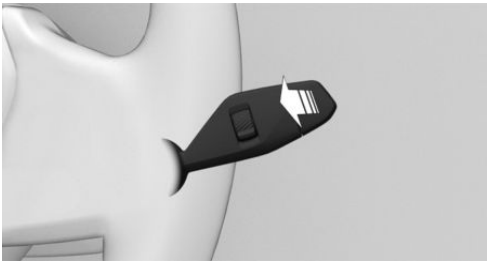
Warning

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use the window washer system when the washer fluid will not freeze. Use antifreeze if needed.

NOTICE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the washer pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

Cleaning the windshield



Pull the lever.

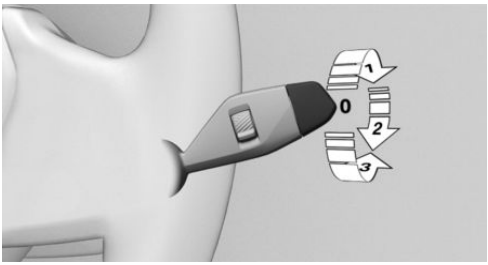
The washer fluid is sprayed on the windshield, and the wipers are turned on briefly.

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while standby state is switched on.

Rear wiper

Switching on the rear wiper



Turn the outer switch upward.

- ▷ Resting position of wiper, position 0.
- ▷ Intermittent operation, arrow 1. When reverse gear is engaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

Clean the rear window

Turn the outer switch in the desired direction.

- ▷ In rest position: Turn the switch downward, arrow 3. The switch returns to its rest position when released.
- ▷ In intermittent operation: turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch automatically returns to its interval position when released.

The function is deactivated if the washer fluid reservoir fill level is low.

Fold-out position of the wipers

Principle

In the fold-out position, the wipers can be folded out from the windshield, which is important, for instance, when changing the wiper blades or for folding away under frosty conditions.

Safety information

Warning

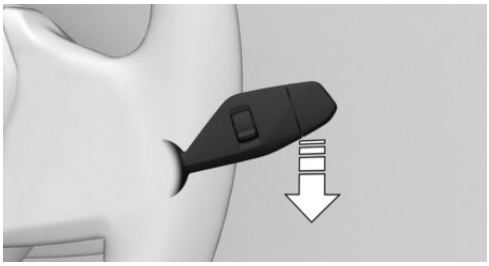
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded-away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of property damage. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Folding out the wipers

1. Turn on standby state.
2. Press and hold the wiper lever down until the wipers stop in a nearly vertical position.



3. Fold the wipers all the way out from the windshield.

Folding in the wipers

1. Fold the wipers back in onto the windshield.
2. Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.

   Wipers return to their rest position and are ready again for operation.

Safety

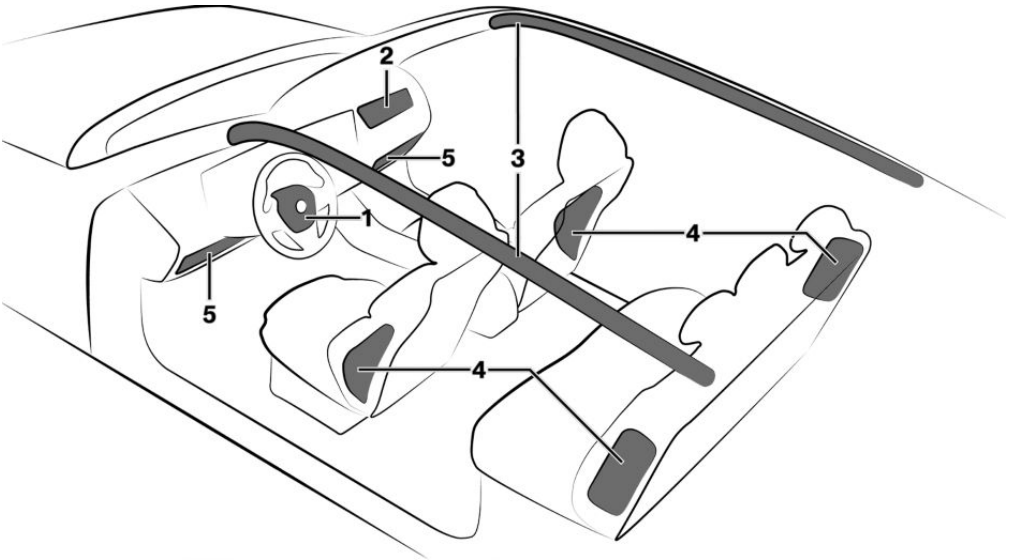
Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver

2 Front airbag, front passenger

3 Head airbag

4 Side airbag

5 Knee airbag

Front airbag

The front airbag helps protect the driver and front passenger in the event of a frontal impact in which the seat belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

Side airbag

In the event of a side collision, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest and pelvic regions.

The availability of the side airbag in the rear depends on the national-market version.

In the event of a side collision, the side airbag in the rear protects the chest and lap area on

the side of the bodies of the occupants in the outer rear seats.

Head airbag

In the event of a side collision, the head airbag protects the head.

Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side collision events.

Knee airbag

The availability of the knee airbag depends on the national-market version.

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a frontal impact.

Protective effect

General information

Airbags are not deployed in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents.

Information on optimum protective effect of the airbags

Warning

If the seat position is incorrect, the seat belts are fastened incorrectly or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to deployment. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

- Keep a distance from the airbags.
- Fasten the seat belts correctly.
- Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is deployed.
- Adjust seat and steering wheel so that hands can be crossed over the steering wheel. Select the settings so that when reaching over the steering wheel the shoulders rest against the backrest and the upper body is as far away as possible from the steering wheel.
- Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., with their feet and legs in the footwell, not resting on the dashboard.
- Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- Dashboard and windshield on the passenger's side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive film or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for navigation devices or mobile phones.
- Do not bond the airbag cover panels with adhesive, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the passenger's side as a storage area.
- Keep storage compartments near the airbags closed, e.g., glove compartment or center armrest.
- Do not place slip covers, seat cushions, or other objects on the front seats unless they are specifically designed for seats with integrated airbags.
- Do not hang pieces of clothing such as jackets over the backrests.
- Do not modify individual components or wiring. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.

- Do not attach any objects to the steering wheel, e.g., mobile phone holders or trim elements.
- Do not disassemble the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the airbag system; contact BMW Customer Relations for further information.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Operational readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

Warning

Individual components can be hot after deployment of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.

Warning

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional deployment of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not deploy as intended despite the accident severity. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, disassembled, and scrapped by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is turned on, the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates briefly, thereby indicating the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the seat belt tensioners.

Malfunction

- Warning light does not illuminate when drive-ready state is turned on.
- The warning light illuminates continuously.

The airbag system or the seat belt tensioners may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Setting the front seat positions

The power that deploys the driver's/front passenger airbags depends on the position of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function, calibrate the electrical front seats as soon as a respective message appears on the control display.

Additional information:

Seats, refer to page 100.

Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbag

Principle

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

The front passenger airbag is activated or deactivated.

General information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety information and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

Safety information

Warning

To ensure the front passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat surface must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the footwell.

Functional requirements

To enable accurate recognition of the occupied seat surface:

- ▷ Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- ▷ Do not place objects under the seat that can press against the seat from below.
- ▷ Do not place any electronic devices on the front passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- ▷ No moisture in or on the seat.

Indicator light, front passenger airbag

The front passenger airbag indicator light in the headliner indicates the operating state of the front passenger airbag.

The light indicates whether the airbag is activated or deactivated.

After drive-ready state is switched on, the light illuminates briefly and then indicates whether the airbag is activated or deactivated.

- ▷ The indicator light illuminates when a child is properly seated in a child restraint system or when the seat is empty. The airbag on the front passenger's side is not activated.
- ▷ The indicator light does not illuminate when, for instance, a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbag on the front passenger's side is activated.

Fault of the automatic deactivation system

For adolescents and adults, the front passenger airbag may deactivate in certain seat positions. In this case, the indicator light for the front passenger airbag illuminates in the headliner.

In this case, change the seat position so that the front passenger airbag activates and the indicator light goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear seat.

Detected child restraint systems

The system generally detects children seated in a child restraint system, particularly in child restraint systems required by NHTSA at the point in time when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child restraint system, make sure that the indicator light for the front passenger airbag illuminates. This indicates that the child restraint system has been detected and the front passenger airbag is not activated.

Acoustic pedestrian protection

Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, Acoustic Pedestrian Protection produces a continuous driving noise on vehicles with electric or electrically-assisted drives.

A speaker system broadcasts the noise to the environment. As a result, other road users, for instance pedestrians or cyclists, can better perceive the vehicle.

Functional requirements

The acoustic pedestrian protection system generates driving noise under the following conditions:

- The selector lever is moved from position P when the vehicle is stationary and drive-ready state is turned on.
- With electric driving up to approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

Malfunction

If the acoustic pedestrian protection fails, exercise greater caution when maneuvering.

A Check Control message is displayed.

If malfunctioning repeatedly, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Collision warning systems

General information

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle has different systems that can help prevent the risk of imminent collision.

- Forward Collision Mitigation with brake intervention, refer to page 173.
- Exit Warning, refer to page 182.
- Lane Departure Warning, refer to page 184.
- Active Blind Spot Detection, refer to page 188.
- Side Collision Protection, refer to page 190.
- Rear-End Collision Preparation, refer to page 192.
- Traffic Light And Sign Warning, refer to page 193.
- Wrong Way Warning, refer to page 195.
- No Turn on Red function, refer to page 196.
- Emergency Stop Assistant, refer to page 197.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

Depending on vehicle equipment, the Intelligent Safety systems are controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Camera behind the windshield.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.
- ▷ Radar sensors, side, front.
- ▷ Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Turning on/turning off collision warning systems

Depending on national-market version, some of the systems are automatically activated whenever you start driving.

The following functions are adjustable.

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. Select the desired settings.

Resetting the settings

The settings of the collision warning systems can be reset to the default settings at vehicle outbound delivery.

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Reset to recommended settings"

System limits

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection capability

The system's detection capability is limited.

The system only takes into account objects that are located in the detection range of the installed sensors and are detected by the system.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area is monitored by cameras or radar sensors.

Thus, a system response might not come or might come late.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Forward Collision Mitigation with brake intervention

Principle

The Forward Collision Mitigation can help prevent accidents. If an accident cannot be avoided, the system can help reduce the severity of the accident.

The system can issue a warning of a possible risk of collision and activate the brakes independently, if needed.

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the Forward Collision Mitigation system includes the following functions:

- ▷ Warning function in rear-end collision situations, refer to page 176.
- ▷ Warning function for oncoming traffic, refer to page 177.
- ▷ Warning function for turning with oncoming traffic, refer to page 178.
- ▷ Warning function for pedestrians, refer to page 179.
- ▷ Warning function at intersections, refer to page 180.
- ▷ Evasion Assistant, refer to page 181.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

Depending on the equipment, the system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Camera behind the windshield.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.
- ▷ Radar sensors, side, front.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Speed range

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

Some functions are deactivated earlier.

The system is enabled as soon as the speed drops below these values again.

Turning the Forward Collision Mitigation on/off

Turning on the system automatically

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active after every departure.

Turning on system manually

The system is activated by setting the warning time.

Additional information:

Setting the warning time, refer to page 175.

Turning system off manually

Depending on national-market version, the adjustment can only be made when the vehicle is at a standstill or in a very low speed range.

If necessary, the switch-off must be confirmed successively on the control display.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Forward Collision Mitigation"
7. "Off"

Setting the warning time

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Forward Collision Mitigation"
7. Select the desired setting.

The more sensitive the warning time is set to be, the more warnings will be displayed. The system can therefore also issue more early or unfounded warnings and reactions.

The system checks for visual impairments. Depending on the vehicle equipment, the Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster captures the driver's field of vision. Visibility and field of vision also affect the timing of the warnings.

Display in the instrument cluster

The following indicator lights and warning lights are shown on the instrument cluster and, depending on vehicle equipment, on the Head-up display:

Icon	Meaning
	Risk of collision with a person, e.g., a pedestrian.
	Risk of collision, for instance with an oncoming or a vehicle driving ahead.
	Risk of collision, e.g., with a vehicle crossing from the right.
	Risk of collision, e.g., with a vehicle crossing from the left.
	General risk of collision.

The corresponding indicator lights and warning lights may display differently if the system detects multiple objects.

Warning function

The Forward Collision Mitigation warns on different warning levels, depending on the respective hazardous situation.

In the event of a prewarning, a warning light illuminates red. In the event of an acute warning, a warning light flashes red and a warning tone sounds.

In the event of a system warning, the driver must intervene immediately and in accordance with the situation.

- ▷ Red warning light illuminates:

  A hazardous situation has been detected. Increased awareness is required.
- ▷ Red warning light flashes:

  There is a risk of collision. Intervene immediately.
- ▷ A warning signal sounds:

  There is a risk of collision. Intervene immediately.
- ▷ Automatic brake intervention:

Depending on the equipment and situation in case of risk of imminent collision, the system can also intervene with an automatic brake intervention and automatically decelerate the vehicle, if necessary, to a complete stop.

When the brake pedal is depressed quickly and hard, the maximum brake power of the vehicle is used.

Automatic brake intervention

In case of a risk of collision, the system can assist with an automatic brake intervention, if necessary.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

During automatic brake intervention, Dynamic Stability Control activates automatically.

A brake intervention can be canceled by depressing the accelerator pedal with sufficient force, releasing the brake pedal, or by actively steering.

Depending on the equipment and situation, the brake intervention can occur up to approx. 155 mph/250 km/h.

At speeds above approx. 130 mph/210 km/h, only a brief brake intervention will occur.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection capability

The system's detection capability is limited.

The system only takes into account objects that are located in the detection range of the installed sensors and are detected by the system.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area is monitored by cameras or radar sensors.

Thus, a system response might not come or might come late.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- With limitation of the driving stability control systems.
- Up to 10 seconds after turning on drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.

Also, do not use Forward Collision Mitigation when towing.

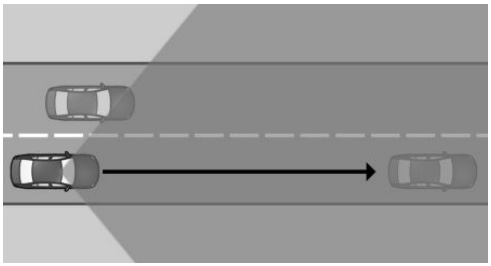
Warning function in forward collision situations

Principle

The warning function in forward collision situations warns of a possible risk of collision and may brake independently.

In the event of an accident, the system helps by reducing impact speed.

General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

The system considers the driver's vehicle handling when responding. If an active driving style is detected, warnings and brake interventions occur less frequently.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in Chapter "Forward Collision Mitigation".

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning light is displayed.

Icon	Meaning
	Forward Collision Warning with a detected vehicle.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 173.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Detection range

The following situations may not be detected, or only detected with a delay, for instance:

- ▷ Vehicle driving slowly in front and being approached at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or strongly decelerating vehicles.
- ▷ Vehicles with unusual rear designs.

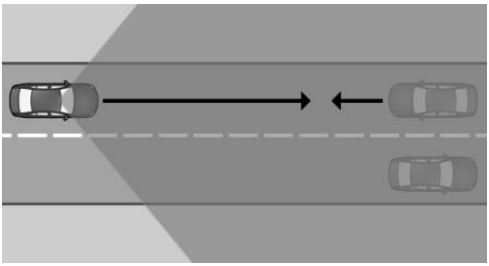
Warning function for oncoming traffic

Principle

The warning function for oncoming traffic can warn of a possible risk of collision with oncoming vehicles and may brake independently.

In the event of an accident, the system helps by reducing impact speed.

General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above ap-

prox. 3 mph/5 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in Chapter "Forward Collision Mitigation".

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning light is displayed.

Icon	Meaning
	Oncoming traffic warning when a vehicle is detected.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene.

In case of a possible risk of collision, a brake intervention is triggered.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 173.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Detection range

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- ▷ Oncoming vehicles at a very high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual front view.

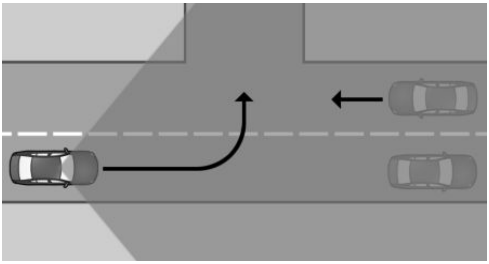
Warning function for turning with oncoming traffic

Principle

There is a risk of an accident with oncoming vehicles when turning across the oncoming lane. The system can issue a warning of a possible risk of collision and activate the brakes independently, if needed.

In the event of an accident, the system helps by reducing impact speed.

General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with oncoming vehicles at speeds from approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in Chapter "Forward Collision Mitigation".

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning light is displayed.

Icon	Meaning
	Oncoming traffic warning when a vehicle is detected.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 173.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Detection range

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- ▷ Oncoming vehicles at a very high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles that are hidden by other vehicles.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual front view.

Upper speed limit

The system is active when the own speed is below approx. 15 mph/25 km/h.

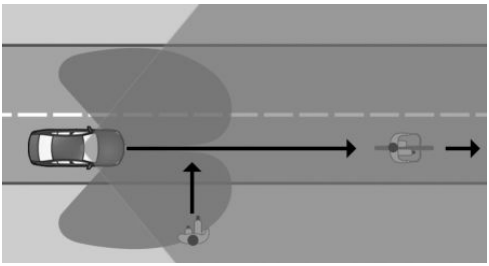
Warning function for pedestrians

Principle

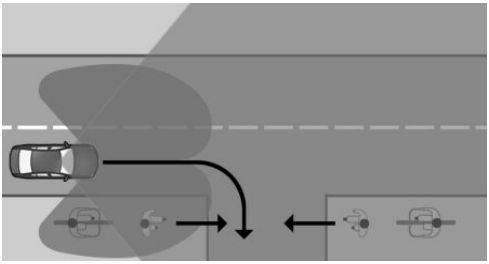
At speeds that are common in towns and cities, the warning function warns the driver of a possible risk of collision with pedestrians and cyclists. The system may brake automatically.

In the event of an accident, the system helps by reducing impact speed.

General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range when on a straight line.



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range when turning.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with pedestrians or cyclists at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in Chapter “Forward Collision Mitigation”.

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected pedestrian or cyclist, a warning light is displayed.

Icon	Meaning
	Risk of collision with a person, e.g., a pedestrian.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene.

Additional information:

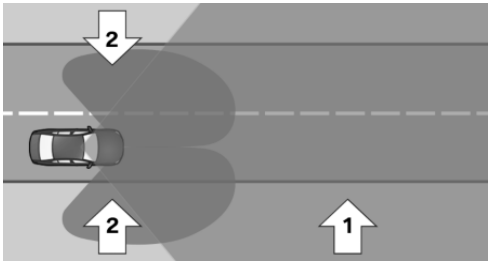
Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 173.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Detection range



The detection range consists of the following parts:

- ▷ Area in front of the vehicle, arrow 1.
- ▷ With side radar sensors in front: side areas, arrows 2.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- ▷ Partially covered pedestrians or bikes.
- ▷ Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of their contour or posture.
- ▷ Pedestrians who are too small for the sensors to detect.

Upper speed limit

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the system responds to pedestrians and cyclists when your vehicle speed is less than approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

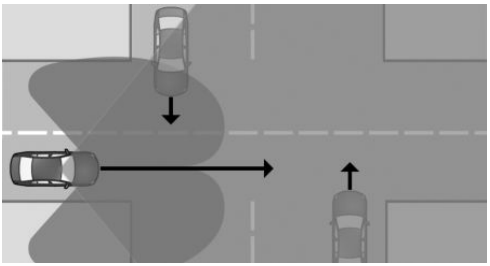
Warning function at intersections

Principle

At speeds that are common in towns and cities, the Intersection Collision Warning function can warn the driver of a possible risk of collision with crossing traffic at intersections and junctions. The system may brake automatically.

In the event of an accident, the system helps by reducing impact speed.

General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

Vehicles crossing your driving direction can be detected by the system as soon as these vehicles enter into detection range of the sensors.

At intersections and junctions, a warning is issued when a risk of collision with crossing traffic is detected.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in Chapter “Forward Collision Mitigation”.

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning light is displayed.

Icon	Meaning
	Risk of collision with vehicle crossing from the right.
	Risk of collision with vehicle crossing from the left.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 173.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Detection range

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- ▷ Crossing vehicles when they are hidden, e.g. by buildings.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual side view.
- ▷ Vehicles in highly dynamic driving situations.

Upper speed limit

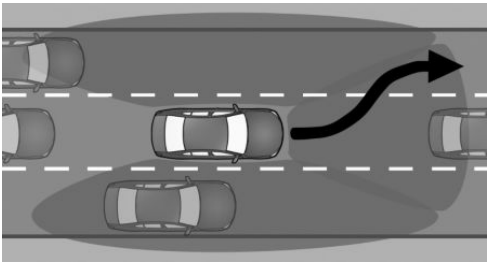
The system responds to crossing vehicles when the vehicle speed is below approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

Evasion Assistant

Principle

The Evasion Assistant can help the driver perform evasive maneuvers in certain situations, e.g., when obstacles or pedestrians appear suddenly.

General information



The system issues a warning and intervenes to support the driver if a lateral evasive maneuver is possible.

Sensors monitor and detect the clearance in front of the vehicle. Depending on the vehicle equipment, the areas next to the vehicle are also monitored.

If the system detects sufficient free space alongside the vehicle, it helps the driver perform an evasive maneuver safely.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in Chapter “Forward Collision Mitigation”.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Forward Collision Mitigation is active.
- ▷ Sensors detect sufficient clearance around vehicle.

Speed range

The Evasion Assistant helps the driver when the vehicle speed is between approx. 19 mph/30 km/h to 100 mph/160 km/h.

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle or detected person, e.g., a pedestrian, a warning light is displayed.

Icon	Meaning
	Warning when a vehicle is detected.
	Risk of collision with a pedestrian.
	Risk of collision with unknown obstacle.

Warning function with evasion support

If the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed, a warning is displayed if there is an immediate risk of collision.

Intervene in case of a warning.

The system is designed to provide assistance during evasive maneuvers when there is a risk of collision.

A message in the instrument cluster and, depending on the equipment, in the Head-up display signals the evasion support.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Detection range

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- ▷ Vehicle driving slowly in front and being approached at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or strongly decelerating vehicles.
- ▷ Vehicles with unusual rear designs.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.
- ▷ Partially covered pedestrians or bikes.
- ▷ Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of their contour or posture.
- ▷ Pedestrians who are too small for the sensors to detect.

Functional limitation

The system is deactivated if the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, e.g., when using a trailer or rear bicycle rack.

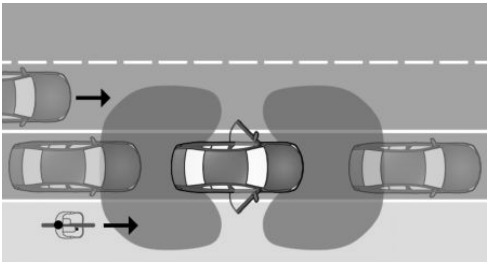
Exit Warning

Principle

The Exit Warning helps to avoid accidents.

The system can warn the occupants when they are opening the doors and a risk of collision with approaching objects is detected.

General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area around the vehicle in front of the vehicle is monitored as well. Two additional radar sensors are located in the front bumper.

The system monitors the vehicle's surroundings for a limited time after you get in or park.

A possible risk of collision is indicated by various warning functions.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Radar sensors, side, rear.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment: radar sensors, side, front.

Turning the Exit Warning on/off

Turning on the system automatically

The Exit Warning activates automatically after departure if the function was switched on at the completion of the last trip.

Turning system off manually

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Exit Warning"
7. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the Exit Warning

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Exit Warning"
7. Select the desired setting.

Turning the warning signal on/off

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Exit Warning"
7. "Warning tone"

Displays

Warning light in exterior mirror

The warning light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision with a detected vehicle.

Ambient light

Depending on the equipment, warnings are also indicated by the ambient light in the interior.

Warning function

Prewarning

In the event of an advance warning, the warning light in the exterior mirror illuminates. Depending on the equipment, the ambient light also flashes.

An object was detected in the opening area. Increased awareness is required.

Acute warning

In the event of an acute warning, the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes, as does the ambient light, depending on vehicle equipment. In addition, a signal tone sounds.

There is a risk of collision when opening the doors.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

Detection range

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- ▷ Fully or partially hidden objects.
- ▷ Stationary or very slow objects.
- ▷ Pedestrians.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▷ The speed of an approaching vehicle is too fast or too slow.
- ▷ In curves.
- ▷ In case of fully or partially hidden objects.

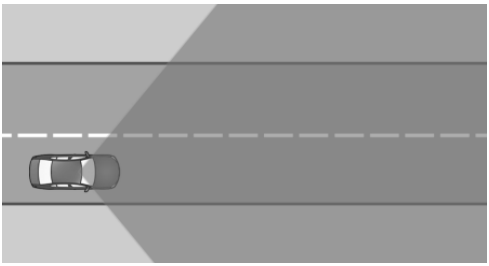
Lane Departure Warning with active return

Principle

The Lane Departure Warning alerts when the vehicle is about to run off the road or exit the lane.

An automatic steering intervention helps to keep the vehicle in its lane.

General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning starting at a minimum speed. The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed on the control display.

Various warning functions from this system help the driver keep their vehicle in their lane.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set in the respective direction before exiting the lane.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing road and traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust

driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane boundary for the Lane Departure Warning to be active.

The areas of the sensors must be clean and clear.

Sensors

Depending on the equipment, the system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Camera behind the windshield.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.
- ▷ Radar sensor, side, front.

Turning the Lane Departure Warning on/off

Turning on the system automatically

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active after every departure.

Turning on system manually

The system is activated by the selected warning setting.

Additional information:

Configuring the warning, refer to page 185.

Turning system off manually

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, you must successively confirm the switch-off on the control display.

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane Departure Warning"
7. "Off"

Setting Lane Departure Warning

Configuring the warning

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane Departure Warning"
7. Select the desired setting.
   - ▷ "Expanded"

     If the system detects that your vehicle is about to leave your lane or cross a lane marking, a warning is issued. The system performs a steering intervention.
   - ▷ "In dangerous situations"

     Broken road lines: If the system detects that the vehicle is about to inadvertently cross a lane marking, or if the sensors detect an oncoming vehicle, a warning is issued and a steering intervention is performed.

     Depending on national-market version, with continuous lane markings: If the system detects that your vehicle is about to inadvertently leave your lane or cross a lane marking, a warning is issued and a steering intervention is performed.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"

6. "Vibration intensity"
7. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

Depending on the national-market version: turning steering intervention on/off

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane Departure Warning"
7. "Steering intervention"

Depending on the national-market version, the steering intervention is automatically active after every driving off.

Display in the instrument cluster

Different system statuses are displayed on the instrument cluster, depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

Icon	Meaning
	Indicator light flashes green: System is actively issuing a warning. If necessary, the system performs a steering intervention.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, information for the system is displayed in the Assisted View of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 151.

Warning function

General information

Different warnings are issued by the Lane Departure Warning system, depending on situation and speed:

- Indicator lights and warning lights on the instrument cluster.
- Vibration of steering wheel.
- Steering intervention.
- Warning tone.

Steering wheel vibration

If you leave the lane and if a lane boundary has been detected, the steering wheel vibrates in accordance with the steering wheel vibration setting.

Additionally, a light is displayed on the instrument cluster.

When the turn signal is switched on in the corresponding direction before changing the lane, a warning is not issued.

Steering intervention

Depending on the equipment and the national-market version: if a lane boundary is crossed in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

During an active steering intervention, a light is displayed on the instrument cluster.

For instance, the steering intervention will be suppressed in the following situations:

- With hard accelerating or braking.
- When flashing.
- With hazard warning system switched on.
- In driving situation with high driving dynamics.

- While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- While Dynamic Stability Control is limited.
- Immediately following a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.

End of warning

For instance, the warning or an active steering intervention will be canceled in the following situations:

- Automatically after a few seconds.
- When returning to your own lane.
- With hard accelerating or braking.
- With hazard warning system switched on.
- When flashing.
- While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- Immediately following a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.
- With manual steering intervention.
- When another driver assistance system is activated, if applicable.
- No lane boundaries detected.
- When the system limits are reached.

Warning signal

A warning tone sounds if the driver does not actively steer after the Lane Departure Warning system has performed multiple active steering interventions within one minute.

In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

The warning tone and Check Control message advise the driver to pay closer attention to their lane.

The longer warning tone is stopped if the driver takes control of the steering.

With trailer towing

If the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, for instance during operation with trailer, no steering intervention takes place.

If using a rear carrier on the trailer hitch, this restriction does not apply when trailer towing is activated on the control display.

Additional information:

Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 329.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane boundaries such as in construction areas.
- With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Up to 10 seconds after turning on drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.
- While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- While Dynamic Stability Control is restricted or disabled.

A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is limited. A yellow warning light also illuminates, depending on national-market version.

Active Blind Spot Detection with active return

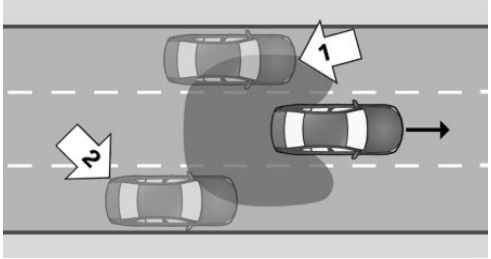
Principle

Active Blind Spot Detection detects vehicles in the blind spot or vehicles approaching from behind in the adjacent lane.

The warning light in the exterior mirror gives warnings at different levels.

An automatic steering intervention helps to keep the vehicle in its lane.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle when traveling faster than a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed in the Active Blind Spot Detection menu.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in your blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind in an adjacent lane, arrow 2. The warning light in the exterior mirror illuminates dimly.

The system will warn in the previously named situations prior to a lane change. The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

When turning at a speed of up to approx. 12 mph/20 km/h, the steering wheel will not vibrate.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Camera behind the windshield.
- ▷ Radar sensors, side, rear.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment: radar sensors, side, front.

Functional requirement

The areas of the sensors must be clean and clear.

Turning Active Blind Spot Detection on/off

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
7. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the Active Blind Spot Detection

Configuring the warning

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
7. Select the desired setting.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"
6. "Vibration intensity"
7. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

Depending on the national-market version: turning steering intervention on/off

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
7. "Steering intervention"

Warning function

Warning light in exterior mirror

The warning light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision with a detected vehicle.

Prewarning

The dimmed warning light in the exterior mirror indicates when vehicles are in your blind spot or approaching from the rear.

Acute warning

When an acute warning occurs, the steering wheel vibrates briefly. The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes brightly.

An acute warning is issued if the following conditions are met:

- ▷ Another vehicle is located in the critical area.
- ▷ Your own vehicle is approaching the other lane.
- ▷ Depending on the system setting when the turn signal is turned on.

The warning stops when the other vehicle has left the critical area.

Steering intervention

Depending on the national-market version: when there is no response to the vibration of the steering wheel at speeds of up to 130 mph/210 km/h and the lane boundary is crossed, the system engages the active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps return the vehicle into the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

The steering intervention is carried out from a minimum speed. The minimum speed is displayed on the control display.

With trailer towing

No steering intervention is performed when the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated. This system does not issue a pre-warning.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: An acute warning continues to be issued if there is a risk of collision.

The warning function may be restricted. Warnings can be displayed late or not at all, e.g., if the speed of the approaching vehicle is much higher than your own speed. An increased number of unwarranted warnings may occur. A Check Control message is displayed.

Warning light flashing

When the vehicle is unlocked, the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes for self-testing purposes.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

If the vehicle speed falls below approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is reactivated.

Displaying warnings

The number of warnings shown depends on how the settings are configured. However, there may also be an excess of unwarranted warnings of critical situations.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- The bumper is dirty, iced up or covered, for instance by stickers.

Depending on the national-market version, the steering intervention e.g. in the following situations:

- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane boundaries such as in construction areas.
- With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- With lane boundaries that are not white.
- With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- If the camera is impaired.
- Up to 10 seconds after turning on drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.

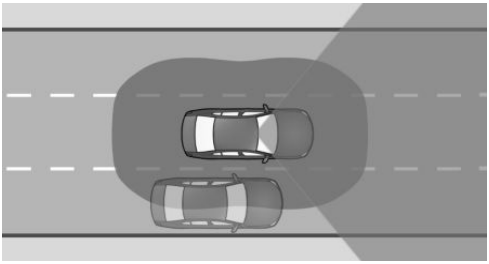
A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is limited. A yellow warning light also illuminates, depending on national-market version.

Side Collision Protection

Principle

The Side Collision Protection helps to avoid an impending side collision.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the space next to the vehicle when traveling faster than a minimum speed and up to approx. 130 mph/210 km/h.

The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed on the control display.

If, for example, another vehicle is detected next to your vehicle and there is a risk of collision

with this vehicle, the system helps avoid a collision. For this purpose, the system issues a warning with a flashing LED in the exterior mirror, a Check Control message and a vibrating steering wheel. If necessary, an active steering intervention is performed by the system.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Functional requirement

The camera behind the windshield determines the lane boundary positions.

The camera must detect the lane boundaries for the Side Collision Protection with steering intervention to be active.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Camera behind the windshield.
- ▷ Radar sensors, side, front.
- ▷ Radar sensors, side, rear.

Turning the Side Collision Protection on/off

1. ⊞ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Side Collision Protection"
7. Select the desired setting.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. ⊞ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"
6. "Vibration intensity"
7. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

Display in the instrument cluster

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, information for the system is displayed in the Assisted View of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 151.

Warning function

Warning light in exterior mirror

The warning light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision with a detected vehicle.

Acute warning

If there is a risk of collision, the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel starts vibrating.

A Check Control message is displayed at the same time.

Steering intervention

Depending on the national-market version, if necessary, the system engages the active steering intervention to prevent a collision and maintain the vehicle within its own lane. The

steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▷ In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- ▷ In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane boundaries such as in construction areas.
- ▷ With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ With lane boundaries that are not white.
- ▷ With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- ▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after turning on drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.

A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is limited.

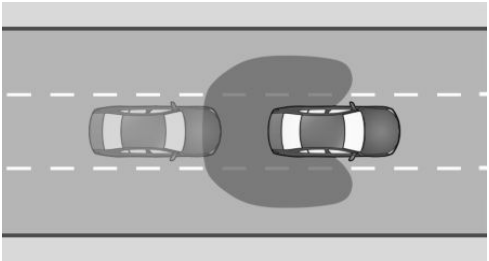
The system is inactive when the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, e.g., when using a trailer or rear bicycle rack. A Check Control message is displayed.

Rear-End Collision Preparation

Principle

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the Rear-End Collision Preparation can react to vehicles approaching from behind.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind the vehicle.

When a vehicle approaches from the rear at a certain speed, the system can react as follows:

- ▷ If necessary, the hazard warning system will turn on.
- ▷ Where applicable, the PreCrash functions are triggered.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the radar sensors on the sides and rear.

Turning Rear-End Collision Preparation on/off

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

The system is deactivated in the following situations:

- ▷ When driving in reverse.
- ▷ When the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, e.g., when using a trailer or rear bicycle rack.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

Functional limitations

This function may be restricted if the speed of the approaching vehicle is much higher or similar to your own speed.

Traffic Light And Sign Warning

Principle

The Traffic Light And Sign Warning provides support in situations in which the right-of-way needs to be yielded based on road signs or traffic lights.

General information

The system evaluates traffic signs and traffic lights using a camera behind the windshield.

The navigation system directs information on the road layout to the system.

A warning is given if the right of way is about to be violated, e.g., in the following traffic situations:

- ▷ At an intersection.
- ▷ At a road entrance.
- ▷ On a highway entrance ramp.
- ▷ At a roundabout.
- ▷ With a red traffic light.

The system issues a warning as from a variable minimum speed and at speeds up to approx. 60 mph/100 km/h.

The following traffic signs are taken into account for the Traffic Light And Sign Warning:

Sign	Meaning
	Give way signs: A pre-warning is issued for these road signs.
	Stop signs: A pre-warning is issued for these road signs.
	When traffic lights are red, a pre-warning and an acute warning will be issued.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Functional requirement

The right-of-way situation ahead of the vehicle must be clearly controlled by traffic signs or light signal systems.

Sensors

The system is controlled by a camera behind the windshield.

Turning the Traffic Light And Sign Warning on/off

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Traffic Light and Sign Warning"
7. Select the desired setting.

Setting the warning time

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"

4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Traffic Light and Sign Warning"
7. Select the desired setting.

The selected setting is saved and adopted for the next journey.

Warning function

General information

The system issues a two-phase warning:

- ▷ Prewarning: visual warning by an icon in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Acute warning: visual warning by an icon in the instrument cluster and an additional acoustic signal.

The timing of the warning varies with the actual driving situation and the warning time setting.

Prewarning

If there is a risk that a right of way is about to be violated, one of the following icons appears in the instrument cluster:

Icon	Meaning
	Give way.
	Stop.
	Red traffic light.

When a prewarning is issued, intervene as appropriate for the situation; for example, by braking.

Acute warning

If there is an acute risk that the right of way is about to be violated, an acoustic signal will sound and one of the following icons will appear in the instrument cluster:

Icon	Meaning
	Red traffic light.

When an acute warning is issued, intervene as appropriate for the situation; for example, by braking.

Display in the Head-up display

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the warning is displayed simultaneously in the Head-up display and in the instrument cluster.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

No warning

The system does not issue a warning in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ In right-of-way situations without right-of-way signs, stop signs, or red light signal systems.
- ▷ With intersections with relevant traffic lights that are illuminated yellow or green.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▷ If road signs or light signal systems are unclear.
- ▷ If traffic signs or light signal systems are fully or partially concealed or soiled.
- ▷ If traffic signs or light signal systems are difficult to read or rotated.
- ▷ If traffic signs or light signal systems are too small or too large.

- If the traffic signs do not correspond to the standard.
- When traffic signs are detected that apply to a junction or parallel street.
- In the presence of country-specific road signs or road layouts.
- With intersections with flashing light signal systems.
- Up to 10 seconds after turning on drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.
- In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- In some regions, the system may not be available or only partially available.

Wrong Way Warning

Principle

The Wrong Way Warning warns the driver of an upcoming wrong entry onto roads, for instance onto freeways, roundabouts and one-way streets.

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the system uses navigation data and traffic signs to check the traffic situation.

For example, the system takes the following traffic signs into account:

- No entrance.
- Roundabout.
- Directional arrows: mandatory bypass.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Functional requirement

The road layout ahead must be controlled clearly with traffic signs.

Sensors

The system is controlled by a camera behind the windshield.

Turning Wrong Way Warning on/off

Depending on national-market version, the Wrong Way Warning is automatically activated whenever you start driving.

Warning function

A warning is displayed and a signal tone sounds, for example when the vehicle is traveling in the wrong direction on a highway, roundabout or one-way street.

Warnings are displayed in the instrument cluster and, depending on the equipment, in the Head-up display.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

No warning

For example, the system does not issue a warnings for road layouts without traffic signs.

Functional limitations

The function may be limited in the following situations, for instance, and will either output an incorrect Wrong Way Warning or no warning at all:

- When the signage is not clear.
- If the traffic signs are fully or partially concealed or soiled.
- If the traffic signs are poorly legible or rotated.
- If the traffic signs are too small or too large.
- If the traffic signs do not correspond to the standard.

- When traffic signs are detected that apply to a junction or parallel street.
- In the presence of country-specific road signs or road layouts.
- Up to 10 seconds after turning on drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.
- In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- It may not be possible to use the system in all regions.

No Turn on Red function

Principle

This function provides assistance to the driver at traffic lights where turning on red is prohibited.

To do so, this function analyzes traffic lights and traffic signs using the camera behind the windshield. In addition, the navigation system data is used.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Functional requirements

- The system detects the right-of-way situation ahead by analyzing traffic lights and traffic signs.
- Vehicle is less than approx. 164 ft/50 m from the traffic lights.
- Depending on vehicle equipment: the Traffic Light And Sign Warning is turned on.

Sensors

The system is controlled by a camera behind the windshield.

Display in the instrument cluster

If the driver approaches a red traffic light with a traffic sign that prohibits a turn on red, an indicator light is displayed on the instrument cluster.

The indicator light goes out automatically after you drive off at a speed greater than approx. 9 mph/15 km/h.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- If road signs or light signal systems are unclear.
- If traffic signs or light signal systems are fully or partially concealed or soiled.
- If traffic signs or light signal systems are difficult to read or rotated.
- If traffic signs or light signal systems are too small or too large.
- If the traffic signs do not correspond to the standard.
- With intersections with flashing light signal systems.
- In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- In some regions, this function may not be completely available or not available at all.

Emergency Stop Assistant

Principle

If the driver can no longer drive the vehicle safely, the Emergency Stop Assistant helps to bring the vehicle to a safe standstill.

General information

The Emergency Stop Assistant is triggered automatically.

When the system is triggered, the vehicle is brought to a standstill in its own lane by use of lane keeping.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

Functional requirements

- The Emergency Stop Assistant is activated via iDrive.
- The system is activated from a speed of approx. 43 mph/70 km/h.
- The Driver Attention Camera detects driver activity.

Triggering the Emergency Stop Assistant

If the system detects that the driver is no longer driving the vehicle safely or ignores warnings, the Emergency Stop Assistant is triggered automatically. The triggered system is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The Emergency Stop Assistant can also be triggered via voice input.

Additional information:

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, refer to page 53.

An immediate emergency call can be triggered on the control display.

The following is performed automatically when the Emergency Stop Assistant is triggered:

- A display is shown on the instrument cluster.
- The system takes over vehicle handling until the vehicle comes to a standstill.
- The hazard warning system is switched on.
- An emergency call is triggered when stationary, depending on vehicle equipment.
- The Head-up display may turn off while an emergency call is ongoing.

Activating/deactivating Emergency Stop Assistant

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Emergency stop"
7. Select the desired setting.

Canceling Emergency Stop Assistant

The driver can cancel the Emergency Stop Assistant by actively taking control of driving the vehicle throughout the entire process.

The system is stopped by the following actions, for example:

- By firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.
- By stopping the system on the control display.
- By operating the turn signal.

- By turning off the hazard warning system.
- By firmly countersteering.
- By changing the selector lever position when the vehicle was already at a standstill.

At standstill

As soon as the vehicle is stationary, the system will carry out the following settings:

- The vehicle is secured against rolling away.
- The interior lights are switched on.
- The central locking system is unlocked.

Display in the instrument cluster

Icon	Status
	Emergency Stop Assistant is triggered.

System limits

The system cannot replace the roadworthy driving performance of a driver.

The Emergency Stop Assistant may be restricted in the following situations:

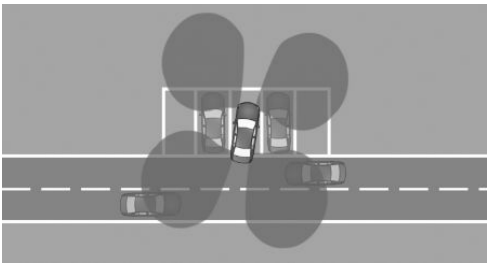
- When the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel.
- With sunglasses with high protection from infrared light.

Cross Traffic Warning with Braking

Principle

At blind driveway exits or when driving out of perpendicular parking spaces, road users approaching from the side are detected sooner by the cross traffic warning than is possible from the driver's seat.

General information



The area behind the vehicle is monitored by sensors.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area around the vehicle in front of the vehicle is monitored as well.

The system indicates approaching road users.

If there is a collision risk when reversing, the system will provide assistance by performing an automatic brake intervention.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Radar sensors, side, rear.
- Depending on the equipment: radar sensors, side, front.

Activating/deactivating Cross Traffic Warning

The system must be activated on the control display for the Cross Traffic Warning and brake intervention to switch on automatically.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking"
6. Depending on the equipment, select the following setting:
   - "Rear warning"
   - "Front and rear warning"
   - "Brake intervention at rear"

Turning on the cross traffic warning automatically

The system must be activated on the control display. The system turns on automatically as soon as Park Distance Control or a camera view activates and you engage a gear position.

If reverse gear is engaged, the rear system is switched on.

Depending on the equipment, the front system is turned on when a gear position is engaged.

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active when the vehicle is started.

Turning off the cross traffic warning automatically

The system is automatically turned off in the following situations:

- When the speed exceeds walking speed.
- When a certain distance covered is exceeded.

Warning function

General information

The control display shows the corresponding view, an acoustic signal may sound as necessary, and the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes.

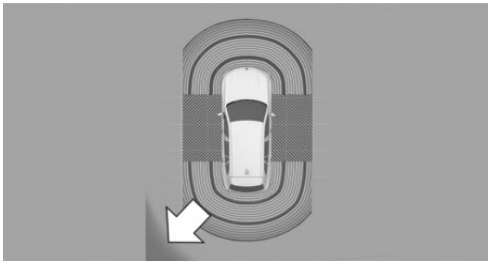
In case of a brake intervention, a message is displayed on the control display and close after a brief period of time.

Visual warning

Warning light in exterior mirror

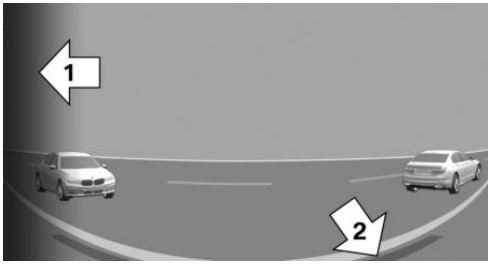
The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes if the rear sensors detect other vehicles when the vehicle is reversing.

Display in the Park Distance Control view



In the Park Distance Control view, the respective boundary area flashes red if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Display in camera image



Depending on the direction of travel, the view to the front or back is displayed in the camera image.

The respective boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera image flashes red if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, mark the bumper of your own vehicle.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the visual warning, a signal tone sounds if your own vehicle moves into the respective direction.

Depending on the national-market version, the signal tone will already sound when the gear position is engaged.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Functional limitations

The function can be limited, for instance in the following situations:

- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ Crossing objects are moving at a very slow or a very fast speed.
- ▷ Other objects that hide cross traffic are in the capture range of the sensors.
- ▷ If the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, the cross traffic warning is not available for the area behind the vehicle.

BMW Drive Recorder

Principle

The BMW Drive Recorder stores brief video recordings of the vehicle surroundings, e.g., to document surrounding traffic.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

General information

Video recordings can be saved in different ways:

- ▷ Automatic storage of the recording.

  The function makes it possible to document the accident or theft of the vehicle with the corresponding recording type set.
- ▷ Manual storage of the recording.

  This function is used to document traffic situations with the configured recording type.

The assistance systems' cameras are used to record, e.g., Panorama View.

Additionally, the following parameters are stored for the trip:

- ▷ Date.
- ▷ Time.
- ▷ Vehicle speed.
- ▷ Global Positioning System coordinates.

Data protection

The permissibility of recording and using video recordings is contingent upon the statutory regulations of the country in which the system is to be used. The user is responsible for the use of the system and compliance with respective applicable regulations.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends confirming there are no statutory or regulatory constraints on use of the system in your state or country prior to the initial use. In addition, the laws with respect to use of the system should be verified in regular intervals, especially when borders are frequently crossed.

Other drivers of the vehicle must be informed about the system. In addition, information about the system is required when handing off the vehicle.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Standby state or drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ BMW Drive Recorder is activated.
- ▷ Privacy Policy was accepted.
- ▷ Recording type was selected.
- ▷ Recording time was selected.

Theft notification:

- ▷ The theft notification was activated in the Data Protection menu or in the Drive Recorder menu.
- ▷ Data transfer is activated.
- ▷ My BMW App is installed on the mobile device.
- ▷ My BMW App is linked with the ConnectedDrive account.
- ▷ Privacy Policy was accepted.

Activating/deactivating the BMW Drive Recorder

The BMW Drive Recorder must be activated before the first use of the recording function.

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. Accept Privacy Policy.
5. "Settings"
6. "Allow recording"
7. Select the desired setting.

Recording functions

Automatic recording

The recording is automatically stored when the vehicle sensors detect an accident or theft.

- ▷ In case of accident:

  The system saves recordings up to 30 seconds before and after storage is triggered.
- ▷ In case of theft:

Depending on the selected recording duration, the system saves the recording after it has been triggered.

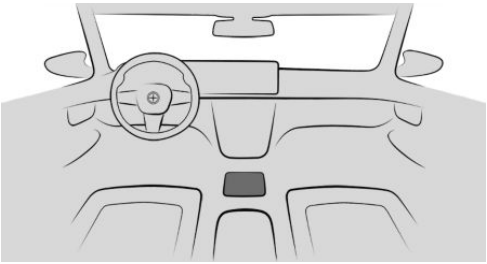
When the alarm system is triggered, a message is sent to the My BMW App.

After saving the recording, the reduced quality video can be downloaded to a mobile device.

If the vehicle accelerates rapidly, an automatic recording may be taken.

Manual recording

Using the button



Press and hold this button.

Via iDrive

Start the recording:

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Recording"
5. "Start recording"

Stop the recording: "Stop recording".

The system saves recordings up to 30 seconds before and after storage is triggered.

Recording playback and administration

Stored video recordings can be played back, exported and deleted.

For your own safety, the video recording is only displayed on the control display up to approx. 2 mph/3 km/h. In some national-market versions, the video recording is only displayed if the parking brake is engaged or if the selector lever is in the P position.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Record -ings"
5. Select desired recording.
6. If necessary, select camera.

Settings

Recording type

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

Recording time

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

Recording on a mobile device

Principle

Depending on the equipment version, video recordings can be stored directly on a mobile device such as a smartphone or USB storage.

General information

Depending on national-market version: The storable video length depends on the mobile device's available storage space.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Privacy Policy was accepted.
- ▷ BMW Drive Recorder is activated.

To transfer recordings to a mobile device:

- ▷ Depending on vehicle equipment, a mobile device is connected to the vehicle via Wi-Fi and Bluetooth audio, or a USB storage device is connected.
- ▷ My BMW App is installed on the mobile device.
- ▷ A BMW ID is linked to a ConnectedDrive account in the vehicle and the My BMW App.
- ▷ The My BMW App is permitted to access your photo library.
- ▷ The mobile device is placed close to the center console.

Recording

The recording can be started and stopped manually.

Start the recording:

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Recording"
5. "Start recording"

Stop the recording: "Stop recording".

Cameras

Different cameras can be selected.

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Settings"
5. "Cam. selection"
6. Select desired camera.

System limits

In the event of serious accidents, it may not be possible to store recordings if the damage on the vehicle is too great or the power supply was interrupted.

If you repeatedly overwrite a USB drive, it may not be possible to export recordings correctly.

The preferred file system for USB storage is NTFS. Other file systems may have limitations.

In case of theft, the recording is only stored automatically when the anti-theft warning system has been triggered.

If the internet connection is weak or cannot be established, theft alerts and video downloads may be restricted or not available.

The BMW Drive Recorder may not work properly if used in parallel with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto on the vehicle Wi-Fi. A corresponding message appears on the control display.

The quality of the Wi-Fi connection affects whether recordings can be saved on your smartphone. This function may be restricted or not available if the connection is weak.

Active Protection

Principle

Active Protection prepares occupants and the vehicle for a possible accident in critical driving or collision situations.

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, Active Protection consists of various PreCrash functions.

The system is used to detect certain critical driving situations that might lead to an accident. This includes the following critical driving situations:

- Emergency braking.
- Severe understeering.
- Severe oversteering.

Certain functions of several systems can, within the system limits, lead to Active Protection triggering:

- Forward Collision Mitigation: automatic brake intervention.
- Forward Collision Mitigation: brake booster.
- Rear-End Collision Preparation: detection of impending rear-end collisions.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, critical situations might not be detected reliably or in time. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Function

Depending on the equipment and requirements, the following individual functions are active in accident-critical driving situations:

- Automatic closing of the windows.

  The windows remain open with a small gap.
- Automatic closing of the glass sunroof.

  The sun protection is also closed.
- Automatic positioning of the backrest for the front passenger seat.

Systems can be returned to the desired settings following a critical driving situation without accident.

PostCrash iBrake

Principle

In certain accident situations, the PostCrash iBrake can automatically bring the vehicle to a standstill without intervention by the driver.

General information

The PostCrash iBrake can reduce the risk of a further collision and its consequences.

At standstill

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

Harder vehicle deceleration

In certain situations, it may be necessary to bring the vehicle to a stop more quickly than automatic braking with PostCrash iBrake.

To do this, quickly apply extra force to the brake. The brake pressure will then be higher than the brake pressure generated by automatic braking. Automatic braking with PostCrash iBrake is canceled.

Abort automatic braking

It may be necessary to cancel PostCrash iBrake automatic braking in certain situations, e.g., when making an evasive maneuver.

Abort automatic braking:

- By depressing the brake pedal for slightly longer.
- By pressing the accelerator pedal for slightly longer.

Fatigue Alert

Principle

The Fatigue Alert break recommendation feature can detect when the driver is fatigued or less alert during long, monotonous trips,

for instance on highways. This function recommends taking a break.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

Break recommendation

Function

Once a drive is started, this function is trained to the driver, enabling it to detect when the driver is less alert or is fatigued.

This procedure takes, for example, the following criteria into account:

- Personal driving style, for instance steering behavior.
- Driving conditions, for instance time, length of trip.
- Depending on the equipment: attention of the driver through the Driver Attention Camera.

This function activates at speeds greater than approx. 43 mph/70 km/h and can also display a break recommendation.

Setting break recommendation

The break recommendation can be switched on, off and adjusted via iDrive.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Fatigue Alert"
7. Select the desired setting.

Despite this function being off, some driver assistance systems may issue break recommendations.

Display

If the driver becomes less alert or fatigued, a message is displayed in the control display with the recommendation to take a break.

During the display, various settings can be selected.

The system is reset approx. 45 minutes after parking the vehicle. A break recommendation can only be displayed again after this time has elapsed.

System limits

The Fatigue Alert system may be limited. If the system is limited, either no warning may be issued or an unwarranted warning may be issued.

The break recommendation function may be limited in the following situations:

- If the time is set incorrectly.
- At a predominantly driven speed below approx. 43 mph/70 km/h.
- With a sporty driving style such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
- In active driving situations such as when changing lanes frequently.
- When the road condition is poor.
- In the event of strong side winds.

Driver Attention Camera

Principle

A camera in the instrument cluster monitors the driver's activity and, depending on the equipment, the driver's viewing direction.

General information

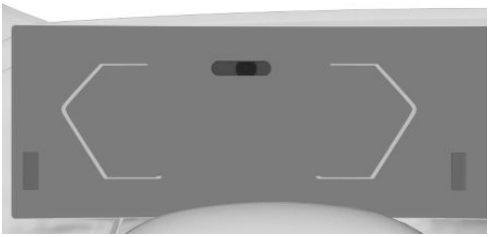
The assistance systems help drivers by analyzing whether they are paying attention, e.g., by evaluating their head position and eyes.

Functional requirements

For full operability, make sure that the field of view of the Driver Attention Camera is not obstructed.

The steering wheel and driver's seat height must be adjusted so that the entire instrument cluster is visible. This enables the Driver Attention Camera to record the driver's entire face.

Overview



Depending on vehicle equipment, the instrument cluster has one or more infrared light sources. Depending on the light conditions, these light sources can be visible when the vehicle is in standby mode.

System limits

The Driver Attention Camera may not be fully operational in the following situations:

- When the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel.
- With sunglasses with high protection from infrared light.

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Antilock Braking System

Principle

The Antilock Braking System prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

You remain able to steer your vehicle even during full braking, which increases active driving safety.

General information

The Antilock Braking System is ready after each time drive-ready state is turned on.

Malfunction

The warning light on the instrument cluster illuminates.

A Check Control message is displayed.

- ▷ The Antilock Braking System is not available.
- ▷ Steerability is limited during full braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Brake assistant

The brake assistant automatically applies maximum braking assistance when the brake pedal is depressed quickly. This reduces the braking distance to a minimum for full braking.

To make full use of braking assistance, do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal during full braking.

Dynamic Stability Control

Principle

Dynamic Stability Control helps keep the vehicle on a steady course in critical driving situations. The drive power is reduced depending on the situation, and wheels can be braked individually.

General information

The system detects the following unstable driving conditions, for instance:

- ▷ Skidding, which can lead to oversteering.
- ▷ Loss of adhesion of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

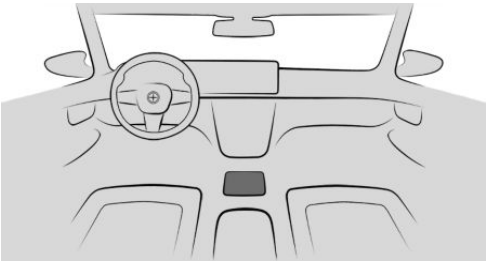
The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready

to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

When driving with a roof load, e.g., roof bars, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher. This increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

Overview



Dynamic Stability Control

Activating/deactivating Dynamic Stability Control

General information

Dynamic Stability Control is automatically activated whenever drive-ready state is switched on.

If Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated, driving stability is limited when accelerating and cornering.

To support driving stability, reactivate Dynamic Stability Control as soon as possible.

Activating/deactivating the system

1. Press the button to open the menu.
2. "DSC OFF"

   Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
3. Press the button again to reactivate Dynamic Stability Control.

Displays in the instrument cluster

View when Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

Indicator light illuminates: Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

Warning light flashes: Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the driving and brake power. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and modify your driving style to the driving circumstances.

Warning light illuminates: Dynamic Stability Control has failed or is initializing. Driving stabilization is restricted or has failed.

If the warning light illuminates continuously, have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Automatic program change

Dynamic Stability Control can be activated automatically by Forward Collision Mitigation depending on the situation. Deactivate Forward Collision Mitigation as necessary.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation with brake intervention, refer to page 173.

Dynamic Traction Control

Principle

The Dynamic Traction Control is a variant of the Dynamic Stability Control where the drive power is optimized.

The system ensures maximum drive power on unusual road conditions, for instance unplowed snow covered roads or loose road surfaces, but with somewhat limited driving stability.

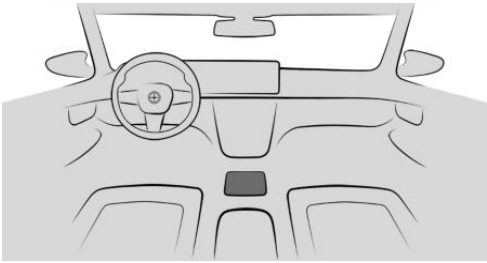
General information

The vehicle has maximum traction when Dynamic Traction Control is on. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when cornering.

A brief activation of the Dynamic Traction Control may be useful in the following situations:

- When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- When driving off from deep snow or loose ground.
- When driving with snow chains.

Overview



Dynamic Stability Control

Activating/deactivating the Dynamic Traction Control

1.

Press the button to open the menu.
2. "Traction"

   Dynamic Traction Control is activated and Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
3.

Press the button again to reactivate Dynamic Stability Control.

Displays in the instrument cluster

View when Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

Indicator light illuminates: Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

Automatic program change

In certain situations, Dynamic Stability Control is activated automatically:

- When the Distance Control is activated.
- In case of a brake intervention by Forward Collision Mitigation. Deactivate Forward Collision Mitigation as necessary.
- If the suspension control system fails.
- The vehicle has a flat tire.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation with brake intervention, refer to page 173.

BMW xDrive

Principle

BMW xDrive is the all-wheel-drive system of the vehicle. Concerted action by the BMW xDrive and other suspension control systems

such as Dynamic Stability Control further optimizes traction and driving dynamics.

General information

BMW xDrive variably distributes the drive forces to the front and rear axles as required by the driving situation and road conditions.

With the xOFFROAD package, the all-wheel-drive system is also adjusted to the respective xOFFROAD driving mode.

Display on the control display

In the Live Vehicle menu, information about BMW xDrive can be displayed under the following view:

"Terrain View"

The following information is displayed:

- ▷ Distribution of drive torque to the wheels.
- ▷ Indication of longitudinal inclination in percent.
- ▷ Indication of lateral inclination in percent.
- ▷ Graph of wheel angle.
- ▷ Level adjustment of the two-axle ride level control.
- ▷ With navigation system: elevation for the current position.

Additional information:

Live Vehicle, refer to page 136.

M sport differential

The M Sport differential provides for continuously variable locking of the rear axle differential, depending on the driving situation. This prevents spinning of a single rear wheel and thereby provides optimal traction in any driving situation.

The driver is responsible adapting his or her driving style to the situation.

Hill Descent Control

Principle

Hill Descent Control is a downhill control feature that adjusts the vehicle speed on steep downhill gradients, e.g., when driving on unpaved roads.

General information

When the system is active, the vehicle moves at the speed set by the driver, without the driver having to depress the brake pedal.

While Hill Descent Control is adjusting the speed, the system automatically distributes the brake power to the individual wheels. This improves driving stability and steerability. If necessary, the Antilock Braking System prevents the wheels from locking.

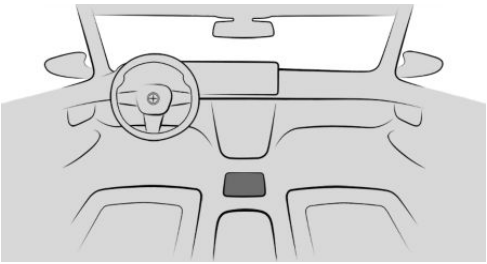
Hill Descent Control can be enabled at speeds below approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Speeds can be set between approx. 2 mph/3 km/h and approx. 20 mph/30 km/h. When the vehicle is driving downhill, the system reduces the speed to the set value, within the physical limits.

Hill Descent Control provides assistance when driving in selector lever positions D, N, and R.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Hill Descent Control

Enabling/disabling Hill Descent Control

Activating the system

Press the button.

Speeds between approx. 2 mph/3 km/h and approx. 20 mph/30 km/h are adopted as the set speed.

While Hill Descent Control is regulating the vehicle speed, the following functions are deactivated:

- ▷ Forward Collision Mitigation.
- ▷ Emergency braking function of Active Park Distance Control.

Additional information:

- ▷ Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 173.
- ▷ Active Park Distance Control, refer to page 257.

Deactivating the system

Press the button again.

The system is automatically deactivated above approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Display in the instrument cluster

The chosen speed is displayed together with the indicator light.

Display green: System is activated. Hill Descent Control decelerates the vehicle.

Display gray: System is in standby mode or temporarily deactivated.

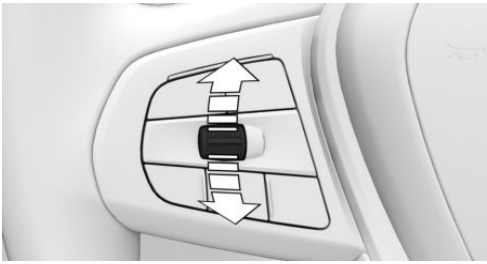
Display in the Head-up display

The status of Hill Descent Control can also be shown on the Head-up display.

Increasing or decreasing vehicle speed

Using the rocker button for Cruise Control

The set speed can be changed using the Cruise Control rocker button on the steering wheel.



- ▷ Press rocker button up: Speed increases gradually.
- ▷ Press rocker button up and hold: Speed increases while the rocker button is pressed.
- ▷ Press rocker button down: Speed decreases gradually.
- ▷ Press rocker button down and hold: Speed decreases while the rocker button is pressed.

Using the brake pedal

While Hill Descent Control is adjusting the speed, the target speed set can be reduced by depressing the brake pedal.

Malfunction

If a malfunction occurs, a Check Control message is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Servotronic

Principle

Servotronic is a speed-dependent steering support.

The system provides the steering force with more support at low speeds than at higher ones. This makes it easier to park, for instance, and makes steering firmer when driving at faster speeds.

Setting

The steering force adapts to the drive mode to convey a firm, sporty feel or a comfortable steering response.

Integral Active Steering

Principle

The Integral Active Steering increases the maneuverability of the vehicle and makes a more direct steering response possible. Driving stability is also increased at high speeds.

General information

Integral Active Steering combines variable sport steering with active rear-wheel steering.

The rear-wheel steering acts to increase maneuverability at low speeds by turning the rear wheels slightly in the opposite direction to the front wheels.

At higher speeds, the rear wheels are turned in the same direction as the front wheels. For instance, this results in a harmonious lane change.

In critical driving situations, integral active steering can stabilize the vehicle by automatically steering the rear wheels, for example e.g. when oversteering.

Setting

The system offers several different settings.

With the Driving Experience Control driving modes, the system can be set to comfortable or dynamic.

Additional information:

Driving Experience Control, refer to page 129.

Using snow chains

In order to guarantee free movement of the wheels when operating with snow chains, rear-wheel steering must be turned off when snow chains are mounted.

Additional information:

Rear-wheel steering during operation with snow chains, refer to page 353.

Malfunction

The warning light on the instrument cluster illuminates.

A Check Control message is displayed.

The steering system may not be operational. Integral Active Steering assistance may no longer be provided.

- ▷ Larger steering movements are required at low speeds.
- ▷ The response of the vehicle is more sensitive in higher speed ranges.
- ▷ Proceed cautiously and practice anticipatory driving.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Driver assistance systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Speed warning

Principle

The speed warning can be used to set a speed limit. A warning will be issued when this speed limit is exceeded.

General information

Another speed warning is given when the set speed limit is exceeded again after it has dropped by 3 mph/5 km/h.

Settings

The Speed Limit Warning can be activated or deactivated. In addition, the speed limit for the warning can be configured.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Speed warning"
7. Select the desired setting.

Speed Limit Info

Speed Limit Info

Principle

Speed Limit Info shows the currently valid speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if necessary, the Head-up display.

General information

The camera in the area of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as overhead sign posts.

Traffic signs with extra icons are considered and compared with the vehicle's onboard data. The traffic sign will then be either displayed or ignored depending on the situation in the instrument cluster and the Head-up display.

The system may also show speed limits that apply to routes that are not signposted if the navigation system has current map data.

For Speed Limit Info to function correctly, current map data for the country in which the vehicle is operated must be downloaded.

For information on the current map version and map updates, see Map update in the Navigation system chapter.

Without map data, the system is subject to certain technical limitations. Traffic signs with speed limitations are detected and displayed only. Speed limits due to entering towns/cities, highway signs, etc., are not displayed. Speed limits with extra traffic signs are always displayed.

Speed limits for trailer towing will be displayed when the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing was activated via iDrive.

Depending on the equipment, an approved maximum speed can be set up for trailer tow-

ing, which will be taken into account for the display of speed limits.

Additional information:

- ▷ Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.
- ▷ Trailer towing, refer to page 327.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by a camera behind the windshield.

Display

Speed Limit Info

Icon	Description
SPEED LIMIT 30 50 km/h	Current speed limit. Depending on the national-market version, it is possible to switch between the units of measurement.
LIMIT	No data on current speed limit available.

Warning signals

Depending on the settings, the display flashes if the detected speed limit is exceeded.

Settings

Individual settings can be configured for Speed Limit Info, e.g., warnings issued if the speed is exceeded or the permissible maximum speed changes.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Limit Assistant"
7. Select the desired setting.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Camera, refer to page 35.

Functional limitations

The system function may be limited and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- ▷ Traffic signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers, or paint.
- ▷ Traffic signs do not comply with the standard.
- ▷ In areas that are not included in the navigation system map data.
- ▷ If navigation system map data is invalid, outdated, or unavailable.
- ▷ When roads deviate from the navigation such as due to changes in road layout.
- ▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.

- When passing buses or trucks with traffic signs applied to them.
- In case of electronic traffic signs.
- When traffic signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.
- In the presence of country-specific road signs or road layouts.

Speed control systems

Principle

The speed control systems provide support when driving.

General information

Depending on the equipment, the speed control systems include the following individual systems.

- Cruise Control, refer to page 217.
- Distance Control, refer to page 220.
- Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.
- Assisted Driving Mode Plus, refer to page 235.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the individual systems are enhanced with additional functions.

Some functions can be operated via voice control.

Additional information:

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, refer to page 53.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
I/0	Turn last active speed control system on/off.
MODE	Select the desired speed control system.
SET	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.
RESUME	Resume speed control systems with the stored setting.
CANCEL	Interrupt speed control systems.
	Set speed.

Turning on/selecting speed control systems

1. I/0 Turn on: press the button.
2. MODE Select: when the system is active, press the button repeatedly until the desired speed control system is displayed in the toolbar in the instrument cluster.

Icon	Speed control system
	Cruise Control.
	Distance Control.
	Assisted Driving Mode: Cruise Control with Distance Control, Steering Assistance with lane keeping.

The activated system is shown in green.

The system is shown in white when the system can be activated.

The system is grayed out if the system has failed or if the functional requirements are not met.

Interrupting speed control systems automatically

Depending on the system, speed control systems are interrupted automatically, for instance in the following situations:

- When moving from selector lever position D to P, N, or R.
- While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- While Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- While Dynamic Traction Control is activated.
- When braking manually.

Interrupting speed control systems manually

CANCEL Press the button.

Continuing speed control systems

RESUME Press the button.

Turning off speed control systems automatically

The speed control systems turn off automatically when the drive-ready state is turned off.

Turning off speed control systems manually

I/O Press the button.

The speed control systems are turned off and the displays extinguish.

Adjusting speed values

Repeatedly press the rocker button on the steering wheel up or down until the desired value is set.

- Each time the rocker button is pressed to the resistance point, the set speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker button is pressed past the resistance point, the set speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

Display in the instrument cluster

Marking on speedometer

A mark for the set speed appears on the speedometer.

- Green marking: system is active.
- Gray marking: system is interrupted.
- No marking: system is switched off.

Notifications

In addition to the respective indicator lights, notifications are displayed for some functions.

The scope of notifications can be set.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"

3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Notifications"
7. Select the desired setting.

Cruise Control

Principle

With the Cruise Control, a set speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the set speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

General information

The system can be activated starting at 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the Cruise Control settings can change under certain conditions. For instance, the acceleration can change depending on the driving mode.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:

- ▷ On winding roads.
- ▷ With high traffic volume.
- ▷ On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.

Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
I/0	Turn last active speed control system on/off.
MODE	Select the desired speed control system.
SET	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.
RESUME	Resume speed control systems with the stored setting.

Button	Function
CANCEL	Interrupt speed control systems.
	Set speed.

Turning on the Cruise Control

In vehicles with Distance Control: change the mode of the Cruise Control to Cruise Control without distance control.

Additional information:

Distance Control, refer to page 220.

In vehicles without Distance Control: turn on the Cruise Control with the buttons on the steering wheel.

1. I/0 If necessary, press the button.
2. MODE If necessary, press the button repeatedly until the Cruise Control is selected.

Cruise Control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

The indicator lights on the instrument cluster illuminate and the mark on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

The driving mode changes or Dynamic Stability Control activates when Cruise Control is switched on.

Turning the speed control system off/interrupting

The speed control system can be turned off or canceled automatically or manually.

Additional information:

Speed control systems, refer to page 215.

Adjusting the speed

Store/maintain speed

Press the rocker button up or down once while the system is stopped.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the set speed.

The saved speed is shown on the speedometer.

When the Speed Limit Assistant is not active, the current speed can also be stored by pressing a button:

SET Press the button.

Changing the speed

Repeatedly press the rocker button up or down until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.

Press rocker button to resistance point and hold: The vehicle accelerates or decelerates without the accelerator pedal being pressed.

After the rocker button is released, the vehicle maintains the final speed achieved. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Continuing Cruise Control

At the stored speed

Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

An interrupted Cruise Control can be continued by calling up the stored speed. The difference between the current speed and the stored speed should be as little as possible.

RESUME Press the button with the system interrupted.

Cruise Control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

At the current speed

Press the rocker button up or down to continue Cruise Control at the current speed.

Speed Limit Assistant: at the suggested speed

SET When a speed is suggested, press the button to accept the Cruise Control at the suggested speed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Marking on speedometer

- Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- Gray marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator light

Icon	Description
	Indicator light green: system is active.
	Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.

Displays in the Head-up display

Depending on the equipment, some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up display.

System limits

The set speed is also maintained downhill. The speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if the drive power is insufficient.

Depending on the driving mode, the vehicle may exceed or drop below the set desired speed in some situations; for instance, on downhill or uphill grades.

Do not use Cruise Control when towing.

Distance Control

Principle

With the Distance Control, a distance to a vehicle driving ahead can be adjusted in addition to the Cruise Control.

General information

The system maintains the set speed on clear roads. The vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of the vehicle so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained. The speed is adjusted as far as the given situation allows.

The distance can be adjusted at several levels. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a standstill and then drives off again within a brief period, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits.

Otherwise, drive off independently such as by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by pressing the button for the speed setting on the steering wheel.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Automatic transmission: Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- ▷ Manual transmission: Make sure that first gear is engaged on uphill gradients and reverse gear on downhill gradients.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Risk of accident is greater when there is a high speed differential to other vehicles, for instance in the following situations:

- ▷ When approaching a slowly moving vehicle at speed.
- ▷ Vehicle suddenly swerving into own lane.
- ▷ When approaching stationary vehicles at speed.

There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
I/0	Turn last active speed control system on/off.
MODE	Select the desired speed control system.
SET	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.
RESUME	Resume speed control systems with the stored setting.
CANCEL	Interrupt speed control systems.
	Set speed.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Camera behind the windshield.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Application range

The system is best used on well-maintained roads.

The maximum speed that can be set is limited and depends, for example, on the vehicle and the vehicle equipment.

The system can also be activated when stationary.

Do not use Cruise Control and Distance Control when towing.

Turning on Cruise Control with Distance Control

1. I/0 If necessary, press the button.
2. MODE If necessary, press the button repeatedly until Distance Control is selected.

Cruise Control with Distance Control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

The selected distance to a vehicle driving ahead is maintained.

The indicator lights on the instrument cluster illuminate and the mark on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

The driving mode changes or Dynamic Stability Control activates when Distance Control is switched on.

Adjusting the speed

The speed can be set using the rocker button on the steering wheel.

Additional information:

Cruise Control, refer to page 217.

Interrupting Cruise Control with Distance Control automatically

The system is stopped automatically in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ When braking manually.
- ▷ Selector lever position D is disengaged.
- ▷ While Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- ▷ While Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

- While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- Driver's seat belt and driver's door are opened.
- The system has not detected objects for an extended period, for instance on a road with very little traffic without curb or shoulder markings.
- The detection range of the radar is impaired, for instance by contamination or heavy precipitation.
- After a longer stationary period when the vehicle has been braked to a stop by the system.

Turning the speed control system off/interrupting

The speed control system can be turned off or canceled automatically or manually.

Additional information:

Speed control systems, refer to page 215.

Continuing Cruise Control while driving

Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

An interrupted Cruise Control can be continued by calling up the stored speed. The difference between the current speed and the stored speed should be as little as possible.

Additional information:

Cruise Control, refer to page 217.

Continuing Cruise Control while vehicle is stationary

In certain situations, this system requires the driver to confirm their intention to drive off.

The displays show the following:

The mark on the speedometer illuminates gray.

The indicator light illuminates green.

Cruise Control can be continued as follows:

- Pressing the accelerator pedal.
- Press the rocker button on the left side of the steering wheel.
-

Press the button on the left side of the steering wheel.
-

Press the button on the left side of the steering wheel.

Distance

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, deceleration can be late. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Be aware of the surrounding traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.

Adjusting the distance

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Distance control"
7. "Distance"
8. Select the desired setting.

Automatic adaptation of the distance

Depending on the equipment and national-market version: the system can be set so that the distance to the vehicle in front is automatically adjusted within the set distance. The system analyzes the traffic situation and ambient conditions, e.g., poor visibility.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Distance control"
7. "Situational distance control"

Changing between Cruise Control with/without Distance Control

Safety information

Warning

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.

Changing over the Cruise Control mode

Turning Cruise Control without Distance Control on or off:

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Distance control"
7. "Switch to Cruise Control"

The setting is reset when the vehicle is parked.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary.

Marking on speedometer

- ▷ Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- ▷ Gray marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- ▷ No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator lights and warning lights

Icon	Description
	White indicator light: No Distance Control because accelerator pedal is being pressed.
	Indicator light illuminates green: Vehicle has been detected ahead of you. The vehicle icon goes out if no vehicle has been detected ahead of you. Indicator light flashes green: Preceding vehicle has driven off.
	Indicator light illuminates gray: The system is interrupted. Indicator light flashes gray: Conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
	Warning light flashes red and acoustic signal sounds: Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Assisted View

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, information for the system is displayed in the Assisted View in the central display area of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 151.

Displays in the Head-up display

Set speed

Depending on the equipment, some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up display.

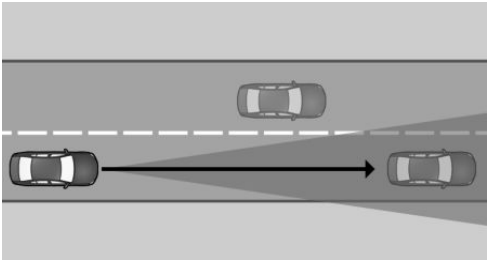
System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

▷ Cameras, refer to page 35.
▷ Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Detection range



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The detection capability of the system and the automatic braking performance are limited.

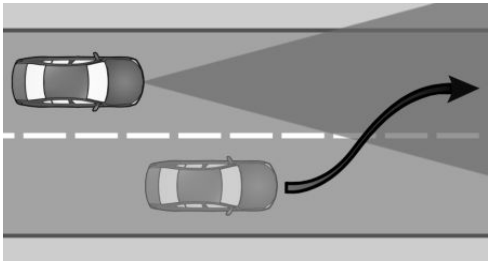
For instance, two-wheeled vehicles may not be detected.

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

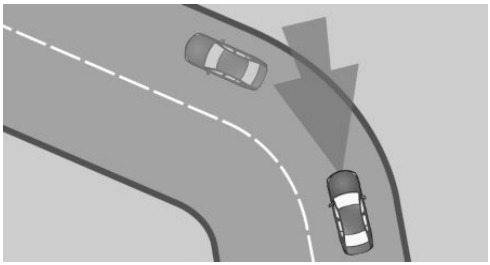
- ▷ For pedestrians or similarly slow-moving road users.
- ▷ For cross traffic.
- ▷ For oncoming traffic.

Merging vehicles



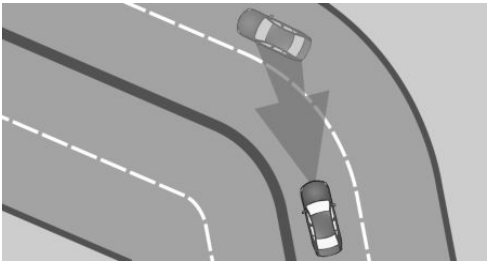
If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly merges into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. It may not be possible to restore the selected distance in certain situations, including if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles driving ahead of you, for instance when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and making an evasive maneuver, if needed.

Cornering



When the set speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly. Because curves may not be anticipated in advance, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise in tight curves where a vehicle driving ahead will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate for it by briefly accelerating. After releasing the accelerator pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

Driving off

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive off automatically; for example:

- ▷ On steep uphill grades.
- ▷ In front of bumps in the road.
- ▷ With a heavy trailer.

In these cases, step on the accelerator pedal.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- ▷ Poorer vehicle detection.
- ▷ Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Drive attentively, and react to the current surrounding traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or making an evasive maneuver.

Drive power

The set speed is also maintained downhill. The speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if the drive power is insufficient.

Depending on the driving mode, the vehicle may exceed or drop below the set desired

speed in some situations; for instance, on downhill or uphill grades.

Assisted Driving Mode

Principle

Assisted Driving Mode enhances Distance Control with Steering Assistance and lane keeping. The system assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane. For this purpose, the system executes supporting steering movements, for instance when cornering.

General information

Depending on the speed, the system orients itself according to the lane boundaries or vehicles in front.

Sensors in the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

If a lane boundary is crossed, the system issues a warning by vibrating the steering wheel. The steering wheel vibration intensity can be adjusted.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster monitors the driver's attention.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

The Cruise Control and Distance Control alerts also apply.

Additional information:

- ▷ Cruise Control, refer to page 217.
- ▷ Distance Control, refer to page 220.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
I/0	Turn last active speed control system on/off.
MODE	Select the desired speed control system.
SET	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.
RESUME	Resume speed control systems with the stored setting.
CANCEL	Interrupt speed control systems.
	Set speed.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Camera behind the windshield.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment:
  Radar sensors, side, front.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment:
  Radar sensors, side, rear.

- Sensors in steering wheel.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version: Driver Attention Camera.

Additional information:

- Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.
- Driver Attention Camera, refer to page 205.

Functional requirements

- Depending on the equipment: speed below 130 mph/210 km/h or 110 mph/180 km/h.
- Sufficient lane width.
- Hands on the steering wheel rim.
- Sufficiently wide curve radius.
- Drive in the center of the lane.
- The sensor system calibration process is complete.
- Distance Control is active.
- Seat belt on the driver's side fastened.
- Forward Collision Mitigation is active.
- Depending on the equipment:

  Side Collision Protection is active.
- With trailer hitch: You must set on the control display that you are using a trailer or rear carrier, respectively.

  Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 329.

Switching on Assisted Driving Mode

1.

If necessary, press the button.
2.

If necessary, press the button repeatedly until Assisted Driving Mode is selected.

Indicator light illuminates gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering movements.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

The indicator light illuminates green.

The system is active and helps to keep the vehicle in the lane.

When the system is switched on, the Forward Collision Mitigation and, depending on the equipment, the Side Collision Protection are active.

Stopping Assisted Driving Mode automatically

The system interrupts the supporting steering movements automatically, for example in the following situations:

- Depending on the equipment: at a speed above 130 mph/210 km/h or 110 mph/180 km/h.
- After releasing the steering wheel.
- With strong steering intervention.
- When leaving own lane.
- When the turn signal is switched on or, depending on the vehicle equipment, when the driver turns the steering wheel while the turn signal is switched on.
- When the lane is too narrow.
- If a lane boundary is not detected and there is no vehicle driving in front.
- The Cruise Control with Distance Control is interrupted.
- The seat belt on the driver's side is unfastened.

Indicator light illuminates gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering movements.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	Indicator light illuminates gray: The system is ready.
	Indicator light illuminates green: The system is activated. The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.
	Warning light flashes yellow and steering wheel vibrates: A lane boundary has been crossed.
	Warning light illuminates yellow and acoustic signal sounds: System interruption is imminent.
	Warning light flashes red and acoustic signal sounds: The system is switched off or will be interrupted very soon.

Icon	Description
	Warning light illuminates yellow: Hands are not grasping the steering wheel. The system is still active. Grab the steering wheel with your hands.
 	Warning light illuminates red, acoustic signal sounds: The hands are not on the steering wheel or, depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the driver's line of sight is not directed at the surrounding traffic. System interruption is imminent. The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable. It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements. Immediately grasp the steering wheel with your hands and pay attention to the surrounding traffic.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, a Check Control message is displayed if the Driver Attention Camera detects that the driver is inattentive.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, information for the system is displayed in the Assisted View in the central display area of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 151.

Displays on the steering wheel

Similar to the instrument cluster views, the two LEDs above the keypads illuminate.

The steering wheel displays can be turned on/off.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"
6. "Light elements"
7. Select the desired setting.

Displays in the Head-up display

Depending on the equipment, the system information can also be displayed in the Head-up display.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"
6. "Vibration intensity"
7. Select the desired setting.

This setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

System limits

General information

The system cannot be activated or meaningfully used in certain situations, e.g., when towing a trailer.

Safety information

Warning

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

The Cruise Control and Distance Control alerts also apply.

Additional information:

- Cruise Control, refer to page 217.
- Distance Control, refer to page 220.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 35.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 36.
- Driver Attention Camera, refer to page 205.

Hands on the steering wheel

The sensors cannot detect hand-steering wheel contact in the following situations:

- Driving with gloves.
- Protective covers on the steering wheel.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Poorer recognition of vehicles and lane boundaries.
- Short-term interruptions in case of already detected vehicles and lane boundaries.

Drive attentively, and react to the current surrounding traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or making an evasive maneuver.

Lane Change Assistant

Principle

The Lane Change Assistant helps when changing lanes on multi-lane roads.

Lane changes can be triggered by operating the turn signal lever.

General information

The system uses the Assisted Driving Mode sensors.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Federal, state, or local laws may differ, and the use of this function may be prohibited or limited. Before use, check federal, state, and local laws.

The Assisted Driving Mode alerts also apply.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.

Functional requirements

- The functional requirements for Assisted Driving Mode have been met.

  Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.
- Driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists and with physical barriers to oncoming traffic such as crash barriers.
- A vehicle has been detected at a sufficient distance behind your own vehicle since beginning the drive.
- Crossable lane boundaries are detected.
- Maximum speed approx. 110 mph/180 km/h.
- The minimum speed is country-specific.
- With trailer hitch: You must set on the control display that you are using a trailer or rear carrier, respectively.

  Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 329.

Turning on/turning off Lane Change Assistant

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Assisted Driving"
7. "Lane Change Assistant"

Changing lanes

1. Ensure that the traffic situation permits changing lanes.
2. Start the lane change.

- To initiate the lane change, press the turn signal lever in the desired direction to the resistance point.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment, the turn signal lever can also be pressed beyond the resistance point.

After a short time, Lane Change Assistant initiates a lane change.

After the lane change, the system helps keep the vehicle in the new lane.

Canceling a lane change

The lane change can be canceled by steering movement into the opposite direction or by operating the turn signal in the opposite direction.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	Steering wheel icon and lane change arrow icon are green: The system performs a lane change in the arrow direction.
	Steering wheel icon is green and line for lane boundary on respective side is gray: The system detected the lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, information for the system is displayed in the Assisted View in the central display area of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 151.

System limits

The Lane Change Assistant is subject to the system limits of Assisted Driving Mode.

Additional information:

▷ Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.

Automatic Lane Change Assistant

Principle

The Automatic Lane Change Assistant provides assistance when changing lanes and passing on multi-lane roads.

Depending on the speed and traffic situation, the Lane Change Assistant can perform an automatic lane change.

If the Automatic Lane Change Assistant detects an opportunity to change lanes, a lane change recommendation is displayed on the instrument cluster.

There is an opportunity to change lanes if, for example, there is a sufficiently large gap in the adjacent lane when a preceding vehicle in the same lane is moving slowly.

After the driver checks the adjacent lane, the turn signal switches on automatically and the speed is adjusted as necessary. The Automatic Lane Change Assistant then changes lane into the adjacent lane.

The system does not change lanes if it detects that the driver has not looked to check or if the traffic situation changes.

General information

The system uses the Assisted Driving Mode sensors.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to

all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Federal, state, or local laws may differ, and the use of this function may be prohibited or limited. Before use, check federal, state, and local laws.

In addition, the information on Assisted Driving Mode and Assisted Driving Mode Plus applies.

Additional information:

- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.
- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode Plus, refer to page 235.

Functional requirements

- ▷ The functional requirements for Assisted Driving Mode or Assisted Driving Mode Plus have been met.

  Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.

  Assisted Driving Mode Plus, refer to page 235.
- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode or Assisted Driving Mode Plus is activated.
- ▷ Driving on a highway-like road without pedestrians or cyclists and with physical barriers to oncoming traffic, e.g., guard rails.
- ▷ The Driver Attention Camera detects the driver's line of sight.
- ▷ This system detects the traffic situation clearly.
- ▷ The traffic situation in the adjacent lane permits a lane change.
- ▷ No lane change was performed immediately before the current situation.
- ▷ Crossable lane boundaries are detected.
- ▷ Maximum speed approx. 110 mph/180 km/h.
- ▷ The minimum speed is country-specific.
- ▷ Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: Route guidance is activated on the navigation system. The function is not available when using navigation software via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.
- ▷ With trailer hitch: You must set on the control display that you are using a trailer or rear carrier, respectively.

  Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 329.

Turning the Automatic Lane Change Assistant on/off

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Assisted Driving"
7. "Autom. Lane Change Assistant": Lane changes can be done automatically depending on national-market version.

Changing lanes

1. The Automatic Lane Change Assistant suggests a lane change. A signal tone sounds.
2. Trigger the lane change by checking the adjacent lane.

   After a short time, the Automatic Lane Change Assistant initiates a lane change.

Cancel the lane change manually, e.g., by countersteering, in critical situations.

If the system cannot perform a lane change, a corresponding message is displayed on the instrument cluster.

After the lane change, the system helps keep the vehicle in the new lane.

Canceling a lane change

The lane change can be canceled by steering movement into the opposite direction or by operating the turn signal in the opposite direction.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	Suggestion for a possible lane change. A signal tone sounds. A green checkmark on the icon indicates that the function is active.
	Steering wheel icon and lane change arrow icon are green: The system performs a lane change in the arrow direction.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, information for the system is displayed in the Assisted View in the central display area of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 151.

System limits

The Automatic Lane Change Assistant is subject to the system limits of the following systems:

- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.
- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode Plus, refer to page 235.
- ▷ Driver Attention Camera, refer to page 205.

Lane change with active guidance

Principle

Lane change with active guidance assists the driver when lane changes are necessary to reach a destination. A notice is also displayed on the instrument cluster. A slight jolt can also be felt on the steering wheel, depending on national-market version and settings.

General information

The system uses the Assisted Driving Mode sensors.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

The Cruise Control, Distance Control, and Assisted Driving alerts also apply.

Additional information:

- ▷ Cruise Control, refer to page 217.
- ▷ Distance Control, refer to page 220.
- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Cruise Control and Distance Control are activated.
- ▷ Driving on a highway or highway-like road.
- ▷ A situation-dependent minimum speed has been reached.
- ▷ The system detects a sufficiently large gap in traffic in the adjacent lane.
- ▷ A crossable lane boundary on the side of the desired lane change is detected.
- ▷ Destination guidance is active on the navigation system.

The function is not available when using navigation software via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

- ▷ The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is driven.
- ▷ The Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster detects that the driver is paying attention to the surrounding traffic.
- ▷ With trailer hitch: You must set on the control display that you are using a trailer or rear carrier, respectively.

  Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 329.

Switching lane change on/off with active destination guidance

1. ⊞ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Route and intersection assistant"
7. "Lane Guiding with Navigation"

Switching the steering wheel jerk on/off

You can switch the steering wheel jerk assistance on/off.

1. ⊞ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Route and intersection assistant"
7. "Steering wheel impulse"

Changing lanes

If lane changes are necessary to reach a navigation destination, a corresponding notice is displayed on the instrument cluster. In addition, a slight jerk can be felt on the steering wheel.

To change lanes, follow the instructions on the instrument cluster.

1. The system detects a suitable gap in the flow of traffic in the adjacent lane. A green checkmark is displayed on the lane change icon on the instrument cluster. The system prepares for the lane change.
2. When a suitable gap is detected, the speed is adapted so that the vehicle remains level with the opening.
3. A Check Control message indicates a lane change suggestion.
4. When the traffic situation permits a lane change, the driver can steer the vehicle into the next lane.

   For vehicles equipped with Lane Change Assistant: the Lane Change Assistant can be started, e.g., by operating the turn signal after the Check Control message appears.

   For vehicles equipped with Automatic Lane Change Assistant: Once the Check Control message appears, a lane change can be started by checking the adjacent lane.
5. If necessary, the system automatically starts additional lane changes.

Display in the instrument cluster

Icon	Function
	Indicates a necessary lane change. The icon varies depending on the traffic situation.
	A green checkmark on the icon indicates that the function is active. A red cross on the icon indicates that the system cannot assist with the lane change.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the traffic situation is displayed in Assisted View on the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 151.

System limits

The Lane Change Assistant with Active Guidance is subject to the system limits of the following systems:

- ▷ Cruise Control, refer to page 217.
- ▷ Distance Control, refer to page 220.
- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.
- ▷ Driver Attention Camera, refer to page 205.

Assisted Driving Mode Plus

Principle

Assisted Driving Mode Plus provides assistance with guiding the vehicle on select highways.

The system increases driving comfort in suitable driving situations.

Sensors in the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Different versions of this function are available depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

- ▷ Version for speeds up to approx. 40 mph/60 km/h, e.g., traffic jam.
- ▷ Version for speeds up to approx. 85 mph/135 km/h.

General information

For versions up to 85 mph/135 km/h, the following applies:

Assisted Driving Mode Plus will be active at the time of vehicle delivery and will only be available for a limited period. Information about the duration of availability for Assisted Driving Mode Plus will be available prior to and at the time of vehicle sale. Assisted Driving Mode Plus may be terminated earlier due to technical or legal requirements. Further information about the availability of Assisted Driving Mode Plus can be requested from an authorized service center.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ Warning

This system is only intended for use on roads with structural separation from oncoming traffic, e.g., highways. Because of the system limits, the system can also remain active on roads without structural separations and may not react as expected. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Deactivate the system if it is enabled on roads without structural separations.

Federal, state, or local laws may differ, and the use of this function may be prohibited or limited. Before use, check federal, state, and local laws.

The Assisted Driving Mode alerts also apply.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.

Overview

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Camera behind the windshield.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.
- ▷ Side radar sensors, front.
- ▷ Side radar sensors, rear.
- ▷ The sensors in the steering wheel.
- ▷ Driver Attention Camera.

The version up to 85 mph/135 km/h additionally uses the following sensors:

- ▷ Front camera.
- ▷ Exterior mirror cameras.
- ▷ Rear View Camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Functional requirements

The following functional requirements apply to Assisted Driving Mode Plus:

- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode Plus must be available in the country in which the vehicle is driven.
- ▷ The functional requirements for Assisted Driving Mode have been met.

  Assisted Driving Mode is active and the LED displays on the steering wheel are switched on.

  Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.
- ▷ Driving on a highway-like road without pedestrians or cyclists and with physical barriers to oncoming traffic, e.g., guard rails.
- ▷ Lane boundaries are detected.
- ▷ Sufficient lane width.
- ▷ Sufficiently wide curve radius.
- ▷ The navigation system must clearly identify the road and vehicle position.
- ▷ This function must be available on the road on which the vehicle is driving.
- ▷ Antennas located in the roof must not be covered, e.g., by roof loads or snow.
- ▷ The Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster detects that the driver is paying attention to the surrounding traffic.
- ▷ With trailer hitch: You must set on the control display that you are using a trailer or rear carrier, respectively.

  Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 329.

For the version up to 40 mph/60 km/h, the following additional functional requirements apply:

- ▷ A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.
- ▷ Speed below approx. 40 mph/60 km/h.

For the version up to 85 mph/135 km/h, the following additional functional requirements apply:

- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode Plus is enabled in the vehicle.
- ▷ The navigation data must be up to date.
- ▷ Vehicle speed is less than approx. 85 mph/135 km/h.
- ▷ The systems in the vehicle, e.g., the Fatigue Alert and the Driver Attention Camera recognize that the driver is rested.

Switching Assisted Driving Mode Plus on/off

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Assisted Driving"
7. "Assisted Driving Plus"

Assisted Driving Mode Plus is automatically offered when Assisted Driving Mode is active

and all functional requirements for Assisted Driving Mode Plus have been met.

To activate this function, remove your hands from the steering wheel. Remain ready to steer and brake at all times.

ASSIST PLUS The indicator light in the instrument cluster is shown in green.

Two green LED lights are illuminated on the steering wheel.

The system begins to assist the driver with vehicle control.

When the system is switched on, the following functions are enabled:

- ▷ Forward Collision Mitigation.
- ▷ Side Collision Protection.
- ▷ For the version up to 85 mph/135 km/h: Some speed control systems, e.g., adjusting speed to course of road.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
ASSIST PLUS	Indicator light green: system is active.
ASSIST PLUS READY	Indicator light is white: system can be used.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, information for the system is displayed in the Assisted View in the central display area of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 151.

Displays on the steering wheel

The two LEDs above the keypads illuminate depending on the situation.

- ▷ Green: the system is active.
- ▷ Yellow: system will be interrupted.

  Grab the steering wheel with your hands.
- ▷ Red: system will be deactivated.

  Grab the steering wheel immediately with your hands.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.

Displays in the Head-up display

Depending on the equipment, the system information can also be displayed in the Head-up display.

Navigation system displays

For the version up to 85 mph/135 km/h, roads on which Assisted Driving Mode Plus supports vehicle control can be displayed on the navigation system.

1. Navigation menu
2. "Suggestions"
3. "Availability"

System limits

Assisted Driving Mode Plus is subject to the system limits of the following systems:

- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.
- ▷ Driver Attention Camera, refer to page 205.

- For version up to 85 mph/135 km/h: Fatigue Alert, refer to page 204.
- Vehicle sensors, refer to page 35.

Speed Limit Assistant

Principle

Speed Limit Assistant supports driving at the speed limit. A suggested speed can be applied.

General information

When the systems in the vehicle, e.g., Speed Limit Info, detect a change of the speed limit, this new speed value can be applied for the following systems:

- Cruise Control.
- Distance Control.
- Assisted Driving Mode.
- Assisted Driving Mode Plus.

The speed value is suggested as the new desired speed to be applied. To apply the speed value, the corresponding system must be activated.

Depending on the equipment, destination system and national-market version, the value can be applied automatically.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
SET	Accept suggested speed manually.
	Set speed, refer to page 215.

Turning Speed Limit Assistant on/off

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Limit Assistant"
7. "Speed limits"
8. Select the desired setting:
   - "Adjust automatically": depending on the equipment, detected speed limits are applied automatically.
   - "Adjust manually": detected speed limits can be applied manually.

- ▷ "Show current limit": current speed limits are displayed without being applied in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ "Off": depending on the national-market version, Speed Limit Info and Speed Limit Assistant will be turned off.

  If necessary, other anticipatory comfort functions will be turned off.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Info, refer to page 213.

Displays in the instrument cluster

A message is displayed in the instrument cluster when the system and a speed control system are activated.

Icon	Function
SPEED LIMIT 30	Detected change of a speed limit with immediate effect.
50 km/h	Depending on the national-market version, it is possible to switch between the units of measurement.
SET	Indicator light illuminates green: the detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button. After it has been applied, a green checkmark is displayed.

Automatic adoption

"Adjust automatically": Distance Control automatically adopts any detected speed limits when driving on roads with barriers separating traffic in opposing directions.

It may not be possible to use this function when driving with a trailer.

SET After an automatic adoption, the button can be pressed to switch back to the last set value of the desired speed.

Manual adoption

A detected speed limit can be applied manually to the active speed control system.

SET When the SET icon is displayed, press the button.

Speed adjustment

Principle

It can be adjusted whether the speed limit is applied exactly or with a tolerance.

General information

A speed adaptation for all speed limits and an additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h can be set up.

The additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h can be activated or deactivated.

Setting the speed adjustment

1. ⊞ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Limit Assistant"
7. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Adjust speed limits": set the tolerance for speed adjustments, which applies to all speed limits.
   - ▷ "2nd adjustment up to": activate or deactivate additional speed adaptation.
   - ▷ "Adjust speed limits": with activated additional speed adjustment, set the tolerance for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h.

System limits

Speed Limit Assistant is based on the Speed Limit Info system.

Consider the system limits of Speed Limit Info.

Cruise Control without Distance Control: for system related reasons, the speed limits cannot be applied automatically.

With trailer hitch: speed values to be adopted are limited to the value set on the control display for trailer operation.

Additional information:

- ▷ System limits of Speed Limit Info, refer to page 214.
- ▷ System limits of the sensors, refer to page 35.
- ▷ Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 329.

Adapting the speed to the route

Principle

The system can be configured so that with active Distance Control, the vehicle adapts the speed automatically to the route.

For instance, the speed will be reduced in the following situations as necessary:

- ▷ Before making turns.
- ▷ Before a roundabout.
- ▷ Before a curve.
- ▷ In front of an exit ramp on highways or highway-like roads.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

The Cruise Control, Distance Control, Assisted Driving Mode, and Speed Limit Assistant alerts also apply.

Additional information:

- ▷ Cruise Control, refer to page 217.
- ▷ Distance Control, refer to page 220.
- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.
- ▷ Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page 238.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Cruise Control and Distance Control are activated.
- ▷ Driving on a highway or highway-like road.
- ▷ With navigation system: guidance is activated.

  The use of navigation software via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto may lead to functional limitations, for instance deviations with navigation instructions.
- ▷ The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is driven.
- ▷ With trailer hitch: You must set on the control display that you are using a trailer or rear carrier, respectively.

  Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 329.

Adapting speed automatically to route

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Route and intersection assistant"
7. "Automatically adjust speed to route"

Adjusting the cornering speed

The cornering speed can be adjusted depending on national-market version.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Route and intersection assistant"
7. "Cornering speed"
8. Select the desired setting.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, information for the system is displayed in the Assisted View in the central display area of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 151.

System limits

Depending on the national-market version or country in which the vehicle is currently being driven, the function may not be available.

The system does not react or reacts to a limited extent to the route ahead in the following situations:

- If the vehicle location cannot be clearly determined by the navigation system.
- On wintry roads.

Additionally, the limits for Cruise Control, Distance Control, Assisted Driving, and Speed Limit Assistant systems apply.

Additional information:

- Cruise Control, refer to page 217.
- Distance Control, refer to page 220.
- Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 226.
- Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page 238.

Parking

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Parking assistance systems

General information

The parking assistance systems include different individual systems. The individual systems help the driver when parking, maneuvering, or reversing by providing various assistance functions, sensors, and camera views.

Additional information:

- Rear View Camera, refer to page 247.
- Semi-automatic camera perspective, refer to page 248.
- Automatic camera perspective, refer to page 248.
- Side view, refer to page 249.
- 3D view, refer to page 249.
- Trailer hitch view, refer to page 250.
- Car wash view, refer to page 250.
- Panorama View, refer to page 251.
- Automatic activation of panorama view, refer to page 251.
- Door opening angle, refer to page 252.
- Remote 3D View, refer to page 253.
- Park Distance Control, refer to page 254.
- Active Park Distance Control, refer to page 257.
- Drive-Off Monitoring, refer to page 258.
- Automatic Parking Assistant, refer to page 259.
- Maneuver Assistant, refer to page 265.
- Remote Control Parking, refer to page 268.
- Back-up Assistant, refer to page 269.
- Trailer Assistant, refer to page 331.

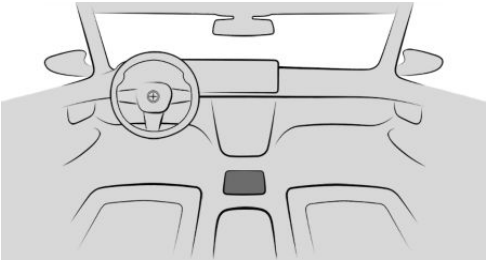
Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Park assistance button

Sensors

The parking assistance systems are controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors, side.
- ▷ Front camera.
- ▷ Top view cameras.
- ▷ Rear View Camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Operating concept

The camera-based individual systems are operated with the function bars on the control display. The camera views can be viewed by selecting the appropriate icon.

In the Parking menu, some parking assistance systems can be configured individually.

Some parking assistance systems can be started by voice control as needed, e.g., driving in/out of a parking space with the Automatic Parking Assistant.

Additional information:

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, refer to page 53.

Calling up Park menu

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking"
6. Select the desired settings.

Display

Principle

With the Park Distance Control display and various camera views, the parking assistance systems help you park, maneuver, and reverse your vehicle.

General information

Depending on the equipment, one or more cameras capture the area from different selectable perspectives.

Depending on the view, the vehicle's surroundings or a part of it is depicted.

Depending on the national-market version, either the automatic or the semi-automatic camera perspective is displayed.

Turning display on/off

General information

The parking assistance systems view switches off automatically when driving forwards or if a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

With reverse gear

When drive-ready state is switched on, the display is automatically switched on if selector lever position R is engaged.

With the Park Assist key

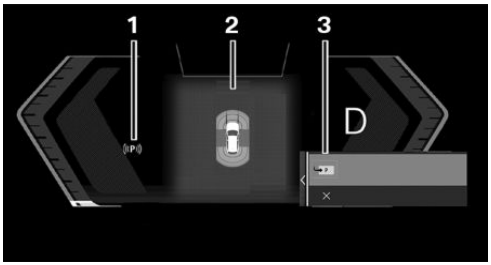
Press the button.

Via iDrive

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Parking"

Display in the instrument cluster

The instrument cluster shows displays of some parking assistance systems such as Park Distance Control or Automatic Parking Assistant.



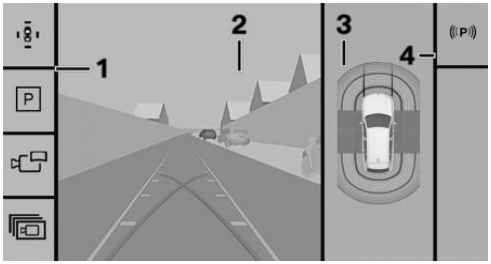
1 Status of parking assistance systems
2 Assisted View
3 Selection menu

Display on the control display

General information

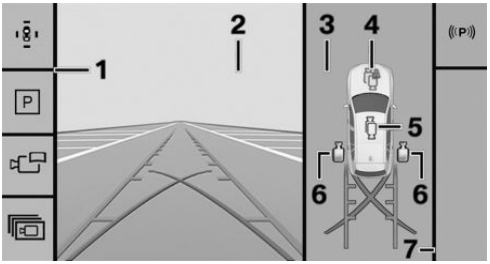
Depending on vehicle equipment and on the activated parking assistance system, the control display will vary.

Assistance view



1 Toolbar, left
2 Camera image
3 Vehicle top view
4 Toolbar, right

Parking view



1 Toolbar, left
2 Camera image
3 Selection window
4 Automatic camera perspective
5 Semi-automatic camera perspective
6 Side view
7 Toolbar, right

Toolbar, left

Different views and settings can be selected via the left toolbar depending on the equipment:

▷ "Parking View"

Depending on vehicle equipment, camera views or the Park Distance Control view are displayed.

▷ "Assist view"

A stylized top view of the vehicle is displayed.

▷ "Panorama view"

The cross traffic view is displayed.

▷ "More"

▷ "3D view"

A three-dimensional view of the vehicle is displayed.

▷ "Trailer coupling view"

The view shows the zoom onto the trailer hitch.

▷ "Car wash view"

Your own lane can be displayed to make it easier to drive into a car wash.

▷ ⚙ "Settings"

Settings can be entered in the Park menu.

Toolbar, right

The Parking Assistant functions are displayed in the right toolbar:

- ▷ Status of the parking assistance systems.
- ▷ Available parking methods of the Automatic Parking Assistant.
- ▷ Functions of the Back-up Assistant.
- ▷ Functions of the Maneuver Assistant.
- ▷ Trailer Assistant functions.
- ▷ Additional information in case of malfunctions.

Status of parking assistance systems

The status of parking assistance systems is indicated by icons on the toolbar on the right of the control display, in the status area on the instrument cluster, and on the Head-up display, depending on vehicle equipment. In addition to this icon, text also appears on the control display.

The following parking assistance systems are displayed:

- ▷ Automatic Parking Assistant.
- ▷ Maneuver Assistant.
- ▷ Back-up Assistant.
- ▷ Trailer Assistant.

Icon	Meaning
	No search for parking assistance system offers. No other parking assistance systems available. Parking assistance systems have failed.
	Search for parking assistance system offers is active.
	White: an available maneuver is selected but is not being performed. Functional requirements have not been met or the functions transfer has been completed. Green: parking assistance system is active. Functions are controlled depending on the system activated.
	Maneuver Assistant records the maneuver to be stored.

Additional displays

General information

Additional displays can be shown in the camera image of the display of the parking assistance systems, e.g., parking aid lines, to make parking and maneuvering easier.

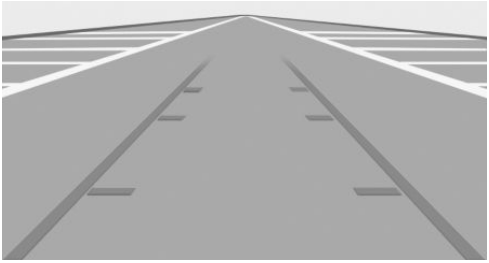
Several additional displays can be active at the same time.

Turning additional displays on/off

1. ⊞ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking"
6. Select the desired setting.

Parking aid lines

Pathway lines

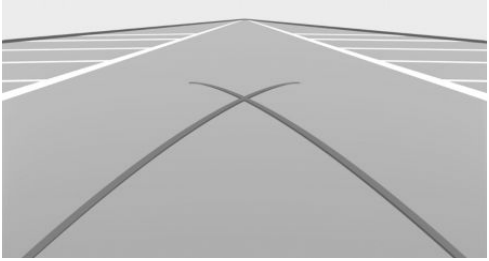


Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Lane lines are displayed in front of or behind the vehicle depending on the gear engaged.

The pathway lines are continuously adjusted to the steering movements depending on the steering-wheel angle.

Turning circle lines



Turning circle lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

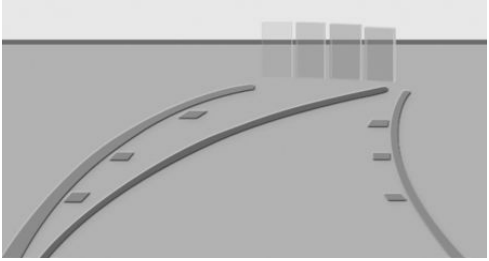
The lines show the course of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road.

Only one turning circle line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Using parking aid lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning circle line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning circle line.

Obstacle marking



Obstacles are detected by the sensors.

The obstacles detected by the Park Distance Control are shown by marks in the camera image.

Colored gradients for the obstacle markings in green, yellow and red indicate the distances.

Functional limitations

The system can be used only to a limited extent in the following situations:

- ▷ With a door open.
- ▷ With open cargo area.
- ▷ With exterior mirrors folded in.

Areas with gray hatching with an icon in the camera image identify areas that are currently not shown such as an open door.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Field of view

Because of the camera angle, the areas under the vehicle cannot be viewed by the cameras.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

Objects shown on the control display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to the objects on the control display.

The camera's detection range can be limited by protruding cargo, a rear carrier, or a trailer.

Malfunction

A camera failure is displayed on the control display.

The malfunctioning camera's detection range is shown by the shaded area on the control display.

Rear View Camera

Principle

The Rear View Camera helps when reverse parking and maneuvering. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the control display.

Additional views can be shown on the display, e.g., parking aid lines and obstacle markings.

General information

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Functional requirements

- ▷ The cargo area is fully closed.
- ▷ The camera area is clean and clear.

Turning the Rear View Camera on/off

Turning the camera view on automatically

When drive-ready state is switched on, the Rear View Camera is automatically switched on if selector lever position R is engaged.

Turning the camera view off automatically

The Rear View Camera turns off automatically when driving forward or when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Turning the camera view on/off manually

1. Press the button.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

   Depending on vehicle equipment: The icon in the selection window is selected automatically.

To exit the Rear View Camera view, select another camera view in the selection window or press the button again.

Deactivated Rear View Camera

When the Rear View Camera is deactivated, for instance when the cargo area is open, the camera image is displayed with gray shading.

Semi-automatic camera perspective

Principle

Depending on the parking direction and engaged selector lever position, a fixed camera perspective is displayed with the areas in front of or behind the vehicle.

General information

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Turning the semi-automatic camera perspective on/off

1. Press the button.
2. Select the icon in the selection window.

   To exit the fixed camera view, select another camera view in the selection window.

Automatic camera perspective

Principle

The automatic camera perspective shows a steering-dependent view in the respective driving direction.

This perspective adapts to the respective driving situation.

General information

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view changes to a fixed display of the area in front of or behind the bumper, or switches to side Park Distance Control as necessary.

When reverse gear is engaged, the automatic camera perspective is, if necessary, exited and the system uses a semi-automatic camera perspective to the rear. If necessary, select the automatic camera perspective when reverse gear is engaged. The automatic camera perspective will then be maintained for the current parking operation.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Turning the automatic camera perspective on/off

Turning the camera view on/off automatically

When the parking assistance systems' display is turned on, automatic camera perspective is selected automatically.

The icon in the selection window is selected automatically.

To exit the steering-dependent camera view, select another camera view in the selection window.

Turning the camera view on/off manually

1. Press the button.
2. The icon in the selection window is selected automatically.

   To exit the steering-dependent camera view, select another camera view in the selection window or press the button again.

Side protection

Principle

The side Park Distance Control is automatically displayed when the automatic camera perspective is turned on. The function shows obstacles located next to the vehicle.

Display

To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- ▷ No markings: no obstacles detected.
- ▷ Color marks: warning against detected obstacles.

System limits

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. For this reason, at standstill, the marks are not shown anymore in the display after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

Side view

Principle

Side view shows the vehicle's side surroundings, making it easier to position the vehicle at the curb or with other obstacles on the side.

The side view looks from rear to front and, in case of danger, focuses automatically on possible obstacles.

General information

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Turning the side view on/off

The selection window lets you choose the side view for the left or right side of the vehicle.

1. Press the button.
2. Select the icon for the desired vehicle side in the selection window.

   To exit the side view, select another camera view in the selection window.

3D view

Principle

With 3D view, a circle is displayed around the vehicle top view in the selection window.

Specified perspectives can be selected on the circle.

General information

The current perspective is marked with a camera icon.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Turning the 3D view on/off

1. Press the button.
2. "More"
3. "3D view"

   To exit the 3D view, select another camera view on the left toolbar.

Trailer hitch view

Principle

To make it easier to attach a trailer, you can zoom in on the view of the trailer hitch.

General information

When zooming in, remember that the view may no longer show certain obstacles.

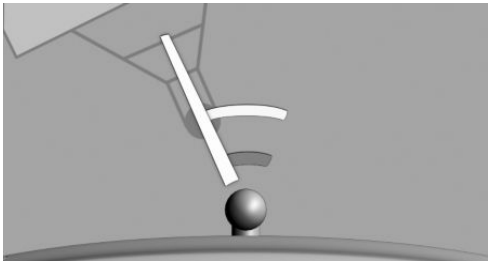
Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Turning the trailer hitch view on/off

1. Press the button.
2. "More"
3. "Trailer coupling view"

   To exit the trailer hitch view, select another camera view in the left toolbar.

Display



Two static circular segments help to estimate the distance of the trailer to the trailer hitch.

A docking line dependent on the steering-wheel angle helps with aiming for the trailer with the trailer hitch.

Car wash view

Principle

The car wash view assists when entering a car wash.

General information

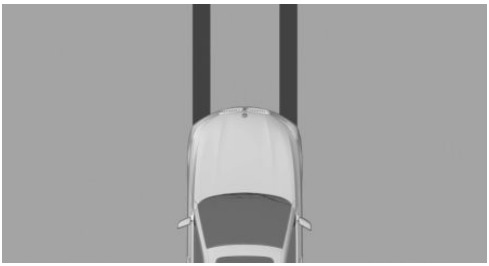
Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Turning the car wash view on/off

1. Press the button.
2. "More"
3. "Car wash view"

   To exit the car wash view, select a different camera view in the left toolbar.

Display



Your own lane is displayed for easier driving into a car wash.

This view can be used to position the vehicle correctly within the washing system guide rails.

In a car wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely forward.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 125.

Panorama View

Principle

The panoramic view gives you an earlier view of crossing traffic at blind driveway exits and intersections.

General information

Road users concealed by obstacles to the left and right of the vehicle can only be detected relatively late from the driver's seat. To provide greater visibility, the front camera and, depending on vehicle equipment, Rear View Camera cover the side of the vehicle.

Depending on vehicle equipment, this function can turn on automatically when activation points are saved.

The camera image shows different levels of distortion in some areas and is thus not suitable for distance estimations.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the function can be used when driving forward or in reverse.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following cameras:

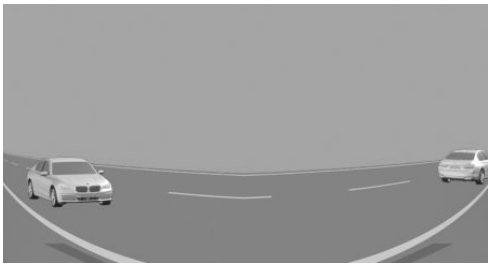
- ▷ Rear View Camera.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment: front camera.

Turning the panoramic view on/off

1. Press the button.
2. "Panorama view"

   To exit panorama view, select another camera view on the left toolbar.

Display



Yellow lines on the screen display identify the bumpers of your own vehicle.

When reverse gear is engaged, the Rear View Camera view is displayed. Depending on vehicle equipment, the front camera view is displayed when forward gear is engaged.

Automatic activation of panorama view

Principle

Positions at which panorama view should switch on automatically can be saved as activation points.

General information

Up to ten activation points can be stored.

The activation points can be used when driving forward and, depending on national-market version, when reversing.

Follow instructions in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Functional requirements

- ▷ A GPS signal must be received.
- ▷ Depending on national-market version: A BMW ID or driver profile must be activated.

- ▷ The Rear View Camera and front camera must be installed.
- ▷ The direction of travel, selector lever position, and vehicle angle must correspond to a stored activation point.

Storing activation points

1. Drive your vehicle to the location where you want the system to turn on, then stop.
2. Press the button.
3. "Panorama view"
4. "Activation point"

   The current position is displayed.
5. "Save activation point"

Activation points are saved with the following information, for example:

- ▷ With the city/town.
- ▷ With the city/town and the street.
- ▷ With the GPS coordinates.

You can rename the location and street information created automatically.

Using activation points

The use of activation points can be switched on and off.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking"
6. "GPS-based"

Editing activation points

You can rename or delete specific activation points or all of them.

1. Press the button.
2. "Panorama view"
3. "Manage points"

   A list of all saved activation points is displayed.
4. Select the desired setting.

Door opening angle

Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment, the door opening angle display is shown automatically when stationary.

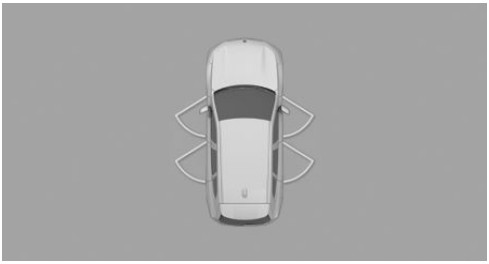
This display helps estimate how far the doors can be opened when parking.

If obstacle marking is activated, the parking view indicates fixed obstacles that obstruct the opening angles of the doors.

General information

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Display



The maximum opening angle of the doors is displayed in selector lever position P.

System limits

The system does not provide a warning of approaching road users.

The vehicle's surroundings are distorted in the display for technical reasons.

Even if the door opening angle indicator on the control display does not overlap with any other objects, it is necessary to park carefully next to other objects.

Because of the perspective, higher, protruding objects may be closer than they appear on the control display.

Remote 3D View

Principle

The My BMW App and camera views in parking view such as automatic camera perspective enable you to display the vehicle's surroundings on a mobile device.

The function displays a snapshot of the situation.

General information

For reasons of data protection, the function can only be used three times within two hours.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following cameras:

- ▷ Front camera.
- ▷ Top view cameras.
- ▷ Rear View Camera.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Data transfer must be activated.

  Data protection, refer to page 64.
- ▷ The My BMW App must be installed on the mobile end device.
- ▷ ConnectedDrive countries: a BMW ID with an existing ConnectedDrive account must be activated.

  BMW ID/driver profiles, refer to page 65.

Activating/deactivating Remote 3D View

The function can be activated or deactivated individually or together with other functions.

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

   After activation, Remote 3D View can be accessed using the My BMW App.

System limits

The system may not be fully operational or may not be available in the following situations:

- ▷ With a door or the cargo area open. Dark fields in the display indicate areas that are not recorded by the system.
- ▷ With manually folded-in exterior mirrors.
- ▷ When other camera functions are being performed in the vehicle.
- ▷ The vehicle moves faster than walking speed.
- ▷ In case of missing or weak Internet connection.

Park Distance Control

Principle

Park Distance Control assists with parking. Acoustic and visual warnings signal obstacles in front of or behind the vehicle.

Obstacles that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors can also be reported.

General information

The range of the system, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning sounds in case of an impending collision at a distance to the object of approx. 27 in/70 cm.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is issued as early as a distance to the object of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to high speeds when the Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage.

Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off quickly while Park Distance Control is not yet active.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Turning Park Distance Control on/off

Turning on the system automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ When drive-ready state is switched on when selector lever position R is engaged.
- ▷ While approaching detected obstacles if the speed is lower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h. The activation distance depends on the situation in question.

The automatic activation of detected obstacles can be activated or deactivated.

1. ⊞ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking"
6. "Automatic PDC activation"

Turning off the system automatically

When driving forward, the system turns off automatically as needed when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Turning the system on/off manually

Press the button.

- ▷ On: the LED illuminates.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

If the system is manually switched on when the reverse gear is engaged, the Rear View Camera image is displayed.

Depending on the national-market version, the system cannot be turned off manually when the reverse gear is engaged.

Acoustic warning

General information

An intermittent tone indicates when the vehicle is approaching an object. E.g., when an object is detected at the rear left of the vehicle, a sound is heard from the rear left speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals of the intermittent tones.

When the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 in/20 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

When there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, at a distance smaller than approx. 8 in/20 cm, an alternating continuous tone will sound between the front and rear speakers.

The intermittent tones and the continuous tone are turned off when selector lever position P is engaged.

Depending on national-market version, the intermittent tones are switched off after a short time when the vehicle is stationary.

If an object approaches when the vehicle is stationary, the acoustic signal is reactivated.

Adjusting the volume

The volume of the acoustic warning can be adjusted.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking"
6. "PDC signal volume"
7. Set the desired value.

Depending on national-market version: Turn off acoustic warning

Depending on national-market version, the acoustic warning can be turned off while performing a parking maneuver.

Press the icon in the status field at the top of the control display.

When the Park Distance Control is switched on again, the acoustic warning is automatically switched on again.

Visual warning

General information

The approach to an object is displayed on the control display and in the instrument cluster as soon as the system is activated.

Objects that are farther away are already displayed before a signal sounds.

Depending on the view, pathway lines, turning circle lines and obstacle markings are shown for a better estimation of the space required.

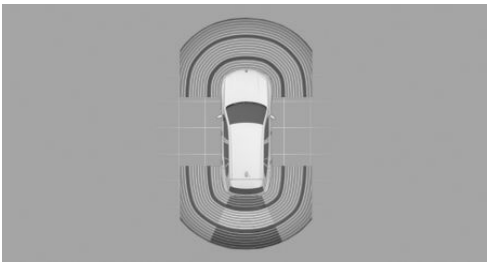
Depending on vehicle equipment, the sensor detection range is shown by the shaded, ring-shaped area. Green, yellow, and red markings indicate when obstacles are detected within the detection range.

If vehicle is equipped with Cross Traffic Warning: A warning is also shown on the display for vehicles approaching from the side at the rear and front.

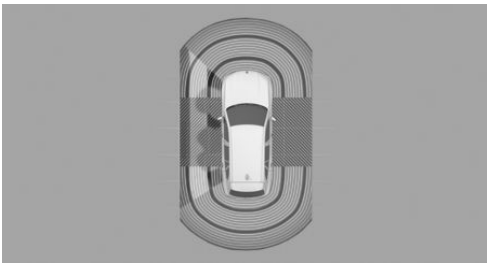
To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

Display

Depending on vehicle equipment, warnings may be displayed in front of, next to, and behind the vehicle.



Example display of warnings behind the vehicle.



Example display of warnings next to the vehicle.

- ▷ Gray shaded area: Sensor detection range. No obstacles were detected within detection range.
- ▷ Colored marks in shaded area: Obstacles have been detected within the detection range.
- ▷ Shaded area interrupted: the area next to the vehicle has not yet been detected.

System limits

General information

The function for protecting the vehicle sides only shows stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors when passing by.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. When the vehicle is stationary, the gray shaded areas on the sides are hidden after a certain time. The area on the side of the vehicle must be newly captured.

Also follow the information on system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Trailer towing

The rear functions of Park Distance Control are switched off with a trailer attached or when the trailer socket is occupied.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the sensor detection range is shown by the shaded area on the control display.

Obstacles next to the vehicle are not displayed.

Depending on the national-market version, the rear functions of Park Distance Control remain switched on when trailer towing is enabled.

An icon is displayed on the control display.

Additional information:

Towing a trailer, refer to page 329.

Unwarranted warnings

Reaching the system limits can cause unwarranted warnings.

To prevent unwarranted warnings, for instance in car washes, turn off automatic Park Distance Control activation on obstacle detection.

Malfunction

An icon is displayed on the control display.

Depending on vehicle equipment: the sensor detection range may not be shown on the control display.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Park Distance Control may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized

service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Active Park Distance Control

Principle

The Park Distance Control brake function initiates emergency braking if there is an acute risk of collision.

General information

Due to system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available below walking speed when driving in reverse or rolling backward.

Pressing the accelerator pedal interrupts the brake intervention. Emergency braking is not performed.

After emergency braking to a stop, further creeping toward an obstacle is possible. Proceed with caution. To move forward, lightly press the accelerator pedal and release as needed.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed longer, the vehicle drives off. Manual braking is possible at any time.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

When using the trailer hitch, the assistance system cannot react correctly because the sensors are concealed. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the driver assistance system while towing a trailer or when using the trailer hitch, e.g., for a rear bicycle rack.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors in the rear bumpers.
- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors, side.
- ▷ Rear View Camera.

Deactivating Active Park Distance Control temporarily

After emergency braking, the function can be temporarily deactivated on the control display. A corresponding message is displayed.

1. "Configure"
2. "Deactivate temporarily"

   During continued driving in this surrounding situation, no further emergency braking will occur.

The function is automatically reactivated when Park Distance Control is switched on again.

Settings

It is possible to set which areas on the vehicle will be protected by the system.

1. ⊞ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"

5. "Parking"
6. "Active PDC emergency braking"
7. Select the desired setting.

Display

As soon as the system engages, an icon is displayed with a corresponding message.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Functional limitations

The system cannot be used in the following situations, for example:

- While Hill Descent Control is regulating the vehicle speed, emergency braking is deactivated.

  Hill Descent Control, refer to page 210.
- When driving with a trailer.

If applicable, turn off the system temporarily, if needed.

Drive-Off Monitoring

Principle

In case of a risk of collision, the Drive-Off Monitoring reduces the drive power when driving off.

General information

When obstacles are detected in close range in front of the vehicle, the acceleration will be reduced. If necessary, this permits timely manual braking.

When obstacles are detected behind the vehicle, the system will brake.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

When using the trailer hitch, the assistance system cannot react correctly because the sensors are concealed. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the driver assistance system while towing a trailer or when using the trailer hitch, e.g., for a rear bicycle rack.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Functional requirements

- Selector lever position D or R is engaged when the vehicle is stationary.
- Obstacles in the immediate vicinity are detected in front of or behind the vehicle.

- The accelerator pedal is heavily applied, nearly to the end point.
- The accelerator pedal is immediately applied after engaging the selector lever position and obstacle detection.

Turning Drive-Off Monitoring on/off

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking"
6. "Drive-Off Monitoring"
7. "Drive-Off Monitoring"

A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically turned on again at the next drive.

Canceling reduced drive power

The reduction of the drive power is canceled in the following situations:

- The accelerator pedal is released.
- After the accelerator pedal has been depressed completely twice.
- A specific distance has been traveled.

If the reduction in drive power is canceled by covering a certain distance, the drive power is released gradually.

Display

As soon as the system engages, an icon is displayed with a corresponding message.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Trailer towing

The system is deactivated if the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, e.g., when using a trailer or rear bicycle rack.

Automatic Parking Assistant

Principle

Automatic Parking Assistant provides support when parallel parking and parking transverse to the road.

In addition, the system makes it easier to park out of parallel and perpendicular parking spaces.

The ultrasonic sensors measure both sides of the vehicle when driving slowly forward. Suitable parking spaces are calculated based on the objects detected, e.g., parking vehicles. The system status is displayed.

The system calculates the best possible parking line for driving in or out of parking spaces, and takes control of the vehicle while parking.

The operating principle and operation of the system is divided into the following steps:

- Parking space search.
- Turning on.
- Parking.
- Driving out of parking spaces.

The parking manoeuver while parking is performed automatically.

When driving out of parallel parking spaces, the vehicle maneuvers automatically until it reaches a position where it can be driven out of the parking space without further steering movements.

When driving out of perpendicular parking spaces, the vehicle is maneuvered out of the parking space to enable continued driving in the desired direction.

The Automatic Parking Assistant Professional increases the comfort and range of uses of the Automatic Parking Assistant. In addition to the parking methods of the Automatic Parking Assistant, parking in parking spaces that are marked with lines is possible.

With Park Assist Professional, the parking maneuver can also be performed using Remote Control Parking on a smartphone.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

General information

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

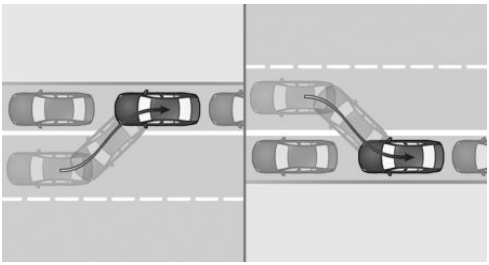
When using the trailer hitch, the assistance system cannot react correctly because the sensors are concealed. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the driver assistance system while towing a trailer or when using the trailer hitch, e.g., for a rear bicycle rack.

Warning

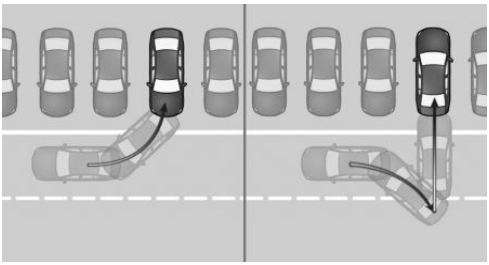
The system can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Parking methods

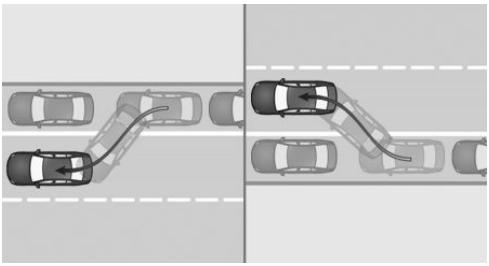
Park Assist supports the following functions:



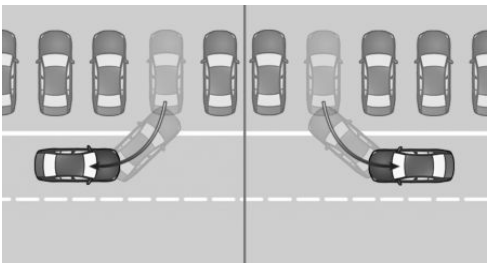
Parallel parking: reverse parking parallel to the road.



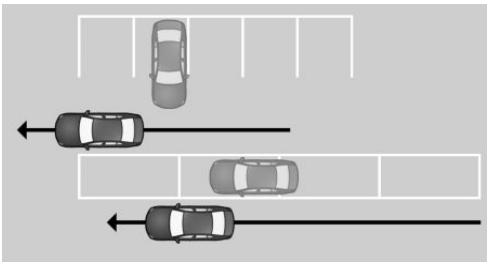
Perpendicular parking: reverse or forward parking perpendicular to the road.



Driving out of parallel parking spaces.



Driving out of perpendicular parking spaces.



Park Assist Professional: Parking in parking spaces with parking lines.

Sensors

The Automatic Parking Assistant is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors, side.

The Automatic Parking Assistant Professional is additionally controlled by the following cameras:

- ▷ Front camera.
- ▷ Top view cameras.
- ▷ Rear View Camera.

Functional requirements

Measurement of parking spaces

- ▷ Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- ▷ Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

Longitudinal parking:

- ▷ Minimum length of a detected object, e.g., a parking vehicle: approx. 3 ft/1 m.
- ▷ Minimum length of gap between two objects: own vehicle length plus approx. 2.6 ft/0.8 m.
- ▷ Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

Perpendicular parking:

- ▷ Minimum length of a detected object, e.g., a parking vehicle: approx. 3 ft/1 m.
- ▷ Minimum width of the gap: own vehicle width plus approx. 2.3 ft/0.7 m.
- ▷ Minimum depth: own vehicle length.

  The depth of perpendicular parking spaces must be estimated by the driver. Due to technical limitations, the system is only able to approximate the depth of perpendicular parking spaces.

Parking lines for Park Assist Professional:

- The parking space must be clearly marked with lines.
- The one-time calibration of the camera after vehicle delivery must be complete. Drive a few kilometers in daylight to do so.

Parking operation

- Doors and cargo area are closed.
- Driver's seat belt is fastened.

Leaving parking spaces

- The vehicle was parked using the Automatic Parking Assistant, and an object has been detected in the area around the vehicle.
- The vehicle was manually parked in reverse, and objects have been detected in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle. The distance to a detected curb is at least 6 inches/15 cm.
- The parking space is at least 2.6 ft/0.8 m longer than the vehicle.

Displays

General information

The current status of parking assistance systems is shown on the right-hand toolbar, on the instrument cluster, and on the Head-up display, depending on vehicle equipment.

Different icons are shown on the control display for selecting the parking method.

The sequence of the displayed icons corresponds to the prioritized parking option.

The direction of the arrow changes for the icons for parking methods for driving out of a parking space.

Icon	Meaning
	Reverse lengthwise parking, right.
	Reverse lengthwise parking, left.
	Reverse perpendicular parking.
	Forward perpendicular parking.

Turning parking operation display on/off

When the Automatic Parking Assistant is active, the parking operation is displayed in the camera image on the control display.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking"
6. "Show assistance info"

Turning the signal tone on/off

The signal tone for suitable parking spaces can be turned on and off.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking"
6. "Sound when available"

Parking using the Automatic Parking Assistant

1. For the parking space search when driving past parked vehicles at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and a distance of max. 5 ft/1.5 m.

   The parking space search is activated and displayed on the instrument cluster.

2. Press the button or engage reverse gear.

The parking assistance systems view is displayed.

The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the control display and in the instrument cluster.

3. On the control display: Select one of the parking maneuvers offered. You can switch to another parking maneuver as necessary.

   In the instrument cluster: select suggested parking method with the thumbwheel on the steering wheel.

   Green: the system takes control of the parking operation.

4. Follow the instructions on the control display or in the instrument cluster.

   The speed can be reduced with the brake. Other interventions will cancel the system.

   Depending on national-market version, an intermittent or continuous tone sounds for Park Distance Control.

   At the end of the parking operation, selector lever position P is set.

   The end of the parking operation is indicated on the control display and in the instrument cluster.

5. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

Driving out of a parking space using the Automatic Parking Assistant

1. Turn on drive-ready state.

2. With the vehicle at a standstill, press button or engage reverse gear.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.

3. On the control display: select the desired parking method.

   In the instrument cluster: select suggested parking method with the thumbwheel on the steering wheel.

4. Follow the instructions on the control display or in the instrument cluster.

   Green: the system takes control of maneuvering.

   The speed can be reduced with the brake. Other interventions will cancel the system.

   A message will be displayed at the end of the maneuver.

5. Make sure that the traffic situation permits driving out of parking space and driving off as usual.

   The Automatic Parking Assistant is turned off automatically.

Canceling Automatic Parking Assistant manually

The Automatic Parking Assistant can be canceled manually at any time, e.g.:

- ▷ Step lightly on the accelerator pedal twice in succession.
- ▷ Step lightly on the accelerator pedal and move the steering wheel slightly at the same time.
- ▷ Depress the brake pedal and operate the selector lever at the same time.

The Automatic Parking Assistant is canceled without engaging selector lever position P. Driving can continue immediately.

Canceling Automatic Parking Assistant automatically

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

- ▷ When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- ▷ When operating the accelerator pedal or the selector lever.
- ▷ When setting the parking brake.

- When unfastening the driver's seat belt.
- With open cargo area.
- With open hood.
- With the doors open.
- During activation or intervention by driver assistance systems.
- When changing over to another function on the control display.
- When the view on the control display is overlaid with messages.
- On snow-covered or slippery road.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- When there are obstacles that are hard to overcome such as curbs.
- When there are obstacles that suddenly appear.
- With insufficient distances, which are indicated by Park Distance Control.
- When a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.

When the system is automatically aborted, selector lever position P is engaged.

A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

Continuing the parking operation

If parking or leaving a parking space has been interrupted, the operation can be continued, if needed.

Turn the Automatic Parking Assistant on again and follow the instructions on the control display or in the instrument cluster.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

No parking assistance

The Automatic Parking Assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- For diagonal parking spaces.
- When towing a trailer.
- Automatic Parking Assistant: for parking spaces that are only marked with lines on the ground. The system orients itself according to objects.
- For special parking spaces, e.g., metered parking spaces with automatic locking mechanisms, or mechanical parking systems.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- On slippery ground.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.
- With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.
- Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The Automatic Parking Assistant may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Maneuver Assistant

Principle

The Maneuver Assistant provides support for recurring parking and maneuvering situations.

Parking and maneuvering operations can be recorded and then carried out automatically by the system.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

General information

A recurring maneuver is driven manually and thereby recorded.

When the vehicle reaches the activation area for the distance covered by the stored maneuver, the maneuver can be activated on the control display or in the instrument cluster.

After the activation, the system takes control of the vehicle and carries out the maneuver automatically.

In addition, the parking maneuver can be performed using Remote Control Parking on a smartphone.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

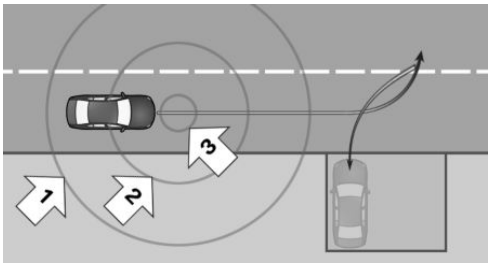
Warning

When using the trailer hitch, the assistance system cannot react correctly because the sensors are concealed. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the driver assistance system while towing a trailer or when using the trailer hitch, e.g., for a rear bicycle rack.

Warning

The system can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Detection range



The detection range for a maneuver is divided into the following areas:

- Proximity range, arrow 1: the system will begin with the localization in the background within a range of approx. 26 ft/8 m around the distance covered of a stored maneuver.
- Close range, arrow 2: in a range of approx. 6 ft/2 m around the distance covered, a stored maneuver can be displayed on the control display.
- Activation range, arrow 3: the stored maneuver on the control display can be activated within a range of approx. 3.5 ft/1 m. After the activation, the system takes control of the vehicle and carries out the maneuver automatically.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors and cameras:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.
- Front camera.
- Top view cameras.
- Rear View Camera.

Functional requirement

To use the Maneuver Assistant, the one-off calibration process of the camera after vehicle delivery must be complete. Drive a few kilometers in daylight to do so.

Recording maneuver

General information

Up to ten maneuvers can be recorded at different locations.

Up to four overlapping maneuvers can be recorded.

Identical maneuvers under different ambient conditions can be recorded such as light conditions.

For each maneuver, a maximum distance covered of 656 ft/200 m is possible.

In total, a distance covered of approx. 1,969 ft/600 m distributed to the ten possible maneuvers can be recorded.

Maneuvers with a distance covered of less than 20 ft/6 m cannot be recorded.

Recording maneuver

1. Drive the vehicle to the starting point from which a maneuver must be recorded and stop.
2. Press the button.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.
3. "Record new path"
4. Drive the vehicle to the desired end position.

   The maneuver is recorded.

   When recording a route, do not drive faster than 9 mph/15 km/h.

   While recording, the distance covered will be displayed.

   When the maximum distance covered or the maximum speed is reached, a message will be displayed and a signal tone will sound.

5. Vehicle stationary: "Save recording".
6. To assign a name to the recorded maneuver, tap the name.
7. Enter a name and confirm.
8. Save your selection.

   Do not move the vehicle until the recording has been stored.

Performing stored maneuver

1. Drive the vehicle into the activation range and stop. The control display and instrument cluster indicate that a stored maneuver can be activated.
2. : activate stored maneuver.

   Green: after activation, the system takes control of the vehicle and performs the maneuver automatically. If applicable, follow the instructions on the control display or in the instrument cluster.

   The speed can be reduced with the brake. Other interventions will cancel the system.

   At the end of the parking operation, selector lever position P is set.

Canceling the Maneuver Assistant manually

The vehicle can be controlled manually during an active maneuver by taking the following actions:

- ▷ Step lightly on the accelerator pedal twice in succession.
- ▷ Step lightly on the accelerator pedal and move the steering wheel slightly at the same time.
- ▷ Depress the brake pedal and operate the selector lever at the same time.

The Maneuver Assistant is canceled without engaging selector lever position P. Driving can continue immediately.

Canceling the Maneuver Assistant automatically

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

- ▷ When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- ▷ When operating the accelerator pedal or the selector lever.
- ▷ When the driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- ▷ With open cargo area.
- ▷ With open hood.
- ▷ With the doors open.
- ▷ During activation or intervention by driver assistance systems.
- ▷ When the system limits of the ultrasonic sensors and cameras are reached.
- ▷ When changing over to another function on the control display.
- ▷ When the view on the control display is overlaid with messages.
- ▷ In case of obstacles.
- ▷ On snow-covered or slippery road.
- ▷ When the lane is too narrow.
- ▷ On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- ▷ With trailer towing.

In the event of an automatic cancellation of the system, the vehicle is decelerated to a complete stop and selector lever position P is engaged.

An interrupted maneuver can be continued, if needed. Turn the Maneuver Assistant on again and follow the instructions on the control display or in the instrument cluster.

Editing stored maneuvers

Individual or all maneuvers can be deleted or renamed.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"

3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking"
6. "Recorded paths"
7. Select the maneuver to be edited.
8. Select the desired action.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Functional limitations

The system does not provide support when towing a trailer.

System limits can cause functional limitations such as in the following situations:

- With poor GPS reception.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- In case of recorded maneuvers where the system minimum distance to objects cannot be maintained.
- Greatly deviating conditions when storing and driving the distance covered, for instance other tires or changed ambient conditions like light conditions or weather.
- Delayed display of overlapping stored maneuvers when driving into the activation area.
- In multi-story parking garages, for recordings at different parking levels, or for recordings that run over several parking levels.

If the calibration process for the camera is not completed after vehicle delivery, an icon appears on the display of the parking assistance systems when reverse gear is engaged.

Tap the icon and follow the instructions on the control display.

Remote Control Parking

Principle

With Remote Control Parking, the vehicle can be driven remotely when parking and maneuvering using the Maneuver Assistant and Park Assist Professional.

The maneuver is performed independently, without you having to be inside the vehicle, using a smartphone and the My BMW App. This makes it easy to get in and out of the vehicle.

When parking in a suitable spot, e.g., a garage, the vehicle's parking position can be corrected by maneuvering manually with the My BMW App.

A maneuver that has already been started can be continued at any time with Remote Control Parking.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

General information

Note the information in the Automatic Parking Assistant and Maneuver Assistant chapter.

Protect the smartphone against unauthorized use.

The low-beam headlights are switched on for the duration of the maneuver.

A parking maneuver offered by Park Assist Professional is only available for Remote Control Parking for a short time after exiting the vehicle.

Functional requirements

- All occupants have left the vehicle.
- Doors and cargo area are closed.
- Make sure that no one is located within range of the maneuver.
- Make sure that no one is located in the narrow spaces between the vehicle and stationary objects, e.g., between the vehicle and a garage wall.
- To manually correct the vehicle position on the My BMW App, the minimum width of the parking space must be the vehicle width plus 1.9 ft/0.6 m.
- The smartphone is compatible with Remote Control Parking.
- The My BMW App must be installed on a compatible smartphone.
- The My BMW App must be linked to a ConnectedDrive account.
- Bluetooth must be enabled on the smartphone.
- The distance between vehicle and smartphone is no greater than approx. 19 ft/6 m.
- A valid digital key must be set up for the vehicle, then recognized without issue.

  Additional information:

  BMW Digital Key, refer to page 74.

Parking with Remote Control Parking

1. Engage selector lever position P.
2. Leave the vehicle and close the doors and cargo area.
3. Open Remote Control Parking in the My BMW app and maneuver forward or backward, or select the desired parking method.
4. Follow the instructions on the smartphone.

   Stop the vehicle manually if obstacles are present.

   Depending on the option selected in the My BMW app, the vehicle is either parked at the end of the parking maneuver or you can take control of the vehicle again.

System limits

Due to ambient conditions, e.g., impaired Bluetooth connection transmission due to external faults, Remote Control Parking may be interrupted.

If the power supply of the vehicle battery is not sufficiently ensured, e.g., due to excessive discharge, Remote Control Parking may not be available. Follow the instructions in the My BMW App.

It may not be easy to maneuver into a parking space. This function is offered on the My BMW app but cannot be used due to ambient conditions.

Back-up assistant

Principle

The Back-up Assistant helps when reversing, e.g., when pulling out of tight or unclear parking or road situations.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the func-

tion can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

General information

The vehicle stores the driving movements of the last distance covered. This stored distance can be driven in reverse with automated steering.

The system takes over the steering. The driver must control the speed using the accelerator and brake pedals.

Back-up Assistant: a maximum of 164 ft/50 m are stored.

Reversing Assistant Professional: a maximum of 656 ft/200 m are stored.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

When using the trailer hitch, the assistance system cannot react correctly because the sensors are concealed. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the driver assistance system while towing a trailer or when using the trailer hitch, e.g., for a rear bicycle rack.

Warning

The system can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirements

- Drive forward without interruption to store the distance covered.
- To store the distance covered, do not drive faster than 22 mph/35 km/h.
- No trailer towing.
- Reversing Assistant Professional: sufficiently bright light conditions on the saved route.
- Reversing Assistant Professional: the cameras on the vehicle must be clean and clear.
- Reversing Assistant Professional: the one-off calibration of the camera after vehicle delivery must be complete. Drive a few kilometers in daylight to do so.

Driving in reverse with automated steering

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. With the vehicle at a standstill, press button or engage reverse gear.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.
3. "Start back-up Assistant"

   The length of the distance covered is displayed on the control display and in the instrument cluster.

If applicable, follow the instructions on the control display or in the instrument cluster.

4. Take your hands off the steering wheel and carefully drive in reverse with the accelerator pedal and the brake.

   Green: the system takes control of steering.

   When driving in reverse, observe the vehicle's surroundings.

   In case of obstacles, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle. Follow the instructions for Park Distance Control.

5. Right before the end of the stored distance covered, a signal tone will sound and a message is displayed.

   Stop no later than when normal road traffic is reached and take control of the vehicle such as by shifting to forward gear.

Canceling the Back-up Assistant manually

The assisted reversing by the Back-up Assistant can be canceled manually:

▷ "Cancel": select the icon on the control display.

▷ Press the button.

Canceling the Back-up Assistant automatically

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

▷ When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.

▷ When shifting from reverse gear to another selector lever position.

▷ During activation or intervention by driver assistance systems.

▷ When exiting the stored lane when reversing, for instance with maximum steering-wheel angle.

▷ When the view on the control display is overlaid with messages.

▷ In case of a slippery surface.

▷ When the vehicle is rolling such as on a slope.

▷ In case of changed ambient conditions.

▷ When the trailer power socket is occupied or when trailer towing is activated.

▷ If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph/10 km/h.

▷ Reversing Assistant Professional: if sensor functionality is limited beyond approx. 164 ft/50 m.

System limits

▷ The maximum speed when reversing is limited to approx. 6 mph/10 km/h.

  A warning is issued at a speed of approx. 4 mph/7 km/h.

  If the maximum speed is exceeded, the function is interrupted.

Different influences can lead to side deviations when driving the stored distance covered in reverse. For example, this includes the following factors:

▷ Steering movements when the vehicle is stationary while storing the distance covered.

▷ The speed is not adapted to the distance covered.

▷ Certain road characteristics such as gradients, inclines or slippery road surface.

▷ Greatly deviating conditions when storing and driving the route, for instance other tires or changed ambient conditions like weather.

▷ Reversing Assistant Professional: for changed light conditions.

Also follow the information on system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Driving comfort

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Adaptive M chassis

Principle

The Adaptive M chassis is an intelligent, controllable sport chassis.

The chassis reduces body movements with a sporty driving style or on an uneven road.

General information

The intelligent control of the chassis increases the driving dynamics and driving comfort depending on the road condition and driving style.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the regulated rear axle differential lock is adjusted to the respective traction conditions as necessary.

Setting

The system offers different shock absorber settings ranging from comfortable travel to sporty driving.

The shock absorbers are adjusted depending on the selected driving mode as well as the road condition and driving style.

Additional information:

Driving Experience Control, refer to page 129.

Adaptive M Suspension Professional

The Adaptive M Professional suspension is actively controlled and includes the following systems:

- ▷ Adaptive M chassis, refer to page 272.
- ▷ Active Roll Stabilization, refer to page 272.
- ▷ Integral Active Steering, refer to page 212.

Active roll stabilization

Active roll stabilization provides increased driving comfort while improving vehicle agility and stability. Among other things, the system enables a more dynamic response to steering movements and reduces the body's tendency to roll when cornering quickly or making quick evasive maneuvers. This means that, e.g., the lateral head movements of the occupants are reduced.

Adaptive suspension

Principle

The adaptive suspension reduces the movement of the vehicle body when driving with a sporty style or on uneven roads.

General information

Depending on the road condition, driving style and selected drive mode, the electronically controlled shock absorbers enable both increased driving dynamics and improved driving comfort.

- In SPORT driving mode: Increased driving dynamics to support a sporty driving style.
- In all other drive modes: support for a comfort-oriented driving style.

Two-axle ride level control

Principle

The two-axle self-leveling suspension uses air springs to ensure the best possible driving comfort. Regardless of the load, the vehicle will be maintained at the configured vehicle level.

General information

The shock absorbers can be set from comfortable to sporty via the Driving Experience Control drive modes.

Depending on the driving situation, the vehicle level can be set to different levels:

- Entry height:

  Lowest vehicle level setting.

  When the vehicle is stationary, the following options are available for setting the entry height:

  - With the rocker button on the center console.
  - With the button in lower trunk lid.
  - With the My BMW app.

  The vehicle will be raised according to the selected drive mode when driving off.
- Sport level:

  Lowest vehicle level, for driving at higher speeds.
- Normal level:

  Standard level for normal roads and speeds.
- High level 1:

  Raised vehicle level for easy terrain at reduced speed.

  If necessary, the vehicle will be lowered at higher speeds.
- High level 2:

  Highest vehicle level, for terrains with major uneven surfaces in the lowest speed range.

  If necessary, the vehicle will be lowered at higher speeds.

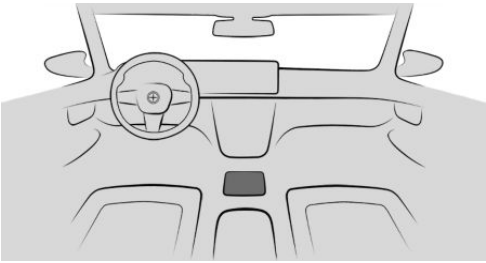
Safety information

Warning

Adjusting the vehicle height may result in trapped body parts or damaged vehicle parts. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. When adjusting the vehicle height, make sure that the areas of movement around the vehicle and at the wheel housing are free.

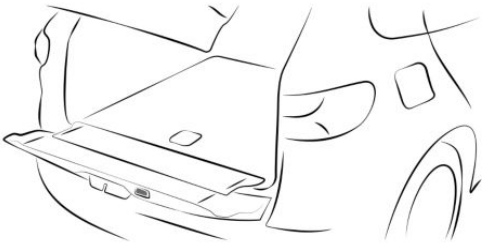
Overview

Rocker button in vehicle



Rocker button for level control.

Button on lower tailgate



Button for self-leveling suspension.

Functional requirement

All doors are closed.

Opening a door while raising or lowering the vehicle interrupts the process. The process continues after closing the door.

Activating/deactivating self-leveling suspension

The system can be deactivated, e.g., to change a wheel or for towing.

Push the rocker button forward or pull it backward, then hold for approx. 7 seconds.

When the rocker button is released, the LED indicates the system status.

- ▷ LED illuminates: the self-leveling suspension is activated.
- ▷ LED goes out: the self-leveling suspension is deactivated.

The self-leveling suspension is automatically activated after driving off at speeds above approx. 6 mph/10 km/h.

Setting the vehicle level manually

Press rocker button forward:

The vehicle is raised to the next highest vehicle level.

Press rocker button backward:

The vehicle will lower by one level.

LED display on rocker button

- ▷ LED illuminates: Current vehicle level displayed.
- ▷ LED flashes: adjustment procedure running. The vehicle raises or lowers itself.
- ▷ LED flashes rapidly: The selected vehicle level is not possible at this time.
- ▷ LED off: System is deactivated.
- ▷ All LEDs on rocker button flashing: System is initializing. The selected vehicle level will be adjusted as required after initialization.

Setting the vehicle level automatically

While driving

The vehicle will lower automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ When switching to SPORT drive mode.
- ▷ At higher speeds.

When a set vehicle level is exited due to the speed, the vehicle level will be adjusted according to the selected driving mode.

In the event of a flat tire

When a loss of tire inflation pressure is detected in a wheel, the pressure on this wheel is reduced automatically to increase the possible distance traveled. In this situation, only the normal level is available.

Adjusting vehicle level using button on lower tailgate

Principle

When the tailgate is open, the button on the tailgate can be used to lower the vehicle to entry height and raise it again for easier loading and unloading.

Setting the vehicle level

Press the button on the lower tailgate. The vehicle is lowered to entry height. Press the button again to raise the vehicle.

The flashing of the LED in the button indicates the level change.

During the raising procedure, the vehicle raises itself from the entry height to the level that was selected last or the normal level.

Canceling the adjustment procedure

Press the button again. The vehicle raises or lowers itself back to the starting level.

Lowering the vehicle level via the My BMW app

Principle

Using the My BMW App and a compatible Apple iPhone, the vehicle level can be set when stationary, e.g., to make loading or entry easier.

Setting the vehicle level

For safety reasons, lowering is only possible from the normal level or the Sport level.

1. Apply the parking brake and turn off drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.
2. Closing the doors.
3. In the My BMW app, switch to the entry height menu and follow the instructions.

Additional information:

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.

Canceling the adjustment procedure

If an adjustment procedure was started with the My BMW app, it can be canceled with the app.

Long stationary periods

During long stationary periods, the vehicle may lower itself. This is not a malfunction.

When the drive-ready state is switched on with the doors closed, the vehicle is raised to the normal level automatically.

Depending on the condition of the vehicle, raising to normal level may take several minutes.

System limits

- ▷ It may not possible to change the vehicle level during sporty driving.
- ▷ It may not be possible to change the vehicle level with articulated axles.
- ▷ It may only be possible to raise the vehicle level in the drive-ready state.
- ▷ If the vehicle battery charge is too low, the vehicle level cannot be changed.
- ▷ If the vehicle level is frequently changed in quick succession, the system switches off to prevent overheating and will be temporarily unavailable or operate at a delay. Let the system cool down, if needed.

- ▷ If the payload is increased, the highest driving level may be disabled or automatically exited in order to protect the system.
- ▷ When the trailer power socket is occupied, only the normal level is available.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

In case of a malfunction, the vehicle will have changed handling characteristics or a noticeably reduced driving comfort.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

xOFFROAD package

Principle

The xOFFROAD package assists the driver when driving on unpaved roads or when there is reduced traction.

General information

The system offers four different xOFFROAD driving modes for selection. When an xOFFROAD driving mode is switched on, individual systems in the vehicle are set to the best possible traction and driving stability.

xOFFROAD driving modes can be selected based on the ground conditions.

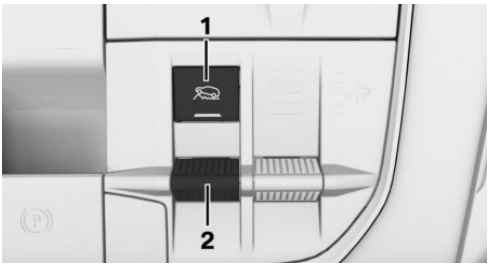
With two-axle ride level control, the vehicle level is set according to the corresponding xOFFROAD driving mode.

Observe the information in the chapter Driving tips for driving on poor roads.

Additional information:

Driving on poor roads, refer to page 324.

Overview



1 xOFFROAD: button

2 xOFFROAD: rocker switch

Activating xOFFROAD driving mode

Press the button.

or

Push the rocker switch forward or pull it backward.

The following functions are executed:

- ▷ The LED in the button illuminates.
- ▷ The following xOFFROAD driving mode is set: "xGRAVEL".

Additional information:

xOFFROAD driving modes in detail, refer to page 277.

Setting the xOFFROAD driving mode

Repeatedly push the rocker switch forward or pull it back until the desired xOFFROAD driving mode is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Deactivating xOFFROAD driving mode

Press the button.

The LED in the button goes out.

The last driving mode that was set through the Driving Experience Control will be activated.

If a driving mode is selected via Driving Experience Control, xOFFROAD driving mode is automatically deactivated.

xOFFROAD driving modes in detail

When xOFFROAD driving modes are switched on, the following vehicle settings are applied:

- ▷ Auto Start/Stop function is switched off.
- ▷ The shift characteristics and response to the accelerator pedal are adapted.
- ▷ The all-wheel drive system is set for optimum traction.
- ▷ The response characteristics of the Antilock Braking System are adapted.
- ▷ The response characteristics of Dynamic Stability Control are adapted.

Additional vehicle settings are applied, depending on the xOFFROAD driving mode selected.

xOFFROAD driving mode	Settings
"xGRAVEL"	Setting for easy terrain. High level 1 of the two-axle self-leveling suspension is set.
"xSAND"	Setting for difficult terrain with loose ground. High level 1 of the two-axle self-leveling suspension is set. For maximum traction, disable Dynamic Stability Control. Deactivate Forward Collision Mitigation as necessary to prevent it from automatically activating Dynamic Stability Control.

xOFFROAD driving mode	Settings
"xROCKS"	Setting for difficult terrain with severe ground unevenness. High level 2 of the two-axle self-leveling suspension is set. For maximum traction, disable Dynamic Stability Control. Deactivate Forward Collision Mitigation as necessary to prevent it from automatically activating Dynamic Stability Control.
"xSNOW"	Setting for road smoothness. The transmission shift characteristics are set to smooth gear changes. The vehicle drives off in second gear as necessary. The accelerator pedal characteristics are optimized for gentle handling.

Additional information:

- ▷ Two-axle ride level control, refer to page 273.
- ▷ Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 173.

xOFFROAD display

Enabling an xOFFROAD driving mode automatically opens the xOFFROAD display in the Live Vehicle menu.

The following information is displayed:

- ▷ Distribution of drive torque to the wheels.
- ▷ Longitudinal inclination: specified in percent.
- ▷ Transverse inclination: specified in degrees.
- ▷ Graph of wheel angle.
- ▷ With navigation system: elevation for the current position.
- ▷ Level adjustment of the two-axle ride level control.

Additional information:

Live Vehicle, refer to page 136.

System limits

At higher speeds, the characteristics of the selected xOFFROAD driving mode are reduced.

BMW IconicSounds

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle drive sound can be adjusted using BMW IconicSounds.

1. ⊞ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Drivetrain and chassis"
5. "IconicSounds"
6. Select the desired setting.

Climate control

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Climate control

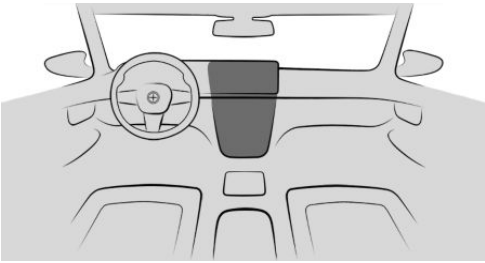
Overview

Functions in the Climate menu

Icon	Function
	Turn the air conditioning system on/off.
AUTO	Automatic program.
72.0°F	Temperature.
A/C	Air conditioning.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
	Air recirculation mode.
A	Automatic recirculated-air control.

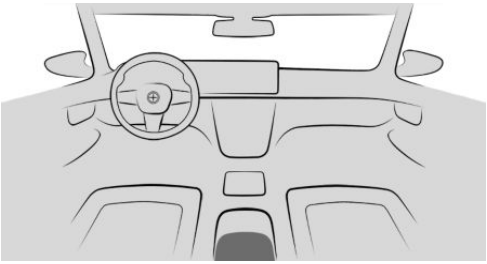
Icon	Function
	Fresh air.
	Air flow.
	Air distribution.
SYNC	SYNC program.
	Seat and armrest heating.
	Active seat ventilation.
	Steering wheel heating.

Buttons, air conditioning system



Icon	Function
MAX	Defrost function.
REAR	Rear window defroster.

Buttons, rear air conditioning system



Icon	Function
AUTO	Automatic program.
▲ ▼	Temperature.
A/C	Air conditioning.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
OFF ▲ ▼	Air flow.
	Air distribution.
	Seat and armrest heating.

Calling up climate control functions

The Climate menu can be accessed via iDrive:

Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.

Or:

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Climate control"

Turning the air conditioning system on/off

The air conditioning system can be turned on/off via iDrive.

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. Tap the power button.

The entire air conditioning system is turned on/off with the last settings applied.

When the air conditioning system is on, individual climate control functions can be turned off.

Make sure that there is sufficient ventilation when staying in the vehicle for extended periods of time with the air conditioning system off, e.g., when sleeping.

Settings

You can configure individual settings for climate control functions via iDrive, e.g.:

- ▷ Intensity of seat heating.
- ▷ Pre-ventilation.

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "Individual settings" or "General settings"
3. Select the desired setting.

Turning the rear air conditioning system on/off

Functional requirements

- ▷ The air conditioning system is on.
- ▷ The defrost function is deactivated.

Via iDrive

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "Individual settings"
3. "Second row of seats"
4. "Rear climate control"
5. Select the desired setting.

The rear air conditioning system can be activated with the default settings for temperature and the automatic program:

"Activate with default settings"

Switching on using the button

Press one of the following buttons:

- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Maximum cooling.
- ▷ Automatic program.
- ▷ Upper side of the air flow, manual button.
- ▷ Air distribution, manual.

Switching off using the button

OFF ▲▼ Press and hold the bottom of the button.

Locking the rear air conditioning system

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "Individual settings"
3. "Second row of seats"
4. "Lock rear climate control"

Automatic program

Principle

The automatic program ensures a comfortable climate, which can be adjusted by setting the desired temperature and configuring the settings.

The automatic program cools, ventilates or heats the vehicle interior automatically.

General information

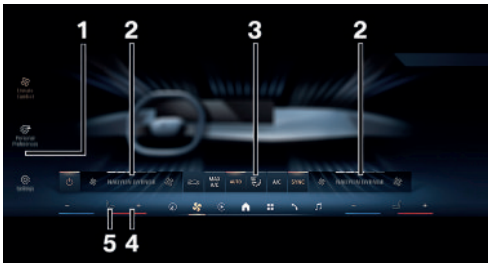
Depending on the equipment, the automatic program provides the best possible settings for climate control functions depending on the outside temperature, interior temperature, sunlight, seat occupancy and the desired temperature setting:

- ▷ Air flow.
- ▷ Air distribution.
- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Seat and armrest heating.
- ▷ Active seat ventilation.
- ▷ Steering wheel heating.

The automatic program takes seat occupancy into account, regulating the climate in an energy-efficient manner that is tailored to the occupants.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the automatic program in order to prevent window condensation to the extent possible.

Overview



1 Settings
2 Air flow intensity
3 Climate control functions bar
4 Temperature
5 Seat heating
Steering wheel heating
Active seat ventilation

Turning the automatic program on/off

The AUTO program can be switched on or off via iDrive.

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. AUTO Tap the AUTO program button.

Turning the automatic program on/off for the rear air conditioning system

Via iDrive

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "Individual settings"
3. "Second row of seats"
4. "Automatic climate"
5. Select the desired setting.

Using the button

AUTO Press the button.

The LED of the button is illuminated when the automatic program is turned on.

Setting the intensity

When the automatic program is activated, the intensity of individual climate control functions, e.g., seat heating, is adjusted individually.

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "Individual settings"
3. Select the desired setting.

Each level has a specific control range of the intensity.

Based on the stored data models, the intensities are dynamically adjusted while driving. It is not necessary to manually change the desired intensity to lower or higher levels while driving.

The individually selected settings of the climate control functions are stored and automatically set up again such as after the vehicle is started again.

Display

The indicator on the menu bar provides information about the temperature difference between the configured desired temperature and current interior temperature:

▷ The red or blue bar next to the temperature display indicates the progress of heating or cooling.

▷ The desired interior temperature is reached as soon as the bar is no longer displayed.

Active climate control functions, e.g., seat heating, are indicated by the icons on the menu bar.

Temperature

Principle

The air conditioning system cools or heats to the set temperature, keeping the temperature constant.

General information

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the air conditioning system will not have enough time to adjust to the set temperature.

Setting the temperature

You can set the desired temperature for driver and front passenger individually on the menu bar.

▷ + Raise the temperature.

▷ — Lower the temperature.

Adjusting the temperature of the rear air conditioning system

Via iDrive

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "Individual settings"
3. "Second row of seats"
4. Set the desired temperature.

Using the button

Press the upper or lower button side to set the desired temperature.

Upper body temperature

General information

The air temperature in the upper body area can be adjusted.

This does not change the set interior temperature for the driver and front passenger.

Adjusting the upper body temperature

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "Individual settings"
3. "Driver" or "Front passenger"
4. "Temperature adjustment upper body"
5. Increase or decrease temperature.

Air flow

Principle

The air flow generated by the blower can be adjusted as needed.

The air flow may be reduced to preserve the vehicle battery.

Adjusting the air flow

The air flow can be set via iDrive:

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. Select the desired setting.

Automatic program:

- ▷ Tap the large air flow icon to increase the air flow.
- ▷ Tap the small air flow icon to reduce the air flow.

Manual mode:

- ▷ Tap up arrow: Increase air flow.
- ▷ Tap down arrow: Reduce air flow.

Adjusting the air flow of the rear air conditioning system

Via iDrive

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "Individual settings"
3. "Second row of seats"
4. "Fan"
5. Select the desired setting.

Using the button

Pressing the upper or lower side of the button repeatedly: decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the rear climate control display.

Air distribution settings

Principle

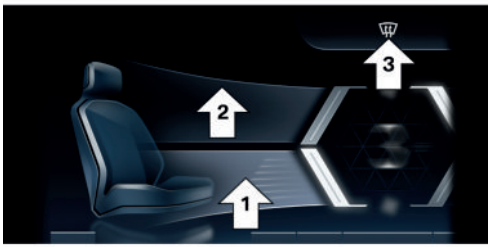
In manual mode, the air distribution can be adjusted as needed.

Adjusting the air distribution

The air distribution can be set via iDrive:

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. Tap the air distribution icon on the climate control functions bar.
3. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ Aim the air flow into the footwell, arrow 1.
   - ▷ Aim the air flow toward the upper body area, arrow 2.
   - ▷ Aim the air flow at the windshield , arrow 3.

   The selected air distribution is displayed.



Adjusting the air distribution of the rear air conditioning system

Pressing the upper or lower side of the button. Select the desired setting.

The selected air distribution is shown on the rear climate control display.

Air conditioning

Principle

With the climate control function, the air inside the vehicle is cooled and dehumidified, then warmed again depending on the temperature settings.

Functional requirement

Standby or drive-ready state is turned on.

Switching the cooling function on/off

The air conditioning can be switched on or off via iDrive:

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. A/C Tap the air conditioning button.

In recirculated-air mode, air conditioning is automatically switched on to dry the air and avoid window condensation.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and the side windows may fog up briefly when drive-ready state is switched on.

Condensation may form in the vehicle air-conditioning system. Condensation leaking under the vehicle is due to technical reasons and does not constitute a malfunction.

Maximum cooling

Principle

Maximum cooling lets you cool the vehicle interior quickly and effectively.

The lowest temperature and the maximum air flow are set automatically.

The function is automatically activated in the rear when the SYNC program is turned on.

Functional requirement

The following functional requirements must be met for maximum cooling:

- ▷ The outside temperature is higher than approx. 32°F / 0°C.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.

Turning maximum cooling on/off

Maximum cooling can be turned on or off via iDrive:

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. MAX A/C Tap the maximum cooling button.

Air flows out of the air vents to the upper body area. Open the vents.

Rear air conditioning system:

MAX A/C Press the button.

The button LED illuminates when maximum cooling is turned on.

Air recirculation mode

Principle

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the interior air.

In automatic recirculated-air control mode, outside air is fed in or the interior air recirculated depending on the outside air quality.

When the air recirculation is turned off, outside air is directed into the interior.

General information

If there is window condensation, turn off the air recirculation.

The interior filter cleans the incoming fresh air or the circulated interior air in recirculation mode.

Turning air recirculation on/off

Air recirculation mode can be switched on or off via iDrive:

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. The current operating mode is displayed on the climate control functions bar. Tap the button until the desired operating mode is set.
   - ▷ Recirculating air.
   - ▷ Fresh air.
   - ▷ Automatic air recirculation.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the air recirculation turns off automatically after some time based on the ambient conditions in order to prevent condensation.

SYNC program

Principle

If the SYNC program is activated, the settings for the driver's side are transferred to the passenger's side and to the rear.

For improved comfort, when the SYNC program is deactivated, the following settings are adjusted automatically in the automatic program depending on seat occupancy:

- ▷ If the front passenger seat is unoccupied, the settings for the driver's side are applied to the front passenger side.
- ▷ If the seats in the rear are unoccupied, the default settings for the rear are applied.

When the seat is occupied again, the most recent settings are reapplied.

General information

The following settings can be applied:

- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Air flow.
- ▷ Air distribution.
- ▷ Automatic program.

Turning the SYNC program on/off

The SYNC program can be switched on or off via iDrive:

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2.

Tap the SYNC program button.

If the settings on the front passenger side or in the rear are changed, the program is automatically switched off.

Defrost function

Principle

With the defrost function, ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

The air flow and air temperature are automatically optimized for the removal of ice and condensation.

The air distribution is directed toward the windshield and front side windows.

If there is window condensation, turn on the automatic program to take advantage of the condensation sensor.

When the defroster is on, the rear air conditioning system is deactivated to provide maximum performance.

Turning the defrost function on/off

Press the defrost button on the instrument panel.

The LED of the button is illuminated when the system is switched on.

Make sure that air is able to flow to the windshield and front side windows.

Rear window defroster

Principle

The rear window heating quickly removes ice and condensation from the rear window, depending on the outside temperature.

The rear window heating can either be set to turn off automatically after some time or used in continuous operation.

Functional prerequisites

- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ The rear window heating can only be activated and kept on at an outside temperature of below approx. 41°F / 5°C.

Turning the rear window defroster on/off

To turn the rear window heating on/off, press the rear window heating button on the instrument panel.

The LED in the button illuminates when the rear window heating is turned on.

To keep the rear window heating on, press and hold the button for at least 3 seconds.

Seat and armrest heating

Principle

The system heats seats and armrests as needed.

General information

Seat heating can also be used without armrest heating. Deactivate the armrest heating as needed.

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after an intermediate stop, the functions are turned on automatically with the temperature that was last set.

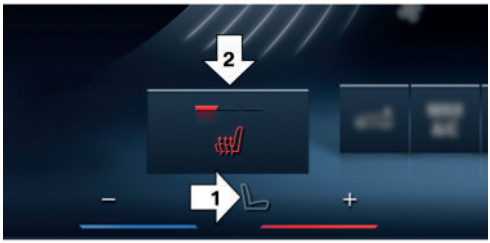
Adjusting seat heating

Automatic program

When the automatic program is activated, the intensity of seat heating can be adjusted. As you drive, the heater output is automatically adjusted according to your set intensity.

Adjusting seat heating manually

The heater output level can be adjusted manually:



1. Tap the seat climate control icon on the menu bar, arrow 1.
2. Tap the seat heating button repeatedly until the desired level is selected, arrow 2.

To turn off the seat heating, press and hold the seat heating button for approx. three seconds.

If a consumption-optimized drive mode is selected, the heater output is reduced.

Turning the armrest heating on/off

1. Tap the Climate Control menu icon on the menu bar.
2. "Individual settings"
3. Select the desired seat.
4. "Heat armrests and seat"

Turning the rear seat heating on/off

Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are illuminated.

1. Tap the seat climate control icon on the menu bar, arrow 1.
2. Tap the seat ventilation button repeatedly until the desired level is selected, arrow 2.

Active seat ventilation

Principle

The system cools the seat and backrest as necessary, ensuring a pleasant seat temperature.

Adjusting active seat ventilation

Automatic program

When the AUTO program is on, the intensity of seat ventilation can be adjusted. As you drive, the ventilation is automatically adjusted according to the set intensity.

Adjusting the active seat ventilation manually

The ventilation level can be adjusted manually:

Steering wheel heating

Principle

The system heats the steering wheel as necessary.

Adjusting steering wheel heating

Automatic program

When the automatic program is activated, the intensity of steering wheel heating can be adjusted. As you drive, the heater output is automatically adjusted according to your set intensity.

Adjusting steering wheel heating manually

The heater output level can be adjusted manually:

1. Tap the seat climate control icon on the menu bar, arrow 1.
2. Tap the steering wheel heating button repeatedly until the desired level is selected, arrow 2.

If a consumption-optimized drive mode is selected, the heater output is reduced.

Ventilation

Principle

The ventilation system offers individual adjustment ranges for direct/indirect ventilation in order to optimize the flow of air within the vehicle.

General information

Open the air vents and position them to ensure effective air conditioning.

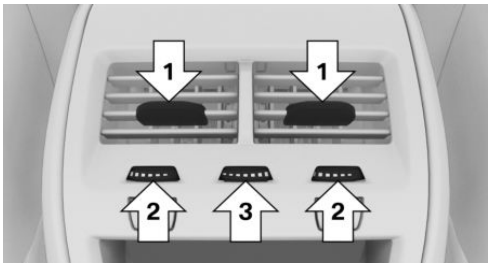
The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the set desired temperature.

Front ventilation

Setting the air flow direction and air volume at the vent.

- ▷ Change air flow direction: push the adjustment knob in the desired air flow direction.
- ▷ Changing the air volume:
  - ▷ Turn adjustment knob clockwise: the air flow is increased.
  - ▷ Turn adjustment knob counterclockwise: the air flow is decreased.

Ventilation in the rear

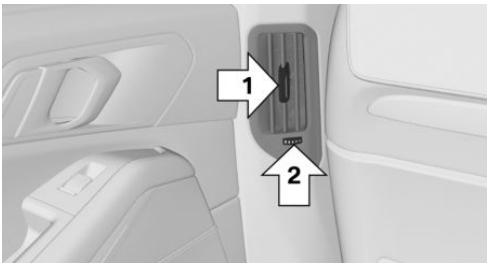


- ▷ Change the air flow direction, arrows 1.
- ▷ Variably opening/closing the air vents, arrows 2.
- ▷ Thumbwheel for varying the temperature, arrow 3.

  Toward blue: colder.

  Toward red: warmer.

Ventilation in the rear, on the side



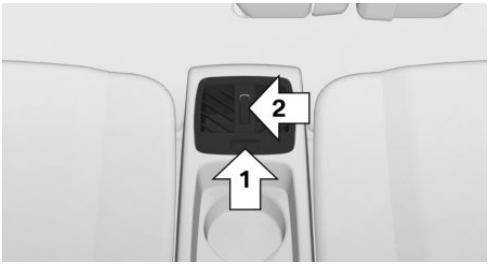
- Lever for changing the airflow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the air vents, arrow 2.

Setting the ventilation

Depending on the desired ventilation, align the air flow directly or indirectly toward the passengers.

Heating and ventilation, third row of seats

The air in the area of the third row of seats can be heated or circulated. The air vents are located in the storage area between the seats and in the floor area of the third row of seats.



- Button for switching on the blower, arrow 1. The LED illuminates.
- Activating the heating and air distribution, arrow 2.

  Turn toward the front: activate the heating and distribute the air in the floor area.

  Turn toward the rear: distribute the air in the storage area between the seats.

The heating is not operational unless the blower is activated. After the heating is switched off, the blower can be used to circulate the interior air, for instance at high temperatures. To do this, switch on the blower, arrow 1, and turn the thumbwheel toward the rear, arrow 2.

Air quality

General information

The air quality in the interior is improved by the following components:

- Emission tested passenger compartment.
- Interior filter.
- Air conditioning system to control the temperature, air flow, and air recirculation.
- Pre-ventilation.
- Ionizer.
- Fragrancing.

Interior filter

The interior filter cleans the incoming fresh air or the circulated interior air in recirculation mode.

Depending on the equipment:

- Dust and pollen is filtered out from the inflowing air.
- Nano-particle emissions are reduced.
- Gaseous pollutants are filtered.
- Microbial particles, viruses and allergens are filtered.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having the interior filter changed during vehicle maintenance.

Ambient air package

Principle

The Ambient Air Package cleans and scents the interior air with selected fragrances.

General information

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle. A variety of other fragrances is possible by exchanging the fragrance cartridges.

The following criteria can influence the perception of scents in the vehicle interior:

- ▷ Air conditioning system settings.
- ▷ Temperature and moisture.
- ▷ Time of day and season.
- ▷ Physical condition of the vehicle occupants, for instance fatigue.

BMW recommends the use of genuine BMW fragrance cartridges.

The genuine BMW fragrance cartridges are not suitable for refilling. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

Safety information

Warning

Refilled genuine BMW fragrance cartridges can cause the emission of harmful substances, malfunctions, and damage to the system. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not refill genuine fragrance cartridges. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

Ionizer

Principle

The ionizer cleans the car's interior air of suspended particles and improves the air quality.

Switching the ionizer on/off

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Air quality"
4. "Ionization"

Fragrancing

General information

Fragrancing is done at intervals in order to avoid a habituation effect.

Two fragrance cartridges in the vehicle allow switching between the fragrances.

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

To ensure a pleasant fragrance inside of the vehicle when starting the trip, fragrancing can occur prior to the trip. The system is automatically switched on with the pre-ventilation if fragrancing was switched on at the completion of the last trip.

Functional requirements

- ▷ The fragrance cartridges are sufficiently filled.
- ▷ The interior temperature is between 41°F/+5°C and 104°F/+40°C.
- ▷ Open the air vents to allow the fragrance to flow out.

Selecting the fragrance

The car's interior is fragranced depending on the selected fragrance.

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle.

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Air quality"
4. "Fragrance"
5. Select the desired fragrance.

Switching fragrancing on/off, adjusting intensity

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Air quality"
4. "Fragrance"
5. "Intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

Display

The illustrations on the control display show the actual fill level of the fragrance cartridges.

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Air quality"

When an empty fragrance cartridge is indicated, the cartridge still contains a fluid carrying the fragrance. However, it is not sufficient for fragrancing.

When the fragrance cartridges are empty, a Check Control message is displayed once.

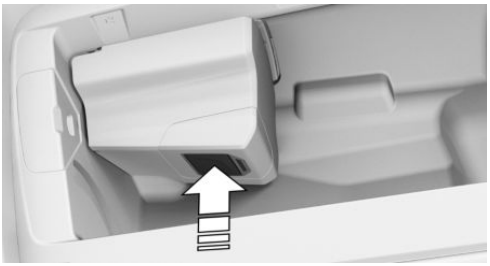
Inserting fragrance cartridges

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment.

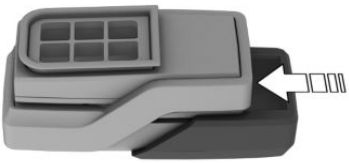
   Front passenger side glove compartment, refer to page 306.
2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.

   The cartridge holder slides down.

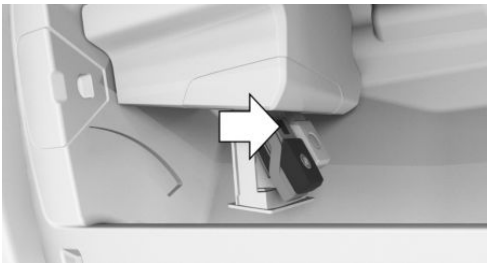


3. Remove the cover of the new fragrance cartridge. Hold the cover on the top to slide it from the fragrance cartridge.

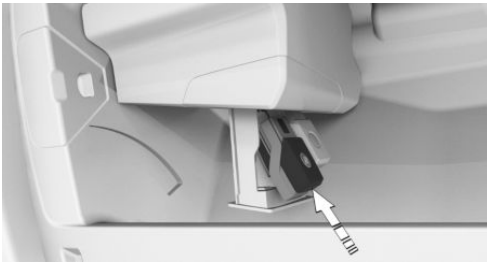
4. Insert the removed cover on the rear of the fragrance cartridge.



5. Position fragrance cartridge such that the chip faces away from the cartridge holder.



6. Slide the fragrance cartridge into the cartridge holder at a slight angle without applying pressure. The fragrance cartridge is correctly positioned when the cartridge holder can be closed.



7. Push the cartridge holder up, until it engages.

   Make sure that no objects press against the cartridge holder from below, otherwise the function of the ambient air package could be impacted.
8. Close the glove compartment.

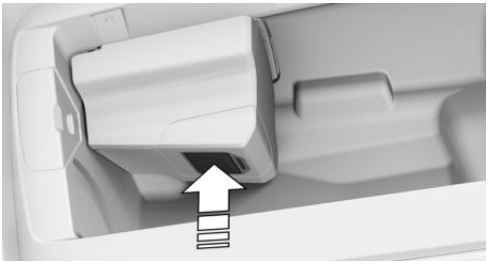
Removing fragrance cartridges

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment.

   Front passenger side glove compartment, refer to page 306.
2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.

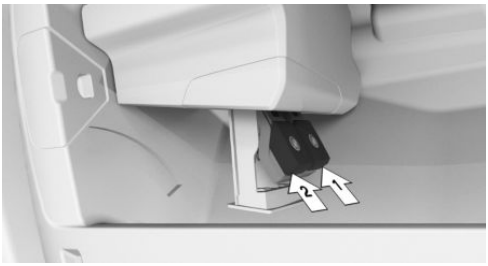
   The cartridge holder slides down.



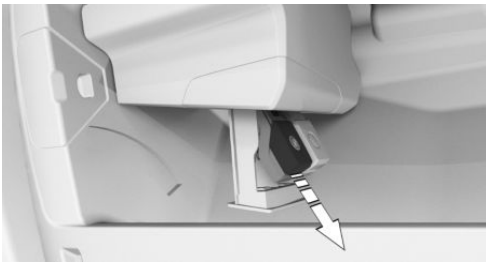
3. Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.

   Fragrance cartridge, arrow 1: first fragrance indicated on the control display.

   Fragrance cartridge, arrow 2: second fragrance indicated on the control display.



4. Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.



Recycling

Empty fragrance cartridges can be taken to an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop for recycling.

Pre-ventilation

Principle

The car's interior can be cooled or heated before driving off with the pre-ventilation. Depending on the set temperature and ambient temperature, the vehicle interior is ventilated or, depending on model variant, heated using the residual engine heat.

General information

The system can be switched on and off directly or via a preset departure time.

The activation time is determined based on the outside temperature. The system promptly switches on before the selected departure time.

The system switches off automatically after a certain period of time. The system continues to run for some time after being switched off.

Functional requirements

- ▷ The vehicle is in idle state or standby state.
- ▷ The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

  If pre-ventilation is switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. Thus, limit the maximum activation time to save the vehicle battery. The system will be available again after the engine is started or after a short trip.
- ▷ Time and date are set correctly.
- ▷ The air vents are open.

Switching pre-ventilation on/off

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-ventilation"
4. Select the desired setting.

Departure time

General information

Different departure times can be set to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

- ▷ One-time departure time: the time can be set.

  The system is switched on once.
- ▷ Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week can be set.

  On the desired weekdays, the system will be switched on before the set departure time.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- ▷ Set departure times.
- ▷ Activate departure times.

Preventilation at the departure time can only be activated once.

Wait at least 10 minutes between setting and activating the departure time and departing at the planned time. This gives the air conditioning sufficient time to bring the vehicle interior to the desired temperature.

Setting the departure time

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-ventilation"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Select the desired departure time.
6. Set the desired departure time.
7. Select day of the week, if needed.

Activating the departure time

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-ventilation"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Activate the desired departure time.

Display on the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	Icon illuminates: a departure time is activated. Icon flashes: pre-ventilation is switched on.

Activating with My BMW App

Depending on vehicle equipment, the My BMW App with remote functionality can be used to turn on precooling at a preset departure time or immediately.

Pre-conditioning through Remote Engine Start

Principle

Pre-conditioning cools or heats the car's interior prior to start of the trip to a comfortable temperature. This system automatically cools, ventilates, and heats depending on the inside/outside temperature and set temperature. Snow and ice may be removed more easily.

This system starts the engine automatically and lets it run for a limited time.

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can pollute the area in and around the vehicle or penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas or areas with insufficient ventilation, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation. Do not switch on pre-conditioning in enclosed areas or areas with insufficient ventilation, e.g. in enclosed garages.

Warning

When pre-conditioning is in operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust system. If combustible materials such as leaves or grass come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of fire, injury, and property damage. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts during pre-conditioning, e.g. leaves, grass, natural gas, gasoline, oil or other combustible objects.

Functional requirements

- The vehicle is in idle state or standby state.
- Battery is sufficiently charged.
- The fuel tank is at a sufficient level.
- Hood is closed.
- Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- Air vents are open.

Enabling the automatic engine start function

The automatic engine start must be enabled before using the system. Otherwise, the engine cannot switch on automatically to climatize the car's interior.

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Remote Engine Start"
5. "Start engine for climate control"
6. Confirm the disclaimer.

Turning on/turning off the pre-conditioning

General information

The system switches off automatically after max. 15 minutes for safety reasons.

The system can be switched on a maximum of two times in a row.

The system will be available again as soon as the drive-ready state is activated and deactivated again.

Switching on via iDrive

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Start now"

Switching on/off via vehicle key

The system can be switched on and off using the vehicle key.

Press the button on the vehicle key three times within 1 second.

The engine turns on approx. 3 seconds after the vehicle key is pressed.

To switch off the system, press the button again three times.

Turning off with the Start/Stop button

This system can be turned off directly by pushing the Start/Stop button without depressing the brake pedal.

Air conditioning for departure time

General information

Scheduled departure times can be set up in the system to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

- ▷ One-time departure time: the time of the scheduled departure can be set.

  The system is switched on once.
- ▷ Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week of the scheduled departure can be set.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- ▷ Set departure times.
- ▷ Activate departure times.

The system is activated automatically a few minutes before the set departure time. The system remains switched on for a short time after the set departure time.

For safety reasons, the air conditioning can only be activated once for the departure time.

The system will be available again as soon as the drive-ready state is activated and deactivated again.

Observe the information about the intended use of the vehicle.

Additional information:

For Your Own Safety, refer to page 9.

Setting the departure time

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select day of the week, if needed.

Activating the departure time

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Activate the desired departure time.

Display

In the instrument cluster:

The engine runs for the purpose of operating the pre-conditioning. The vehicle is not ready to drive.

Icon	Description
	Icon on the instrument panel. Icon illuminates: a departure time is activated. Icon flashes: pre-conditioning is switched on.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

The activation of the system is confirmed by flashing twice.

The parking lights are switched on as long as the system is switched on.

Interior equipment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Integrated universal remote control

Principle

The integrated universal remote control in the interior mirror can operate remote-controlled systems such as garage door openers, alarm systems or locking systems.

General information

The integrated universal remote control replaces various hand-held transmitters for remote-controlled systems. The buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed before they can be used.

If possible, do not install the antenna of the remote-controlled system near metal objects to ensure the best possible operation.

Safety information

Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control such as the garage door may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.

Overview

- Buttons, arrow 1.
- LED, arrow 2.
- Hand-held transmitter of the remote-controlled system, arrow 3.

Compatibility

If this icon is printed on the packaging or in the operating instructions of the remote-controlled system, the system is generally compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

Additional questions are answered by:

- An authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

For any additional questions, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Programming the integrated universal remote control

Functional requirements

To program the integrated universal remote control, the following functional requirements must be met:

- ▷ To ensure optimum range of the integrated universal remote control, the hand-held transmitter's battery must be fully charged at the time of programming.
- ▷ The vehicle is parked within range of the remote-controlled system.
- ▷ There are no persons or objects in the area around the remote-controlled system.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Programming individual buttons

1. Select desired button on the interior mirror:
   - ▷ Program available button:

     Press the button.
   - ▷ Program already assigned button:

     Press and hold the button for approx. 20 seconds.

   The LED on the interior mirror will slowly begin flashing orange.
2. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the remote-controlled system approx. 1 to 3 in/3 to 8 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror.

   The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter and can be found in the operating instructions for the remote-controlled system.
3. Press and hold the button on the hand-held transmitter until the LED on the interior mirror illuminates green. Programming is complete.

If programming could not be completed, the LED may react in different ways:

- ▷ LED flashes green: The hand-held transmitter has been detected but programming is not complete. Continue with the specific features for rolling code radio systems.
- ▷ If the LED does not illuminate green after 60 seconds, programming could not be completed. Repeat the programming procedure.

Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the integrated universal remote control and the system also have to be synchronized. Refer to information on synchronization in the operating instructions of the remote-controlled system. Synchronization is easier with the aid of a second person.

1. Program the desired button on the interior mirror.
2. Press the synchronize button on the remote-controlled system, e.g., on the garage door.
3. Within 30 seconds, press and hold the programmed button on the interior mirror for approx. 3 seconds.

   When synchronization is complete, the programmed function is performed, e.g., opening the garage door.

   If the function is not performed, repeat this step up to three times, if necessary, until the synchronization is complete and the programmed function is performed as desired.

Operation

After programming, the remote-controlled system can be operated with the button on the interior mirror.

Press and hold the desired button on the interior mirror within range of the remote-controlled system until the function activates.

The interior mirror LED illuminates green while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

Deleting a button assignment

The programming for the interior mirror buttons can be deleted, e.g., before selling the vehicle.

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approx. 10 seconds until the LED flashes green.

All stored button assignments will be deleted.

Sun visor

Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

Glare shield from the side

Folding the sun visor out

1. Fold the sun visor down.
2. Detach it from the holder and swing it toward the side window.
3. Shift it back to the desired position.

Folding the sun visor in

Proceed in the reverse order to close the sun visor.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover.

Sockets

Principle

The socket can be used for electronic devices when the standby or drive-ready state is switched on.

General information

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using unsuitable connectors.

Safety information

Warning

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags such as portable navigation devices can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior while unfolding. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.

Warning

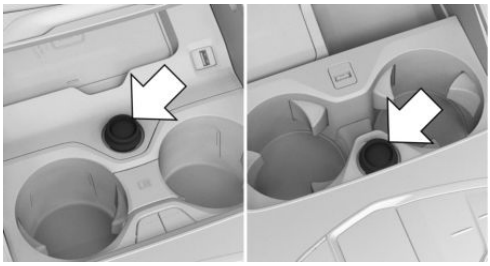
Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery via sockets or cigarette lighters in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12 V electrical system. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

Warning

If metal objects fall or are plugged into electronic interfaces, e.g., sockets or USB ports, these objects can cause a short circuit and destroy the interface. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure to prevent metal objects from falling or being plugged into electronic interfaces. Insert the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

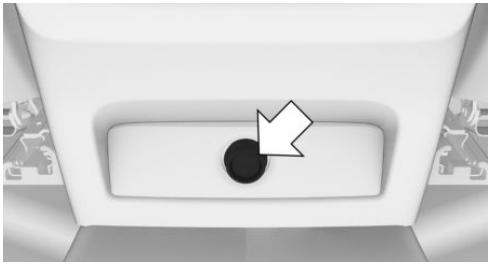
Front center console

Press on the cover.



A socket is located between the cup holders in one of the marked positions. Detach the cover.

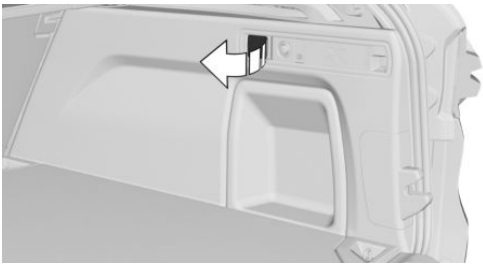
Rear center console



A socket is located in the center console.

Detach the cover.

In the cargo area



A socket is located on the right side in the cargo area. Unfold the cover.

USB port

Principle

The USB port is an interface used to connect mobile devices to the vehicle via USB cable. Data can then be sent or the mobile device can be charged.

General information

The available functions of the USB port are indicated by an icon.

Icon	Meaning
	Compatible mobile devices are supplied with charging current.
	USB sticks, for example, can be connected to USB ports that support data transfer in order to play audio or to update navigation data. Compatible mobile devices are supplied with charging current.

The following mobile devices can be connected to the USB port with data transmission:

- ▷ Mobile phones.
- ▷ Audio device.
- ▷ USB storage devices.

Additional information:

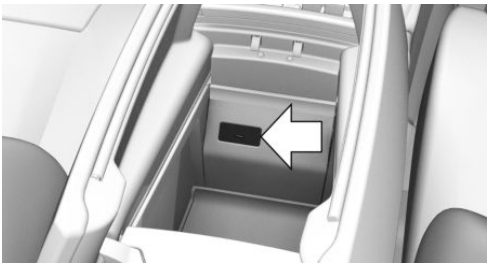
USB audio or map update, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication, refer to page 6.

Safety information

Warning

If metal objects fall or are plugged into electronic interfaces, e.g., sockets or USB ports, these objects can cause a short circuit and destroy the interface. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure to prevent metal objects from falling or being plugged into electronic interfaces. Insert the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

In the center armrest



A USB port is located in the center armrest.

Properties:

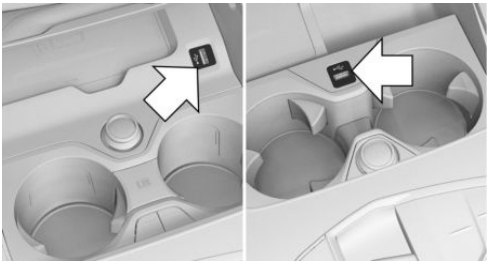
- ▷ USB port Type C.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices.
- ▷ Charge current: max. 3 A.

In the center console

NOTICE

Objects in the storage compartment, e.g., large USB connectors, may block or damage the cover when it is being opened or closed. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the cover is clear while opening and closing it.

Press on the cover.



A USB port is located in the center console at one of the marked positions.

Properties:

- ▷ USB port Type A.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices and for data transfer.
- ▷ Charge current: max. 1.5 A.

In the rear center console

Two USB ports are located in the center console in the rear passenger compartment.

Properties:

- ▷ USB port Type C.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices.
- ▷ Charge current: maximum 3 A per port.

Functional requirement

- ▷ The mobile device must support the maximum charging current of the USB port.
- ▷ The mobile device must support Mass Storage Class mode.
- ▷ Compatible device with USB port.
- ▷ A compatible file system is installed on the mobile device. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats.

Connecting the device

Connect the USB device using a suitable adapter cable to a USB port.

Follow the following when connecting:

- ▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB port.
- ▷ Use a flexible adapter cable.
- ▷ Protect the USB device against mechanical damage.
- ▷ Due to the large number of USB devices available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device is operable on the vehicle.
- ▷ Do not expose USB devices to extreme environmental conditions such as very high temperatures, refer to the operating instructions of the device.
- ▷ Due to the many different compression techniques, proper playback of the media stored on the USB device cannot be guaranteed in all cases.
- ▷ To ensure that saved data is transferred properly, do not charge the USB device from the 12V socket if the USB device is connected to a USB port.
- ▷ It may be necessary to configure the device settings in order to enable data transferring.

The connected USB device is shown in the device list on the control display.

Non-compatible USB devices

- ▷ USB hard drives.
- ▷ USB hubs.
- ▷ USB memory card readers with multiple slots.
- ▷ HFS-formatted USB devices.
- ▷ Devices such as fans or bulbs.
- ▷ Devices with a power consumption of more than 1.5 A or 3 A at 5 V, depending on the type of USB port.

Travel & Comfort system

General information

The front seat backrests have mounts and various connection options:

- ▷ Mounts for attaching optional accessories, e.g., universal holders for tablets or coat hangers.
- ▷ USB ports.

Properties of the USB ports:

- ▷ USB port Type C.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices.
- ▷ Charge current: maximum 3 A / 45 W per seat.

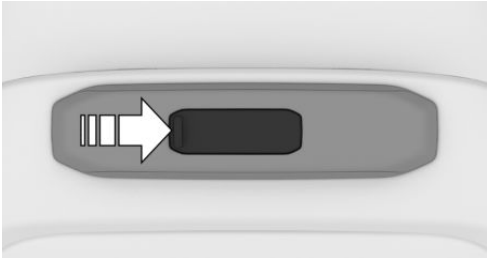
For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

The mounts for attaching optional accessories are located behind the marked covers, as are the USB ports.

Attaching optional accessories

1. Slide the cover all the way to the side.



2. Mount the optional accessories, refer to Assembly Instructions.

Wireless charging tray

Principle

The wireless charging tray is used to wirelessly charge Qi-certified smartphones.

General information

When inserting the smartphone to be charged, make sure that there is nothing between the smartphone to be charged and the wireless charging tray.

The charging process is shown by the charging indicator on the control display.

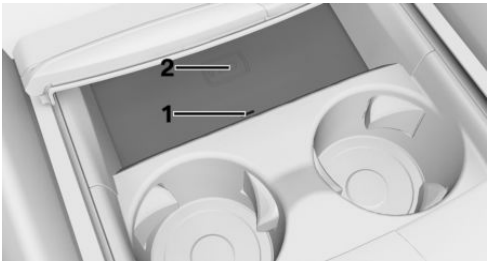
Safety information

Warning

When charging a Qi-compatible device in the wireless charging tray, metal objects on the tray with the device can become very hot. Storage media or electronic cards, e.g., chip cards, cards with magnetic strips, or cards for transmitting signals, may not function correctly when placed together on the tray with the device. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects on the tray with the device.

Overview

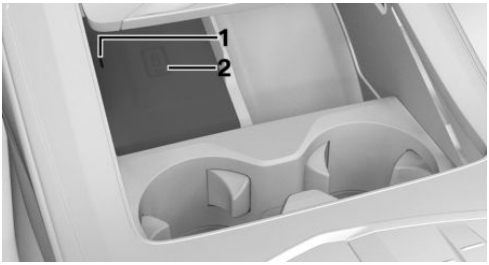
Wireless charging tray crosswise in center console:



1 LED

2 Wireless charging tray

Left wireless charging tray in center console:



1 LED

2 Wireless charging tray

Functional requirements

The following functional requirements apply for the wireless charging tray:

- ▷ The smartphone being charged must be Qi-certified.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Smartphone must not exceed maximum dimensions of approx. 6.0 x 3.1 x 0.7 in/154.5 x 80 x 18 mm.
- ▷ Protective sleeves and covers must be suitable for wireless charging.
- ▷ The smartphone being charged has been placed in the center of the wireless charging tray. The smartphone display is facing up.

Inserting a smartphone

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Place the smartphone in the center of the wireless charging tray, with the display facing up.
3. To avoid distraction from the smartphone display, close the tray cover.

LED displays

Color	Meaning
Blue	Smartphone is charging. The blue LED continues to illuminate when the Qi-capable smartphone is fully charged.
Orange	Smartphone is not charging. Temperature on the smartphone may be too high, or foreign object may be in charging tray.
Red	Smartphone is not charging. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Forgotten warning

General information

A warning may be issued if a Qi-certified smartphone was forgotten in the wireless charging tray when leaving the vehicle.

The forgotten warning is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Enable/Disable Forgotten Warning

1. ⊞ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Wireless charging tray"
5. "Mobile phone reminder"

System limits

The charge current may be reduced or charging may be temporarily interrupted in the wireless charging tray in the following situations:

- ▷ Due to excessive temperatures of the wireless charging tray and smartphone.
- ▷ If there are objects between the smartphone and wireless charging tray.
- ▷ If storage media or electronic cards, e.g., chip cards, cards with magnetic stripes, or cards for signal transmission, are located between the smartphone and wireless charging tray.
- ▷ Due to protective sleeves and covers that exceed a thickness of 0.07 in/2 mm.
- ▷ Due to protective sleeves and covers made of unsuitable material, e.g., with magnetic parts.
- ▷ Due to add-on parts for the smartphone, e.g., holders.
- ▷ By configuring the smartphone settings, e.g., for charging. Follow the instructions given on the control display and smartphone, as applicable.

Storage compartments

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Safety information

Warning

When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., mobile phones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

Warning

Breakable objects such as glass bottles or glasses can break in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not use any breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

Warning

Open flaps of the storage compartments, e.g., glove compartment or center armrest, protrude into the interior when folded open and may be in the way of an airbag that deploys. In addition, objects in the open storage compartment can be thrown into the vehicle interior during the trip, for instance, in the event of an accident or when braking or making an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Always close storage compartments immediately after use.

Warning

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. Attached objects could come loose. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not use anti-slip pads.

Glove compartment

Opening the glove compartment

Pull the handle.

Closing the glove compartment

Fold the lid closed.

Locking the glove compartment

The glove compartment can be locked with an integrated key. This prevents access to the glove compartment.

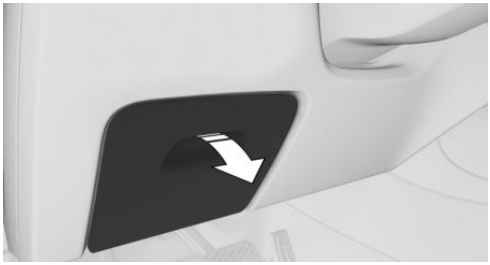
After the glove compartment has been locked, the vehicle key can be given to someone without the integrated key, for example, when the car is being parked by a parking attendant.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 70.

Fold-out compartment

Opening the fold-out compartment



Press the button and open the cover.

Storage tray in center console

Opening the storage compartment

Press on the cover.

Closing the storage compartment

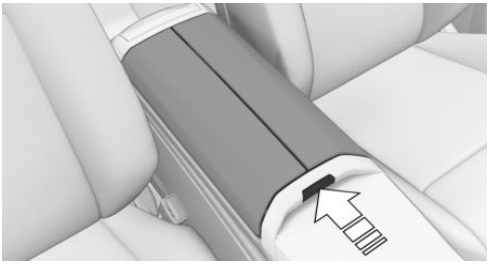
Pull the cover on the handle back.

Front center armrest

General information

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

Opening the center armrest



Press the button.

Closing the center armrest

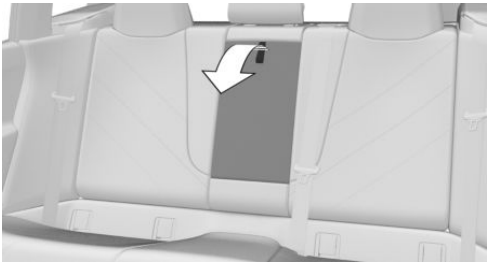
Press both lids down until they engage.

Rear center armrest

General information

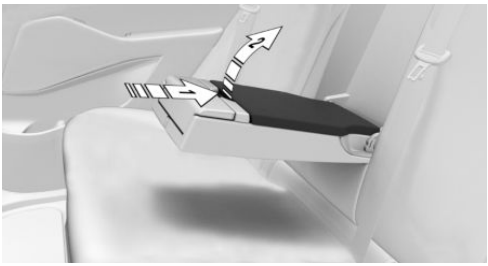
A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

Folding down the center armrest



Fold the center armrest forward.

Opening the center armrest



Press the button, arrow 1, and fold the lid up, arrow 2.

Closing the center armrest

Press the lid down until it engages.

Front cup holder

Safety information

Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the surrounding traffic conditions, lead to an accident and damage vehicle components. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Make sure that drink containers are secured firmly in the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Clean up spilled liquids immediately. Do not transport hot beverages.

Opening the cup holder

Press on the cover.

Two cup holders are located in the center console.

Closing the cup holder

Pull the cover on the handle back.

Maintaining the drink temperature

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, drinks can be kept cool or warm.

Safety information

Warning

Contact with the hot metal insert of the thermoelectric cooling and heating system for a cup holder can cause burn injuries. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch the metal insert when the thermoelectric cooling and heating system for a cup holder is switched on.

NOTICE

When the thermoelectric cooling and heating system for a cup holder is switched on and the cover is closed, the thermoelectric cooling and heating system for a cup holder can overheat. There is a risk of property damage. Switch the thermoelectric cooling and heating system for a cup holder off before closing the cover.

NOTICE

Temperature sensitive items may be damaged by the hot metal insert of the thermoelectric cooling and heating system for a cup holder. There is a risk of property damage. Use suitable containers only.

Switching on the thermal cup holder

Press the button for keeping cool or warm once each.

- ▷ Blue LED illuminates: keep drinks cool.
- ▷ Red LED illuminates: keep drinks warm.

Switching off the thermoelectric cooling and heating system for a cup holder

Press the button repeatedly until the LEDs turn off.

Rear cup holder

Safety information

Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the surrounding traffic conditions, lead to an accident and damage vehicle components. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Make sure that drink containers are secured firmly in the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Clean up spilled liquids immediately. Do not transport hot beverages.

NOTICE

With an open cup holder, the center armrest cannot be folded back up. There is a risk of property damage. Press back the covers before the center armrest is folded up.

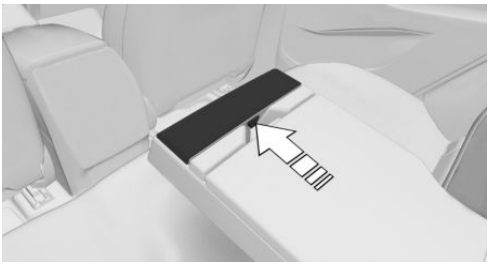
Second row of seats

General information

The cup holder can be adjusted for three different container sizes.

Opening the cup holder

1. Fold down the center armrest.
2. Press the button and fold out the cup holder fully.



Downsizing the cup holder

To make it smaller, the cup holder can be folded at 2 levels.

Enlarging the cup holder

To make a smaller cup holder bigger, first fold it in completely. Then fold the cup holder out again fully.

Closing the cup holder

Fold in the cup holder fully, until it engages.

Coat hooks

General information

The coat hooks are located in the grab handles and on the door pillar in the rear.

Safety information

Warning

Clothing articles on the coat hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. When suspending clothing articles from the coat hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.

Warning

Improper use of the coat hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only hang lightweight objects, for instance clothing articles, from the coat hooks.

Cargo area

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Loading

Safety information

Warning

High gross vehicle weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden tire pressure loss. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing directional stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Pay attention to the permitted load-carrying capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross vehicle weight.

Warning

When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., mobile phones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

Warning

Improperly stowed objects can slip and be thrown into the car's interior, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.

NOTICE

Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.

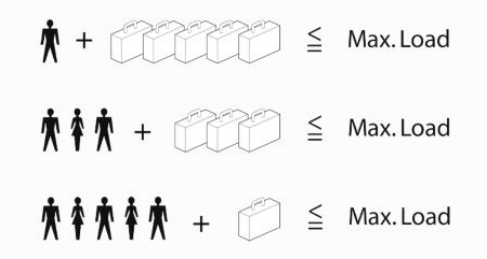
Steps for determining correct load limit

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs" on the vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in the vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in the vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the

available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If the vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to the vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of the vehicle.

Payload



The maximum payload is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing and securing cargo

- ▷ Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- ▷ Do not stack cargo above the upper edge of the backrests.
- ▷ If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow large cargo.
- ▷ Fasten the aids for securing the load to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.
- ▷ Depending on vehicle equipment, use the cargo area partition net to protect occupants. Make sure that objects cannot penetrate the cargo area partition net.
- ▷ Small and light cargo: secure with tensioning straps or tension bands or with a cargo net.
- ▷ Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.
- ▷ Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear seat backrests.
- ▷ Very heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear seat backrests. When the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer seat belts in the opposite buckle.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

General information

Attach auxiliary materials to secure the cargo such as lashing straps, tensioning straps, draw straps, or cargo nets to the lashing eyes.

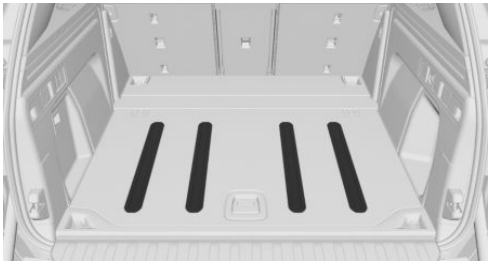
Overview

The lashing eyes are located in the cargo area.

The front lashing eyes are located under covers.

Automatic sliding and anti-slip rails

Principle



The system prevents slipping of the cargo in the cargo area when the anti-slip tracks are extended to the top.

General information

Observe information and notes on loading.

The anti-slip tracks extend up automatically when one of the following conditions is met:

- ▷ Tailgate is closed.
- ▷ Inclination of the vehicle by more than approximately 13 %.
- ▷ Tailgate is open and the speed of approx. 3 mph/5 km/h is exceeded.

Additional information:

Load, refer to page 311.

Multifunction hook

General information

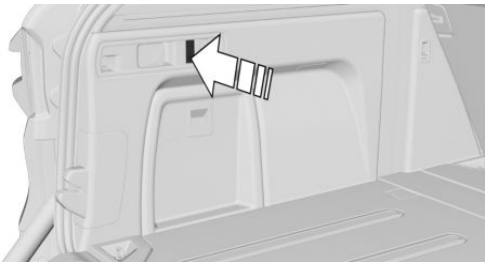
A multifunction hook is located on the left and right side in the cargo area.

Safety information

Warning

Improper use of the multifunction hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about, e.g., during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only hang lightweight objects from the multifunction hooks. Heavy luggage in the cargo area must be properly secured.

Folding out the multifunction hook



Press on the multifunction hook and turn until it engages.

Net

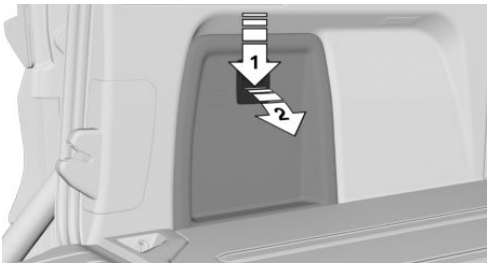
Smaller items can be stowed behind the net on the left or right side.

Storage compartment on the left side

General information

A storage compartment is located on the left side in the cargo area.

Opening the storage compartment



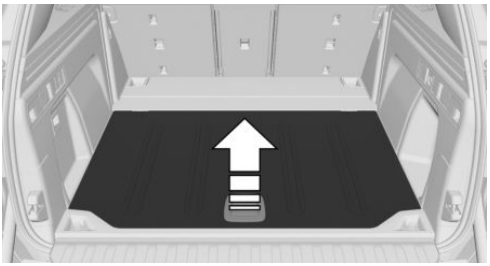
Press the button, arrow 1, and open the cover, arrow 2.

Cargo area floor

General information

There are storage compartments beneath the cargo area floor.

Opening the storage compartment



Fold up the cargo area floor.

Enlarging the cargo area

Principle

The cargo area can be enlarged by folding down the rear seat backrests.

General information

The rear seat backrest of the second seat row is divided at a ratio of 40–20–40. The side rear seat backrests and the center section can be folded down separately.

The rear seat backrests can be folded down from the rear or from the cargo area.

Depending on the equipment version, the rear seat backrests can be folded down either manually or electrically.

Safety information

Warning

Vehicle parts can be damaged or body parts jammed when folding down the rear seat backrest. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear seat backrest including head restraint is clear when folding down.

Warning

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo can be thrown about the car's interior; for instance, in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after folding it back.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat setting or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible and necessary,

adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

Folding down the rear seat backrest manually

Pull the lever and fold the rear seat backrest forward.

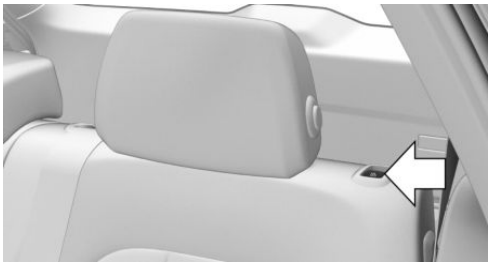
Folding back the rear seat backrest manually

Return the rear seat backrest to the seat position and engage it.

The red marking behind the lever disappears completely.

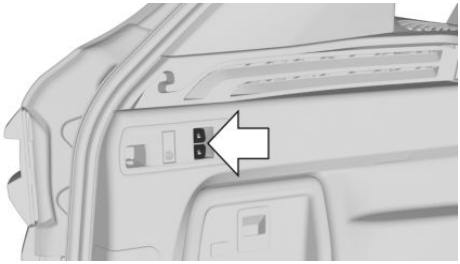
Folding down the rear seat backrest electrically

From the rear



Pull the switch and fold the rear seat backrest forward.

From the cargo area



Pull the switch inside the cargo area.

- ▷ Upper switch: the left and center rear seat backrests fold forward.
- ▷ Lower switch: the right rear seat backrest folds forward.

Folding back the rear seat backrest electrically

From the rear

Press the corresponding switch. The rear seat backrest sets itself upright.

From the cargo area

Pull the corresponding switch. The rear seat backrest sets itself upright.

Folding down middle section

Fold down the center armrest and pull on the loop.

Cargo cover

Safety information

Warning

When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., mobile phones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

Warning

Body parts can become trapped when the folding cargo cover is operated. There is a risk of injury. When operating the folding cargo cover, make sure that the travel path of the cover is clear.

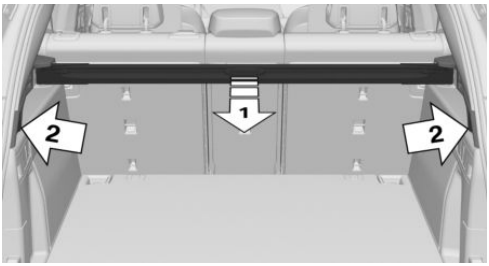
Warning

A cargo cover that snaps back quickly can jam body parts or cause damage. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not let the cargo cover snap back into place.

Warning

An incorrectly inserted cargo cover can be thrown about the car's interior such as in the event of an accident or a braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure the cargo cover is securely engaged in the brackets.

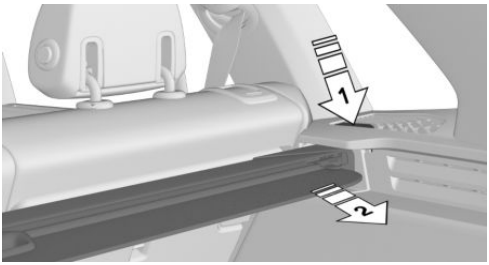
Closing the cargo cover



Pull out the cargo cover, arrow 1, and hook both sides onto the brackets, arrows 2.

Removing cargo cover

The cover can be removed to load bulky luggage.



Press the release button, arrow 1, and pull the cargo cover out toward the rear, arrow 2.

Stowing the cargo cover

General information

The cargo cover can be stowed under the cargo area floor.

Without third seat row

1. Open the storage compartment on the left side.
2. Fold up the cargo area floor.
3. Turn the cargo cover forward with the handle.

4. Stow the cargo cover on the left and lower it on the right side.

   Make sure the cargo cover is positioned correctly in the right bracket.

5. Push the cargo area floor down and close the storage compartment on the left side.

Inserting the cargo cover

Slide the cover forward horizontally into the two side brackets. Make sure that the cover audibly engages on both sides.

Electric cargo cover

Principle

The electric cargo cover opens and closes automatically with the tailgate. The cargo cover can be lowered below the cargo area floor to stow bulky items or luggage.

General information

Items in the range of movement are detected. The cargo cover stops automatically to prevent damage.

Safety information

Warning

When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., mobile phones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

Warning

Pinching of body parts may occur during operation of the electric cargo cover. Items in the range of movement may damage the cargo cover. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the electric cargo cover is clear during opening and closing. In addition, make sure that the area of movement of the cover flap in the cargo area floor is clear when lowering.

NOTICE

Items on the storage shelf may damage it. There is a risk of property damage. Do not place any objects on the cargo cover.

NOTICE

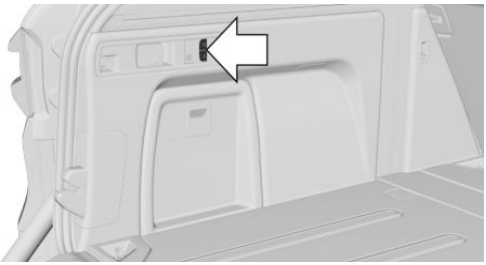
The manual operation of the electric cargo cover by hand may damage the cover. There is a risk of property damage. Use the buttons in the cargo area for operation.

Overview

Positions of the cargo cover

- ▷ Automatic position, arrow 1.
- ▷ Base position, arrow 2.

Buttons in the vehicle



The buttons of the cargo cover are located in the cargo area on the left side.

Switching between automatic and base position.

Lowering or raising the cargo cover.

Opening the cargo cover

When the tailgate is opened, the cargo cover is opened up to the automatic position.

To open the cargo cover completely up to the base position:

Press the button.

Closing the cargo cover

Press the button.

The cargo cover will be closed up to the automatic position.

When the tailgate is closed, the cargo cover will be closed completely.

The cargo cover will not be closed automatically when it is in the base position while the tailgate is closing.

Lowering the cargo cover

The cargo cover can be lowered to stow bulky luggage.

Press the button.

The cargo cover is lowered below the cargo area floor.

Raising the cargo cover

- ▷ Press the button.

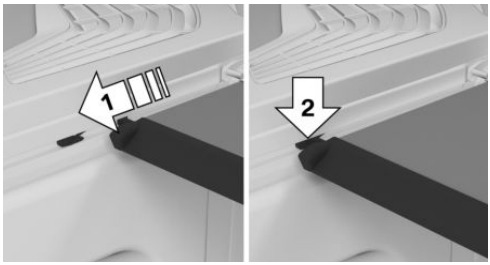
  The cargo cover is raised to the base position.
- ▷

Press the button.

  The cargo cover is raised to the base position and closes up to the automatic position.

Malfunctions

- ▷ If the closing force exceeds a certain value when closing the cargo cover, for example due to items in the range of motion, the cover will disengage from the mounting. The cargo cover stops in the guide rail.



To restore the operability, close the cargo cover by hand, arrow 1, until it engages in the mounting, arrow 2.

- ▷ Excessive or insufficient ambient temperatures may lead to the deactivation of the cargo cover. When the temperature is within normal range again such as by

switching on the air conditioning system, the function will be restored.

- ▷ The function will be deactivated when the system can no longer detect the position of the cargo cover. An initialization is required.

Initializing

Functional requirements

- ▷ Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is activated.
- ▷ The area of movement of the cargo cover is clear.
- ▷ Outside temperature is above 41°F/5°C.

Initializing the system

Press and hold the button until the initialization is finished.

The cargo cover moves to the different positions. The initialization is finished when a signal sounds.

If the button is released prematurely, the cargo cover will stop. The initialization is terminated.

Press and hold the button to restart the initialization.

Things to remember when driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Break-in procedures

General information

Moving parts need to work together smoothly.

The following instructions will help you to achieve a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control.

Safety information

Warning

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Do not exceed the maximum engine and road speed:

- For gasoline engine: 4,500 rpm and 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full throttle or kickdown under all circumstances.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand new.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brake disks and brake pads must be broken in to avoid possible brake noise. Drive cautiously for the first approx. 300 miles/500 km.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in procedures again if components mentioned above are replaced.

General driving notes

Closing the tailgate

Safety information

Warning

An open tailgate protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other road users or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust gas or water may enter the vehicle interior. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not drive with the tailgate open.

Driving with the tailgate open

If the vehicle still needs to be driven with the tailgate open:

- ▷ Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Greatly increase the blower output.
- ▷ Drive moderately.
- ▷ Secure the tailgate, e.g., with a tensioning belt.

Ground clearance

NOTICE

If the ground clearance is insufficient, e.g., underground garage entrances, speed bumps, or curbs, the ground may come into contact with vehicle parts, e.g., spoiler, and the underbody. There is a risk of property damage. Ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance available. Adjust your driving style to the respective conditions.

Driving at high speeds

Warning

Damage to vehicle components can negatively impact handling at high speeds. This includes, among other things, tires, underbody and parts for improving aerodynamics. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Have damage corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Do not drive at high speeds until the damage is corrected.

Hot exhaust system

Warning

High temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust system, while driving. Contact with the exhaust system can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch the exhaust system, including the exhaust pipe, when hot.

Warning

If combustible materials such as leaves or grass come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of fire and an injury hazard. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts while driving, in Neutral or during parking.

Exhaust gas particulate filter

Principle

The exhaust gas particulate filter collects soot particles. The soot particles are burned at high

temperatures to clean the exhaust gas particulate filter as necessary.

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle is equipped with an exhaust particulate filter. For more information on the exhaust particulate filter, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The following may occur when cleaning for several minutes:

- The combustion engine may not run as smoothly for a short time.
- A somewhat higher RPM is necessary to reach usual power development.
- Fuel consumption may be higher. The higher fuel consumption is included as mean value in the display for the current consumption.
- The exhaust system is emitting a small amount of smoke, even after the engine is shut off.
- There is audible noise, e.g., radiator fan is running, even several minutes after the engine is shut off.

Overrun of the radiator fan for several minutes is normal even after short trips.

Condensation in drive system

Various driving profiles ensure that the drive system functions properly. A driving style with consistently low loads can negatively affect overall functionality, e.g., condensation forming in the drive system. Occasionally running the engine longer with higher loads can counteract this.

If condensation has formed in the drive system, a corresponding Check Control message appears. In this case, on the next drive outside of town, proceed as follows for approx. 30 minutes:

- Engage selector lever position S.
- Deactivate the speed control system.
- Activate SPORT driving mode via Driving Experience Control.
- If possible, drive at varying speeds.

Additional information:

- Engaging selector lever position:

  Steptronic transmission, refer to page 124.
- Driving Experience Control, refer to page 129.

Driving through water

General information

When driving through water, follow the following:

- Only drive through when the combustion engine is running.
- Deactivate the Auto Start/Stop function.
- Drive through calm water only.
- Drive through water at a maximum of walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.
- With pre-heating:

  Drive through water only up to a maximum height of 9.8 inches/25 cm.
- Without pre-heating:

  Drive through water only up to a maximum height of 19.6 inches/50 cm.

Additional information:

Auto Start/Stop function, refer to page 121.

Safety information

NOTICE

When driving too quickly through deep water, the water can penetrate the engine compartment, the electrical system, or the transmission. There is a risk of property damage. When driving through water, do not exceed

the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.

Braking safely

General information

The vehicle is equipped with an Antilock Braking System as a standard feature.

Perform full braking when appropriate. To achieve the best possible braking assistance, do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal during full braking. Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering movement.

Sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that the Antilock Braking System is regulating.

Objects in the travel path of the pedals

Warning

Objects in the driver's footwell can limit the pedal travel or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's footwell. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

Pedal feel when driving off

After turning on drive-ready state from idle state, the pedal may feel unusual, e.g., the pedal travel path may feel short or long. After the brake pedal has been fully released, the pedal will feel as usual again.

Driving in wet conditions

In case of wet roads, exposure to road salt or in heavy rain, gently depress the brake pedal every few kilometers. Ensure that this action does not endanger other road users.

The heat generated while braking dries brake disks and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

In this way the brake power will be available when you need it.

Hills

General information

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Otherwise, the brake system may overheat and reduce braking effect.

You can increase the engine braking effect by downshifting, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

Light but constant pressure on the brake pedal can lead to high temperatures, brake wear, and even failure of the brake system. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Avoid placing excessive load on the brake system.

Warning

In Neutral or with drive-ready state switched off, safety functions, for instance engine braking effect, braking assistance and steering assistance, may be restricted or not available. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not attempt to drive in Neutral or with drive-ready state switched off.

Brake disk corrosion

Corrosion on the brake disks and contamination on the brake pads are increased by the following circumstances:

- Low mileage.
- Extended stationary periods.
- Infrequent use of the brakes.
- Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake disks will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes when braking slowly - generally this cannot be corrected.

Condensation water under the parked vehicle

Condensation may form in the vehicle air-conditioning system.

Condensation leaking under the vehicle is due to technical reasons and does not constitute a malfunction.

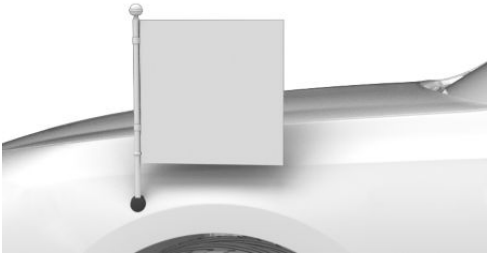
Pennant holder

Safety information

NOTICE

The vehicle, pennant holder, and pennant itself may be damaged when driving at high speeds with a pennant attached. There is a risk of property damage. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph / 130 km/h. Remove pennant before trips at high speeds.

Overview



The pennant holder is located on the side of the vehicle.

Installation

1. Remove the protective cap.
2. Insert pennant horizontally.
3. Turn the pennant clockwise by 90° to retain the pennant.

Driving on poor roads

Principle

Because of its greater ground clearance, the vehicle can be driven on a variety of road types and qualities.

Safety information

NOTICE

Objects in unpaved areas, for instance stones or branches, can damage the vehicle. There is a risk of property damage. Do not drive on unpaved terrain.

When driving on poor roads

For your own safety and the safety of passengers as well as your vehicle, when driving on poor-quality roads, note the following:

- Familiarize yourself with the vehicle before driving.
- Do not take risks when driving.
- Adjust the speed to the road surface conditions. The steeper and more uneven the road, the slower the speed should be.
- When driving on steep uphill or downhill gradients, add engine oil up to near the max. level mark.
- For steep downhill driving, use Hill Descent Control.
- If necessary, activate Terrain View in the Live Vehicle menu. Terrain View provides helpful information for all-wheel drive vehicle, e.g., the lateral and longitudinal inclination of the vehicle.
- Do not allow the vehicle body or underbody to come into contact with the ground.
- When wheels continue to spin, depress the accelerator pedal sufficiently so that driving stability control systems can distribute the driving power to the wheels.

Additional information:

- Hill Descent Control, refer to page 210.
- Live Vehicle, refer to page 136.

After a trip on poor roads

After a trip on poor roads, check wheels and tires for damage to maintain driving safety. Clear heavy soiling from the body.

If the vehicle body or floor has come into contact with the ground, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Driving on racetracks

General information

Before and after driving on a racetrack, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. Use of the vehicle in M Sport or motor sport type competition is an improper use of the vehicle and may affect your warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle is not designed for use in M Sport or motorsport-like competition. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the vehicle for motorsport or motorsport-like competitions.

Sport tires

The vehicle manufacturer recommends using special sport tires, e.g., high-performance tires. Sports tires are matched to the special requirements of a sporty driving style. For more information on sport tires, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Roof bars

General information

Installation only possible with roof rack.

Roof racks are available as optional accessories.

Safety information

Warning

When driving with a roof load, e.g., roof bars, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher. This increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

Installation

Follow the assembly instructions for the roof bars.

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

Loading

Because luggage racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

When loading and driving, note the following:

- Do not exceed the approved roof/axle weights and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- Secure the roof luggage firmly, for instance using luggage straps.
- Do not let objects project into the swiveling range of the tailgate.
- Drive carefully. Do not drive off or brake suddenly or take corners at speed.

Trailer and rear carrier

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

General information

The permissible trailer load, axle load, tongue weight, and permissible gross vehicle weight are specified in the technical data.

When the trailer power socket is occupied or when driving off, the vehicle is automatically set to the normal level.

Before driving

Tongue weight

The towing vehicle's maximum payload is reduced by the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight. The tongue weight increases the vehicle weight. Do not exceed the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle.

Loading

Distribute cargo as evenly as possible on the loading platform.

Stow the payload as low and close to the trailer axle as possible. A low center of gravity in the trailer increases the driving safety of the entire car-trailer combination.

Do not exceed the approved gross vehicle weight of the trailer and the permissible trailer load of the vehicle. The smaller value applies in each case.

Tire pressure

Note the tire inflation pressure of the vehicle and trailer.

For the vehicle, the tire inflation pressure for higher loads applies.

For the trailer, the specifications of the manufacturer apply.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure or connecting or disconnecting a trailer, reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor display or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Additional information:

▷ Tire pressure specifications, refer to page 342.
▷ Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 353.
▷ Flat tire monitor, refer to page 361.

Exterior mirrors

Exterior mirrors, which bring both rear edges of the trailer into the driver's field of vision, are available as optional accessories from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Electrical consumption

General information

Before start of the trip, check the function of the trailer tail lights.

To conserve the vehicle battery, do not keep electrical components on for long periods of time when operating a camper.

Trailer tail lights

The consumption of the trailer tail lights must not exceed the following values:

- Turn signals/brake lights: 54 watts per side.
- Rear lights: 100 watts in total.
- Reversing lights: 54 watts in total.

Care for trailer hitch mount

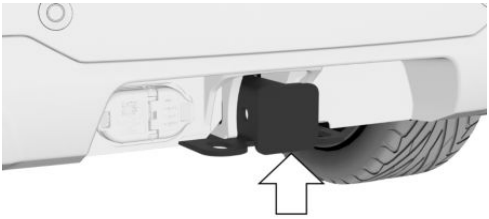
Depending on vehicle equipment, keep the mount clean.

Regularly treat bearings and sliding surfaces, using resin-free grease or oil.

Before using steam cleaners or high pressure cleaners on the vehicle, remove the ball head and insert the cover into the mount.

Mount for trailer hitch

General information



The mount for the trailer hitch is located on the rear of the vehicle, see arrow.

Information on suitable trailer hitches is provided on the underside of the mount cross member.

Follow the instructions for maintaining the trailer hitch mount.

Additional information:

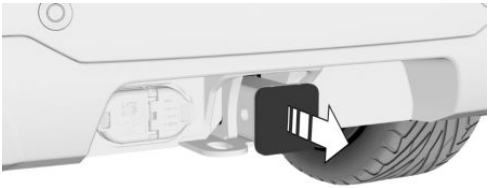
Caring for special components, refer to page 400.

Safety information

Warning

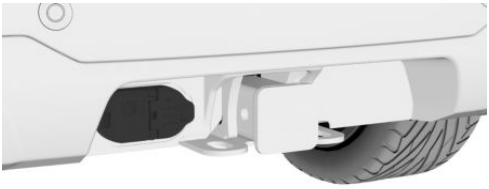
When driving, high temperatures can occur underneath the vehicle body, e.g., due to the exhaust system, brakes or radiator. Contact with the hot components can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch hot components. Do not perform work in the vicinity of hot components until after they have cooled down.

Removing the cover



Pull the cover out of the back of the mount, and stow it in the vehicle.

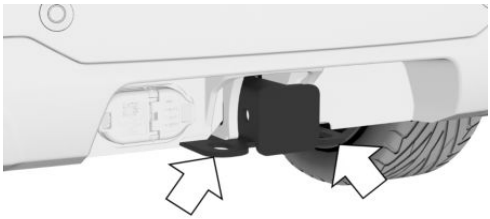
Trailer power socket



The trailer power socket is located to the left of the trailer hitch mount.

Loops for trailer safety chain

General information



There are two loops on the mount for the trailer hitch for locking the trailer safety chain.

Safety information

Warning

If the trailer safety line or the trailer safety chain is not fastened correctly, the trailer may unintentionally come loose. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before driving with a trailer, correctly couple the trailer safety line or the trailer safety chain to the eye of the trailer hitch.

Warning

If the trailer safety line or the trailer safety chain is not fastened correctly, the safety line or safety chain may get caught and cause damage to the vehicle or trailer. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before driving with a trailer, correctly couple the trailer safety line or the trailer safety chain to the eye of the trailer hitch. Ensure that the safety line or safety chain can move freely and is not dragging on the ground.

Driving with trailer or rear carrier

General information

When driving with a trailer or rear carrier, some driver assistance systems may be restricted or not available. A Check Control message is displayed where applicable. The driving stability control systems, e.g., Antilock Braking System, are still available.

If necessary, select another driver assistance system that can be used while towing a trailer, e.g., Active Cruise Control.

Additional information:

- Driver assistance systems, refer to page 213.
- Driving stability control systems, refer to page 207.
- Cruise Control, refer to page 217.

Safety information

Warning

If a trailer hitch is faulty, a trailer cannot be sufficiently secured. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not continue driving with a faulty trailer hitch.

Warning

Depending on the design and loading of trailers, they may begin swinging at speeds exceeding approx. 50 mph/80 km/h. There is a risk of accidents and risk of property damage.

Adapt your speed when driving with a trailer. Immediately brake in the case of swinging. Apply necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

Warning

The tire inflation pressure must be adjusted to the increased axle weight in trailer towing. Driving with too low tire inflation pressure can damage the tires. There is a risk of accidents and risk of property damage. Do not exceed a speed of 60 mph/100 km/h. Increase the tire pressure of the towing vehicle by 0.2 bar/3 psi. Note the maximum possible tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire.

Using a trailer or rear carrier

General information

When the trailer socket is occupied, a menu appears on the control display. In the menu, specify the vehicle is being driven with a trailer or rear carrier.

Some driver assistance systems may have limited functionality or may malfunction when driving with a trailer or rear carrier, e.g., rear bicycle rack, and an unoccupied trailer power socket. To avoid malfunctions, activate use of the trailer or rear carrier manually.

When the trailer socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, some driver assistance systems may be restricted or not available. A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

Safety information

Warning

If the control display is configured incorrectly, some driver assistance systems may have limited functionality or malfunction. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the corresponding setting is enabled when using the trailer or rear carrier.

Activating/deactivating trailer towing manually

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Trailer mode"
6. "Type"
7. Select whether you are driving with or without a trailer/rear carrier.

Maximum speed

General information

When towing a trailer, you can configure the maximum permitted speed for the vehicle-trailer combination. Depending on vehicle equipment, this setting is considered by speed limit systems.

Additional information:

- Speed Limit Info, refer to page 213.
- Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page 238.

Setting the maximum speed

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Trailer mode"
6. "Maximum permitted speed"
7. Select the desired speed.

Uphill grades

General information

Trailer towing is permitted up to gradients of 12 %.

If higher trailer loads are approved at a later point in time, the gradient limit is 8%.

Driving off on uphill grades

The parking brake is automatically released when the accelerator pedal is activated.

In order to prevent rolling back when driving off, use the parking brake.

1. Pull and release the switch shortly before starting. Press and release the

   The parking brake is set.
2. Step on the accelerator pedal sufficiently to drive off.

Hills

A car-trailer combination has the tendency to swing more readily on hills.

Manually downshift to the next-lowest gear before driving on a hill and drive downhill slowly.

Trailer Assistant

Principle

The Trailer Assistant helps when reversing with a trailer.

When reversing, the steering of the front wheels is determined by entering the kink angle and adopted by the system.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

General information

The kink angle determines the angle between the vehicle and trailer and thus the desired direction of travel of the car-trailer combination in reverse.

With the Trailer Assistant, the vehicle-trailer combination is not guided by the steering wheel when reversing, but by continuously entering and correcting the articulation angle on the control display.

The system takes over the steering. The driver must control the speed using the accelerator and brake pedals.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Additional information:

Parking assistance systems, refer to page 242.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

The system can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirements

- ▷ A trailer is attached and connected.
- ▷ The system is taught for the trailer to be used.
- ▷ Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, trailer towing is activated.
- ▷ The Rear View Camera is clean and clear.
- ▷ Vehicles with removable trailer hitch: Use suitable accessories approved by the vehicle manufacturer.

Teaching the Trailer Assistant

The teach-in process for the Trailer Assistant must be performed again whenever a trailer is hitched. The Trailer Assistant will begin the teach-in process automatically once it is electrically connected to the vehicle or, depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, trailer towing has been activated on the control display.

If the Trailer Assistant is started on the control display during the teach-in process, a message may appear stating that the teach-in process has not completed yet. The message prompts the driver to drive forward at low speed while also steering.

Once the teach-in process is complete, the desired parking maneuver can be performed with the Trailer Assistant.

Turning operating tips on/off

The Trailer Assistant operating tips provide specific information for operating the system properly. The operating tips can be turned on/off.

1. Select the BMW ID or driver profile.
2. ⊞ Apps menu
3. "Vehicle"
4. "Driving settings"
5. "Driver Assistance"
6. "Parking"
7. "Operating tips for Trailer Assistant"

Reversing with the Trailer Assistant

1. Attach and connect a trailer to the vehicle or, depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, activate trailer towing on the control display.

   Starts the teach-in process for the Trailer Assistant.

2. With the vehicle at a standstill, press button or engage reverse gear.

   Parking assistance systems displays are shown on the control display.

3. "Start Trailer Assistant"

   The control display shows the Rear View Camera image with a view of the tow bar and a stylized view of the vehicle with trailer.

   If the teach-in process for the Trailer Assistant has not completed yet, follow the instructions on the control display.

4. Confirm or turn off operating tips on the control display as necessary.
5. If necessary, shift into reverse gear.
6. Set the desired kink angle.

   Follow the instructions on the control display.

7. Take your hands off the steering wheel and carefully drive in reverse with the accelerator pedal and the brake.

   Green: the system takes control of steering.

   When driving in reverse, observe the vehicle's surroundings.

   In case of obstacles, stop immediately and take over steering.

8. If necessary, adjust the kink angle while driving to correct the direction.
9. Engage selector lever position P when finished maneuvering.

Canceling the Trailer Assistant manually

Maneuvering of the car-trailer combination can be aborted manually:

"Cancel"

Canceling the Trailer Assistant automatically

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

- When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- When shifting from reverse gear to selector lever position D, the Trailer Assistant switches to standby mode.

  If reverse gear is engaged again after a short distance, the function is active again.
- During activation or intervention by driver assistance systems.
- When the view on the control display is overlaid with messages.
- In case of a slippery surface.
- When the vehicle is rolling such as on a slope.
- In case of changed ambient conditions.
- If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph/10 km/h.

Turning trailer protection braking on/off

Whenever the Trailer Assistant is canceled, trailer protection braking is applied and the vehicle is secured at a standstill. As a result, the car-trailer combination cannot continue to roll uncontrolled. Trailer protection braking can be switched on or off.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking"
6. "Trailer protection braking"

System limits

General information

The maximum speed is limited to approx. 6 mph/10 km/h.

A warning is given at a speed of approx. 4 mph/7 km/h.

If the maximum speed is exceeded, the function is interrupted.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- Trailers with fifthwheel steering are not supported.
- Accessories on tow bar, e.g., a rear bicycle rack.
- Tow bars and trailers with unusual shapes.
- Unsuitable removable trailer hitches.
- Rear View Camera dirty or covered.

  Additional information:

  Cameras, refer to page 35.

Trailer stabilization control

Principle

Trailer stabilization control helps by absorbing the swinging movements of the trailer.

The system detects swinging and automatically brakes the vehicle quickly in order to leave

the critical speed range and stabilize the car-trailer combination.

General information

If the trailer power socket is occupied but a trailer has not been hitched, this system can also activate in extreme driving situations, e.g., when using a rear bicycle rack with lighting.

Functional requirement

- ▷ A trailer is attached.
- ▷ The trailer power socket is occupied.
- ▷ Vehicle speed must be more than approx. 40 mph/65 km/h.

System limits

The system cannot intervene or not intervene in time in the following situations, for instance:

- ▷ If a trailer jackknifes suddenly, for instance on slippery roads or loose surfaces.
- ▷ If a trailer with a high center of gravity tilts, before swinging is detected.
- ▷ If Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or has malfunctioned.
- ▷ When the power consumption of a trailer is too low, for instance due to tail lights with LED technology, to be detected by the system.

Brake Controller

Trailer brakes only work if a brake controller is installed.

Trailer brakes will not work without the brake controller.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having the brake controller installed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Incorrect installation or pinning of the connector can cause the trailer lights and brake system to fail.

For information on installing a brake controller, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Rear carriers

Principle

Rear carriers, e.g., rear bicycle racks, are devices that are mounted on the vehicle in order to help transport cargo.

General information

Rear carriers recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle are available as optional accessories.

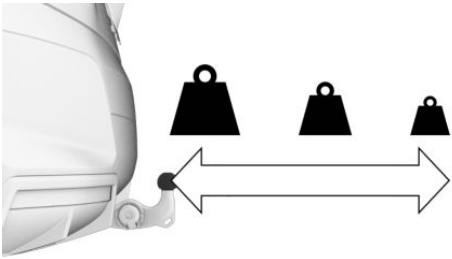
Rear bicycle racks for a maximum of three bicycles can be used.

Only use rear carriers that are mounted directly on the mount for the trailer hitch.

Installation

Follow the assembly instructions for the rear carrier.

Loading



The permissible gross weight of the loaded rear carrier depends on how far its center of gravity is from the ball head.

- ▷ If the center of gravity is up to 11.8 inches/30 cm from the ball head, the gross

weight of the rear carrier must not exceed 165 lbs/75 kg.

- If the center of gravity is 23.5 inches/60 cm from the ball head, the gross weight of the rear carrier must not exceed 77 lbs/35 kg.
- Stow heavy cargo as close as possible to the ball head.
- Fasten cargo securely to the rear carrier, making sure it will not slip.

Before driving

Before starting your trip, make sure that the tail lights on the rear carrier are working.

The maximum power rating of the rear carrier tail lights should not exceed the maximum power rating of the trailer tail lights.

To prevent functional limitations and malfunctions affecting driver assistance systems, activate trailer towing.

Additional information:

- Electrical consumption, refer to page 327.
- Using a trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 329.

Driving with a rear carrier

When loaded, rear carriers move the vehicle's center of gravity, which affects how the vehicle handles and steers.

When loading and driving, note the following:

- Do not exceed the approved axle weight and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- Drive cautiously and avoid driving off and braking with jerky movements or fast cornering.

Saving fuel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Reducing fuel consumption

Principle

The vehicle contains advanced technologies for the reduction of consumption and emission values.

There are some actions you can take to change your fuel consumption and environmental impact:

- ▷ Remove unnecessary cargo from the vehicle.
- ▷ Remove add-on parts, e.g., a rear carrier, after use.
- ▷ Close the windows and glass sunroof while driving.
- ▷ Check the tire pressure regularly and increase it as necessary.
- ▷ Shut off the engine if the vehicle is to remain stationary for a longer period.
- ▷ Practice anticipatory driving and let the vehicle coast more often.
- ▷ Deactivate functions that are not required, e.g., rear window heating.
- ▷ Have the vehicle serviced regularly.

Coasting

Principle

The drive system allows the vehicle to roll freely with minimal deceleration in selector lever position D. This driving condition is referred to as coasting. This reduces fuel consumption.

Vehicles with mild hybrid technology do not consume fuel when coasting.

General information

An anticipatory driving style helps the driver to use the function often and supports the efficient effect of coasting.

Coasting is automatically adapted to the respective driving situation.

Depending on vehicle equipment, “coasting” is displayed in the Live Vehicle menu as “Efficient coasting”.

Additional information:

Current driving condition, refer to page 154.

Exemplary driving situations

If you can travel a certain distance without any foreseeable need to brake, it is beneficial to coast.

The following exemplary driving situations may be suitable:

- ▷ Coasting on a straight downhill gradient with no obstacles.
- ▷ Coasting on a distance without obstacles.

Avoid late or strong braking.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Selector lever position D is engaged.
- ▷ The brake has not been applied.

- ▷ The accelerator pedal has not been pressed.
- ▷ The ECO PRO drive mode is activated.
- ▷ Dynamic Stability Control is activated.

The function is available in the speed range from approx. 16 mph/25 km/h to 100 mph/160 km/h.

Operation via shift paddles

Principle

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the Coasting mode can be influenced with the shift paddles.

Activating/deactivating coasting via shift paddles

To activate coasting mode, pull the right shift paddle and hold it briefly.

To deactivate coasting mode, pull the left shift paddle.

System limits

Coasting cannot be used, or can only be used to a limited extent, in the following situations:

- ▷ While Active Cruise Control is active.
- ▷ If driver assistance system sensors are defective, dirty, or covered.

Driving modes for efficient driving

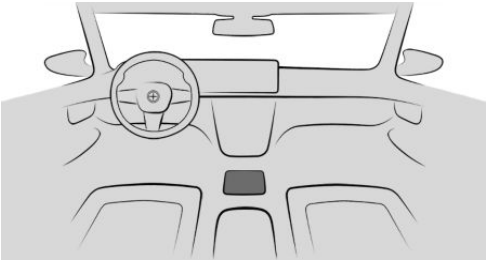
Principle

Under certain conditions, in selector lever position D, the combustion engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission. The vehicle continues traveling in Neutral to reduce consumption. The D selector lever position remains engaged.

The extended range achieved is displayed on the instrument cluster as a bonus range.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



ECO PRO ECO PRO

Configuring ECO PRO

1. ECO PRO Press the button.
2. Select the desired setting.

Resetting the settings

1. ECO PRO Press the button.
2. "Settings"
3. "Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD"

Efficiency trainer

Principle

The system provides assistance for an anticipatory and comfort-oriented driving style. For this purpose, map information and sensor data is used to analyze the current driving situation such as upcoming speed limits and vehicles driving ahead. Based on this information, the driver receives notices for an efficient driving style early on. The efficiency of the driving style is evaluated in the control display and shown in three categories.

General information

The system has different displays to support the driver with an efficient driving style.

Functional requirements

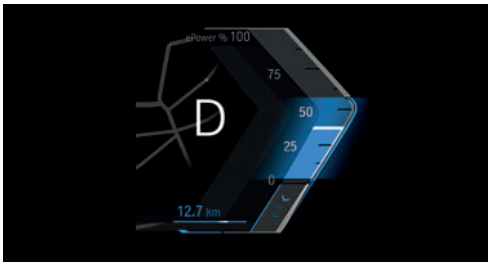
- ▷ Selector lever position D is engaged.
- ▷ ECO PRO drive mode is activated.

Display

Power gauge

When ECO PRO driving mode is activated, the display switches to a special configuration.

Depending on the equipment, some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up display.



The efficient range of the power gauge is colored blue. Additionally, the bonus range will be displayed.

The efficient range is adjusted depending on the driving situation.

If the power gauge moves within the blue range, the current driving style is efficient. The display will change to gray if the driving style is inefficient.

Bonus range

A modified driving style helps you extend your driving range.

The range extension is displayed as the bonus range in the instrument cluster.

If the bonus range is shown in gray or is hidden, the current driving style is inefficient.

The display turns blue as soon as all conditions for efficient driving are met.

The intervals for resetting the bonus range depend on the settings of the trip data.

Display in case of inefficient driving style

When driving above the efficient range, an arrow will be displayed.

For instance, this is displayed for the following situations:

- ▷ Excessive acceleration.
- ▷ Excessive speed.

In addition, a notice to coast in advance is displayed.

System limits

For example, the function is not available in the following situations:

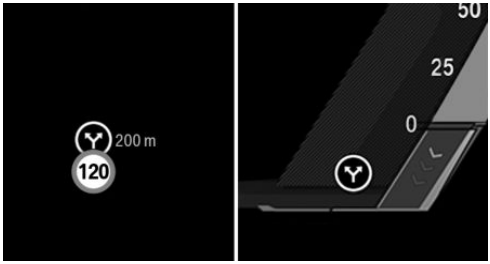
- ▷ While Active Cruise Control is active.
- ▷ With trailer towing.

Anticipatory driving style

Principle

The display informs the driver about delays ahead such as speed limit reductions or roundabouts even when they are not yet visible. The situation-specific information and distance to the route section ahead is shown above the current speed limit in the instrument cluster. If an alert is received, the vehicle's speed and its consumption can be reduced using the appropriate accelerator pedal position and coasting until the route section is reached.

Display in the instrument cluster



The note about a route section ahead is made as recommendation to let the vehicle coast to a halt.

An icon such as a turn indicates the detected section of road:

Icon	Upcoming route section
	Turn.
	Speed limit or city limits.
	Roundabout.
	Exit on roads outside of towns and cities.
	Curve.

System limits

The display of the upcoming route sections is not available in the following situations, for instance:

- With temporary and variable speed limits such as in construction areas.
- In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- With country-specific restrictions on map based route sections.

Efficiency evaluation

General information

The efficiency of the driving style, e.g., acceleration, is evaluated on the control display and shown in three categories. The current trip is analyzed.

Functional requirement

This function is available in ECO PRO driving mode.

Calling up the efficiency evaluation

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Live Vehicle"

Additional information:

Live Vehicle, refer to page 136.

Display on the control display

The display of the efficiency analysis shows the efficiency of the driving style.

The more efficient the driving style, the larger the area that is displayed in color and the faster the bonus range increases.

In contrast, a reduced area will be displayed with an inefficient driving style.

Refueling

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Follow the following when refueling

General information

Follow the fuel recommendation prior to refueling.

When refueling, hook the fuel pump nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Lifting up the fuel pump nozzle while refueling causes:

- Premature switching off.
- Reduced return of the fuel vapors.

The fuel tank is full when the fuel pump nozzle clicks off the first time.

Make sure that the fuel cap is closed properly after refueling, otherwise the emissions warning light may illuminate.

Follow safety regulations posted at the filling station.

Additional information:

Fuel quality, refer to page 376.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a range below 30 miles/50 km, the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of property damage. Refuel promptly.

NOTICE

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid overfilling.

Fuel filler cap

General information

If the fuel filler cap is not fitted correctly, the emissions indicator light illuminates on the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Indicator/warning lights, refer to page 139.

Safety information

Warning

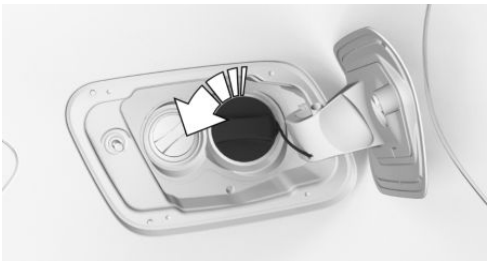
The fuel filler cap's retaining strap can become pinched and crushed when the cap is closed. It will then not be possible to close the fuel filler cap correctly. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the

retaining strap does not become pinched or crushed when closing the fuel filler cap.

Opening

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.

2. Open the fuel filler cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel filler cap in the bracket on the fuel filler flap.

Closing

1. Fit the fuel filler cap and turn it clockwise until it clicks audibly.
2. Press on the fuel filler flap until it engages.

Emergency unlocking

It may be necessary in certain situations to unlock the fuel filler flap manually, for instance with an electrical malfunction.

In this case, have the fuel filler flap unlocked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheels and tires

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Tire pressure

General information

The tire condition and tire pressure influence the following:

- The service life of the tires.
- Driving safety.
- Driving comfort.
- Fuel consumption.

Safety information

Warning

A tire with too little or no tire inflation pressure may heat up significantly and sustain damage. This will have a negative impact on aspects of handling such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Regularly check the tire pressure, and correct it as needed, for instance twice a month and before a long trip.

Tire pressure specifications

In the tire pressure table

The tire pressure table contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for given tire sizes at ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure specifications apply to the tire sizes approved by the vehicle manufacturer for the corresponding vehicle types.

To identify the correct tire pressure, please note the following:

- Tire sizes of the vehicle.
- Maximum speed for driving.

On the control display

The current tire inflation pressure values and the intended tire inflation pressure values for the mounted tires can be displayed on the control display.

To ensure that they are displayed correctly, the tire sizes must be stored in the system and must have been set for the mounted tires.

The current tire inflation pressure value is located on each tire.

The reference tire inflation pressure value is located in the lower area of the control display.

Checking the tire pressure

General information

The tires heat up while driving. The tire pressure increases with the tire temperature.

Tires have a natural, consistent tire pressure loss.

The displays of inflation devices may underread by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

Checking via tire inflation pressure specifications in tire pressure table

1. Determine the intended tire inflation pressure levels for the mounted tires.
2. Check the tire pressure in all four tires, e.g., using a pressure gage.

3. Correct the tire pressure if the current tire pressure deviates from the target tire pressure.
4. Make sure that all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table only relate to cold tires or tires at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure levels when the tires are cold, i.e.:

▷ A distance traveled of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.

▷ If the vehicle has not moved again for at least two hours after a trip.

If equipped with an emergency wheel: check the tire pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly and correct if necessary.

Checking using the tire inflation pressure specifications on the control display

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
5. Check whether the current tire inflation pressure levels deviate from the intended tire pressure value.
6. Correct the tire pressure if the current tire pressure deviates from the target tire pressure.

The display of current tire pressure on the control display may be restricted when the vehicle is stationary. After a short drive, the tire pressure is updated.

After correcting the tire pressure

If equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitor, the corrected tire pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the tire settings are correct. With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the control display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM).

If equipped with a flat tire monitor, reinitialize the flat tire monitor.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

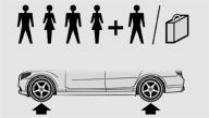
For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, follow the tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire pressure table and adjust as necessary.

The tire inflation pressure specifications can also be found on the tire pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

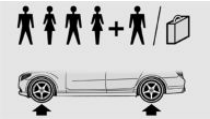
Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

Tire pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

X5 sDrive40i, X5 xDrive40i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
265/50 R 19 110 H XL A/S 275/45 R 20 110 H XL A/S 265/50 R 19 110 H XL M+S 275/45 R 20 110 V XL M+S	2.3 / 33	2.8 / 41
Front: 275/45 R 20 110 Y XL	2.3 / 33	-
Rear: 305/40 R 20 112 Y XL	-	2.7 / 39
Front: 275/40 R 21 107 Y XL	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 315/35 R 21 111 Y XL	-	2.9 / 42
Front: 275/35 R 22 104 Y XL	2.8 / 41	-
Rear: 315/30 R 22 107 Y XL	-	3.1 / 45
Front: 275/40 R 21 107 V XL M+S	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 315/35 R 21 111 V XL M+S	-	2.9 / 42
Emergency wheel: T 155/80 R 19 114 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

X5 M60i xDrive

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
275/45 R 20 110 H XL A/S 275/45 R 20 110 H XL M+S	2.4 / 35	2.9 / 42
Front: 275/40 R 21 107 Y XL	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 315/35 R 21 111 Y XL	-	2.9 / 42
Front: 275/35 R 22 104 Y XL	2.8 / 41	-
Rear: 315/30 R 22 107 Y XL	-	3.3 / 48
Front: 275/40 R 21 107 V XL M+S	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 315/35 R 21 111 V XL M+S	-	2.9 / 42
Emergency wheel: T 155/80 R 19 114 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

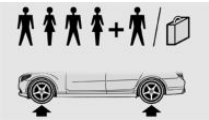
Tire pressures over 100 mph/160 km/h

Warning

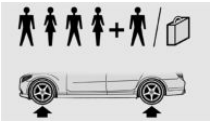
When driving at speeds greater than 100 mph/160 km/h, incorrect tire pressures can negatively affect vehicle handling, e.g., safety or comfort while driving. The tires can become damaged, which may cause an accident. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. To drive at maximum speeds, note the specified tire pressure for driving above 100 mph/160 km/h in the tire inflation pressure table, and adjust as necessary.

Tire pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

X5 xDrive40i, X5 sDrive40i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
265/50 R 19 110 H XL A/S 275/45 R 20 110 H XL A/S 265/50 R 19 110 H XL M+S	2.5 / 36	3.0 / 44
275/45 R 20 110 V XL M+S	2.8 / 41	3.3 / 48
Front: 275/45 R 20 110 Y XL	2.8 / 41	-
Rear: 305/40 R 20 112 Y XL	-	3.1 / 45
Front: 275/40 R 21 107 Y XL	2.8 / 41	-
Rear: 315/35 R 21 111 Y XL	-	3.1 / 45
Front: 275/35 R 22 104 Y XL	3.1 / 45	-
Rear: 315/30 R 22 107 Y XL	-	3.4 / 49
Front: 275/40 R 21 107 V XL M+S	3.1 / 45	-
Rear: 315/35 R 21 111 V XL M+S	-	3.4 / 49
Emergency wheel:	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
T 155/80 R 19 114 M	4.2 / 60	

X5 M60i xDrive

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
275/45 R 20 110 H XL A/S 275/45 R 20 110 H XL M+S	2.7 / 39	3.2 / 46
Front: 275/40 R 21 107 Y XL	2.9 / 42	-
Rear: 315/35 R 21 111 Y XL	-	3.3 / 48
Front: 275/35 R 22 104 Y XL	3.2 / 46	-

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Rear: 315/30 R 22 107 Y XL	-	3.4 / 49
Front: 275/40 R 21 107 V XL M+S	3.1 / 45	-
Rear: 315/35 R 21 111 V XL M+S	-	3.4 / 49
Emergency wheel:	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
T 155/80 R 19 114 M	4.2 / 60	

Tire marking

Tire size

245/45 R 18 96 Y

245: nominal width in mm

45: tire aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

18: rim diameter in inches

96: load index

Y: speed code letter

ZR tires: reinforced radial tire for speeds exceeding 150 mph/240 km/h

Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.

Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver door B-pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

Speed letter

Designation	Maximum speed
Q	up to 100 mph/160 km/h
R	up to 106 mph/170 km/h
S	up to 112 mph/180 km/h
T	up to 118 mph/190 km/h
H	up to 131 mph/210 km/h
V	up to 150 mph/240 km/h
W	up to 167 mph/270 km/h
Y	up to 186 mph/300 km/h
(Y)	above 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 0125

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

0125: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

Recommendation

Regardless of the tire tread depth, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Production date

The tire's production date is found on the tire sidewall.

Designation	Production date
DOT ... 0125	1st week 2025

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure. There is a risk of accident, injury and a risk of damage to property.

Runflat tires

Run-flat tires, refer to page 351, are indicated by a circular icon containing the letters “RSC” on the tire sidewall.

M+S

Winter tires, as well as all-season tires with better winter performance than summer tires, are indicated by the letters “M+S” on the tire sidewall.

Tire tread depth

Safety information

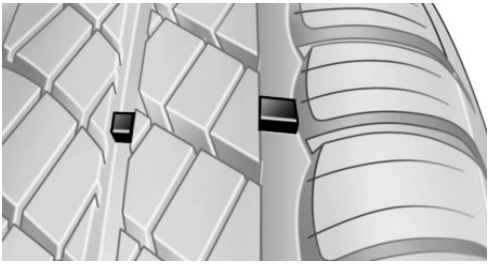
Warning

If the tire tread depth is too low, driving safety may be impaired in critical situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Follow applicable legal requirements for minimum tread depth.

Minimum tread depth

Generally speaking, the legal minimum tread depths may differ for summer tires, winter tires, and all-season tires. To ensure optimum handling, e.g., in wet or snowy conditions, it may be useful to change a tire before it reaches the legal minimum tread depth. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wear indicators



The tire manufacturer's wear indicators are distributed around the tire circumference and have a height of at least 0.06 in/1.6 mm.

The wear indicators serve as indicators for the wear of the tire tread.

The locations of the wear indicators are indicated by the letters "TWI" (tread wear indicator) on the tire sidewall.

Tire damage

General information

Check your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Indications of tire damage or another vehicle malfunction:

- ▷ Unusual vibrations.
- ▷ Unusual tire or running noises.
- ▷ Unusual vehicle handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.
- ▷ Uneven wear pattern, e.g., increased wear in the area of the tire shoulder.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for instance:

- ▷ Driving over curbs.
- ▷ Road damage.
- ▷ Tire pressure too low.
- ▷ Vehicle overloading.
- ▷ Incorrect tire storage.

Safety information

Warning

Damaged tires can lose tire pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. Drive carefully to an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have the vehicle towed or transported as needed. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.

Warning

The wheels, tires and chassis components can become damaged when driving over curbs, road damage, or other obstacles. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. If possible, avoid driving over curbs, road damage or other obstacles, or drive over them slowly and carefully.

Exchanging wheels and tires

Mounting and wheel balancing

Have the wheel mounted and balanced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Suitable wheels and tires

General information

Only certain wheel/tire combinations are suitable depending on vehicle and equipment. The vehicle manufacturer determines wheel/tire combinations on the basis of the following criteria:

- ▷ Tire size, e.g., tire width, aspect ratio.
- ▷ Wheel size, e.g., rim diameter, offset.

For more information on wheel/tire combinations and special equipment, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Wheels and tires that are not suitable for the vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you use only wheels and tires that have been recommended for the vehicle type.

Warning

Mounted steel wheels can cause technical problems, for instance unexpected loosening of the lug bolts and damage to the brake disks. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not mount steel wheels.

Warning

Wheel/tire combinations that are not suitable for the vehicle can affect vehicle handling and a number of system functions, e.g.,the Antilock Braking System or Dynamic Stability Control. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for the vehicle type. Following tire damage, have the original wheel/tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Warning

Unsuitable wheel studs such as single-section wheel studs may loosen or come off. The wheel may come loose while driving. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Use only two-section wheel studs that

are recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the respective wheel type.

Recommended tire brands

Tire types are developed for each vehicle and optimized specifically for the individual requirements of that vehicle, e.g.:

- Vehicle handling.
- Comfort.
- Noise characteristics.

Specially developed tires are indicated by a star on the tire sidewall. After replacing wheels and tires, the vehicle manufacturer recommends using star-marked tires again. The vehicle manufacturer recommends using tires of the same make and tire tread.

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand new.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires

Warning

Retreated tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The manufacturer of the vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

Maximum speed

Safety information

Warning

If the maximum permissible speed of your mounted tires is exceeded, the tires may be damaged. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of the tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the vehicle's maximum speed is higher than the maximum permissible speed of the winter tires, place a sign indicating the maximum permissible speed in the driver's field of vision. The info label is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Winter tires

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Winter tires are indicated by the mountain/snowflake icon and the letters "M+S" on the tire sidewall.

So-called all-season tires with M+S marking but without mountain and snowflake icon have better winter properties than summer tires.

As a rule, all-season tires do not perform the same as winter tires.

Changing runflat tires

When changing from runflat tires to standard tires, it must be ensured that the vehicle contains an emergency wheel or tire mobility kit. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheel change between axles

Warning

A wheel change between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles can cause damage to the tires and the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not rotate the tires between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles.

Different abrasion patterns can occur on the front and rear axles depending on individual driving conditions. The tires can be rotated in pairs between the axles to achieve even abrasion. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. After changing, check the tire pressure and correct, if needed.

Storing tires

Tire pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tire pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.

Storage

- Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.
- Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease, and solvents.
- Do not leave the tires in plastic bags.
- Remove dirt from wheels or tires.

Runflat tires

Principle

Runflat tires permit continued driving under limited conditions even in the event of a complete tire pressure loss.

General information

The wheels consist of tires that are self-supporting to a limited degree and may also include special rims.

The reinforced tire sidewall makes it possible to continue driving to a limited extent if a tire loses pressure.

Follow the instructions for continued driving with a flat tire.

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a runflat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced directional stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Warning

Heavy trailers can start swinging when continuing to drive with a flat tire. There is a risk of accidents and risk of property damage. Do not exceed a speed of 35 mph/60 km/h when driving with a trailer and a flat tire. If the trailer swings or snakes, brake immediately

and apply necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

Warning

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire. Tire components may come loose. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Reduce your speed and stop. Do not continue driving. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Identification

Runflat tires are indicated by a circular icon containing the letters "RSC" on the tire sidewall.

Snow chains

Safety information

Warning

Mounting snow chains on unsuitable tires can cause the snow chains to come into contact with vehicle parts. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only fit snow chains on tires recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for use with snow chains.

Warning

Insufficiently tight snow chains may damage tires and vehicle components. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the use of fine-link snow chains. Certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

For information on suitable snow chains, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use

Use is only permitted in pairs on rear wheels equipped with the tires of the following wheel/tire sizes:

Tire size	Wheel size	Rim offset (IS)
265/50 R19	9.0J x 19	38
275/45 R20	9.0J x 20	35

Information on the wheel size and rim offset is located on the inside of the wheel.

The list can also include wheel/tire sizes that are only suitable for certain models.

Information on wheels and tires approved for the vehicle can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Follow the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

If vehicle is equipped with Tire Pressure Monitor: When using snow chains, do not reset the

Tire Pressure Monitor, otherwise, incorrect values may be displayed.

If vehicle is equipped with flat tire monitor: When using snow chains, do not initialize the flat tire monitor, otherwise, incorrect values may be displayed.

When driving with snow chains, activate the Dynamic Traction Control briefly to optimize the drive power.

Maximum speed with snow chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

Rear-wheel steering during operation with snow chains

General information

In order to guarantee free movement of the wheels when operating with snow chains, rear-wheel steering must be turned off when snow chains are mounted.

Rear-wheel steering is switched on again automatically when the permitted maximum speed for snow chains is exceeded: 30 mph/50 km/h.

The setting for equipped snow chains can only be used below 30 mph/50 km/h.

Safety information

Warning

When rear-wheel steering is switched on and snow chains are mounted, there can be contact between snow chains and the body. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. With mounted snow chains, switch off the rear-wheel steering.

Switching off rear-wheel steering

The rear-wheel steering is switched off by specifying that snow chains are installed.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Drivetrain and chassis"
5. "Snow chains"

Tire Pressure Monitor

Principle

The Tire Pressure Monitor monitors the tire pressure and issues a warning if the tire pressure has dropped.

General information

Sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and tire temperature.

Depending on the tires detected or registered, the system displays the specified nominal pressures on the control display and compares them with the current tire pressures.

If tires are being used that are not specified in the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle such as tires with special approval, the system needs to be actively reset. The system will then take over the current tire pressures as the target pressures.

When operating the system, also note the information found in the Tire inflation pressure chapter.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 342.

Safety information

Warning

The display of the target pressures is not a substitute for the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle. Incorrect entries in the tire settings can lead to incorrect target tire inflation pressure values. In this case, it cannot be guaranteed that the notification of a tire pressure loss will be reliable. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the sizes of your mounted tires are displayed correctly and match the information on the tires and the tire inflation pressure specifications on the vehicle.

Functional requirements

The following prerequisites must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable notification of a tire pressure loss is not assured:

- After each tire or wheel change, the system detects and updates the mounted tires on the control display and displays them after a short trip.

  Enter the information about the mounted tires in the tire settings when the system does not automatically detect the tires.
- The Tire Pressure Monitor does not activate until after driving for a few minutes:
  - After a tire or wheel change.
  - After a reset, when using tires with special approval.
  - After changing the tire setting.
- For tires with special approval:
  - After a tire or wheel change, a reset was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
  - After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, a reset was performed.
- Wheels with air pressure sensor.

Tire settings

General information

The information about the mounted tires can be entered in the tire settings if the system does not automatically detect the tires.

The tire sizes of the mounted tires can be gathered from the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle or directly on the tires.

The tire details do not need to be re-entered when the tire pressure is corrected.

For summer and winter tires, the tire details entered last are stored. After a tire or wheel change, the settings of the tire sets used last can be selected.

Adjusting the tires

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
5. "Tire settings"
6. "Tire selection"
7. "Manual"
8. "Tire type"
9. Select the tire size for the rear axle.

   For tires with special approval:

   "Other tires"
10. Select the maximum speed to be driven.
11. "Save tire settings"

The measurement of the current tire inflation pressure is started. The measurement progress is displayed.

Status display

Current status

The system status can be displayed on the control display, e.g., whether or not the system is active.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Tire Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Current tire pressure

The current tire pressure is displayed for each tire.

The current tire inflation pressures may change while driving or depending on the outside temperature.

Current tire temperature

The current tire temperatures are displayed depending on the model.

The current tire temperatures may change while driving or due to the outside temperature.

Nominal pressure

The nominal pressure for the tires on the front and rear axles is displayed.

The specified nominal pressures take the influence of driving and outside temperature on the tire temperature into account. The appropriate nominal pressure is always displayed, independent of the weather situation, tire temperatures and travel times.

The displayed nominal pressure may change and may differ from the tire inflation pressure details on the door pillar of the driver's door. The tire inflation pressure can thus be corrected to the value of the displayed target pressures.

The nominal pressure is immediately adjusted if the vehicle load state is changed in the tire settings.

Tire conditions

General information

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a text message on the control display.

Any existing messages may not be deleted if the nominal pressure is not reached after the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

All wheels green

- ▷ The system is active and bases warnings on the target pressures.
- ▷ For tires with special approval: the system is active and bases warnings on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

One to four yellow wheels

A flat tire or major tire pressure loss has occurred in the indicated tires.

Gray wheels

It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Possible causes:

- ▷ Malfunction.
- ▷ During tire inflation pressure measurement, after confirmation of the tire settings.
- ▷ For tires with special approval: a reset is performed for the system.

For tires with special approval: performing a reset

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"

4. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
5. Make sure that the tire settings are correct.

   Tire settings, refer to page 354.
6. Turn on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
7. "Perform reset"
8. Drive off.

The wheels are shown in gray and the tire pressure is reset.

After a travel time of several minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as the predefined tire inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically while driving.

Once the reset is complete, the wheels on the control display are shown in green. A message is displayed.

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue driving the reset resumes automatically.

Messages: for tires without special approval

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control may be turned on.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire inflation pressure impacts handling such as steering and braking response. Runflat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on runflat tires and continued driving with these tires.

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

An icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	Leak detected on the tire. Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, for instance when the tire has not been sufficiently inflated or in the case of a natural steady tire pressure loss.

Measure

Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a filling station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant tire pressure loss

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with standard tires or runflat tires.

   Runflat tires are indicated by a circular icon containing the letters "RSC" on the tire sidewall.

   Runflat tires, refer to page 351.
3. Read the description on what to do in case of a flat tire.

   Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 358.

Messages: for tires with special approval

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control may be turned on.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire inflation pressure impacts handling such as steering and braking response. Runflat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on runflat tires and continued driving with these tires.

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

An icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, e.g., the tire has not been sufficiently inflated. The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done. The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Perform a system reset.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a tire pressure loss. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a filling station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.
3. Perform a system reset.

If there is a significant tire pressure loss

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with standard tires or runflat tires.

   Runflat tires are indicated by a circular icon containing the letters "RSC" on the tire sidewall.

   Runflat tires, refer to page 351.
3. Read the description on what to do in case of a flat tire.

   Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 358.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Standard tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   Check the tire pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure display of a flat tire kit.

   For tires with special approval: when the tire pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

   If no tire damage can be identified, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

Using sealant, e.g., from the flat tire kit, may damage the air pressure sensor. Replace the air pressure sensor at the next opportunity.

Runflat tires

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a runflat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced directional stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Warning

Heavy trailers can start swinging when continuing to drive with a flat tire. There is a risk of accidents and risk of property damage. Do not exceed a speed of 35 mph/60 km/h when driving with a trailer and a flat tire. If the trailer swings or snakes, brake immediately and apply necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

Warning

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire. Tire components may come loose. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Reduce your speed and stop. Do not continue driving. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Follow the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

Possible driving distance with a flat tire

The possible driving distance which may be safely traveled varies depending on how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, outside temperature. The distance traveled may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, the possible distance traveled may be up to 50 miles/80 km.

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- ▷ Greater likelihood of skidding of the vehicle.
- ▷ Longer braking distances.
- ▷ Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

System limits

Temperature

The tire pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure.

The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again.

These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

Following a temperature-related warning, the target pressures are displayed on the control display again after a short distance.

Sudden tire pressure loss

The system cannot indicate sudden and serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

Failure performing a reset

For tires with special approval: this system will not function correctly if it has not been reset. For example, a flat tire is being reported despite the tires having the correct pressure.

Malfunction

Message

The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Measure

- ▷ A wheel without air pressure sensor is mounted: Have the wheels checked as needed.
- ▷ Fault caused by systems or devices with the same transmission frequency: The system automatically reactivates after leaving the area of the interference.
- ▷ For tires with special approval: the system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.
- ▷ If the Tire Pressure Monitor malfunctions: Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Declaration according to NHTSA/FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If the vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, the vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. The vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the

vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on the vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Flat tire monitor

Principle

The flat tire monitor detects a tire pressure loss while driving and issues a warning if the tire pressure has dropped.

General information

The system detects tire pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rate of rotation of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

Functional requirements

The following prerequisites must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable notification of a tire pressure loss is not assured:

- ▷ After a tire or wheel change, an initialization was carried out at the correct tire pressure.
- ▷ After the tire pressure was adjusted to a new value, an initialization was performed.

Status display

The current status of the flat tire monitor can be displayed, e.g., whether the flat tire monitor is active.

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "FLAT TIRE MONITOR"

The status is displayed.

Initialization required

An initialization must be performed in the following situations:

- ▷ After the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- ▷ After a tire or wheel change.

Performing initialization

When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "FLAT TIRE MONITOR"
5. Turn on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
6. "Perform reset"
7. Drive off.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving continues.

Messages

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is turned on, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire inflation pressure impacts handling such as steering and braking response. Runflat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on runflat tires and continued driving with these tires.

Indication of a flat tire

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with standard tires or runflat tires.

   Runflat tires are indicated by a circular icon containing the letters "RSC" on the tire sidewall.

   Runflat tires, refer to page 351.
3. Read the description on what to do in case of a flat tire.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Standard tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   To do this, check the tire pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure display of a flat tire kit.

   When the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the flat tire monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

   If tire damage cannot be identified, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

Runflat tires

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a runflat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced directional stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Warning

Heavy trailers can start swinging when continuing to drive with a flat tire. There is a risk of accidents and risk of property damage. Do not exceed a speed of 35 mph/60 km/h when driving with a trailer and a flat tire. If the trailer swings or snakes, brake immediately and apply necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

Warning

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire. Tire components may come loose. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Reduce your speed and stop. Do not continue driving. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Follow the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   When the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the flat tire monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible driving distance with a flat tire

The possible driving distance which may be safely traveled varies depending on how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, outside temperature. The distance traveled may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, the possible distance traveled may be up to 50 miles/80 km.

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- Greater likelihood of skidding of the vehicle.
- Longer braking distances.
- Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

System limits

The system may be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- A natural, even tire pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.
- Sudden and serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
- The system has not been initialized.
- When driving on a snowy or slippery road.
- Sporty driving style: slip on traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- When driving with snow chains.

Repairing a flat tire

Safety precautions

- Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from road traffic.
- Turn on the hazard warning system.
- Set the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and

make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.

▷ If necessary, set up the hazard triangle or hazard warning lights at an appropriate distance.

Tire repair set

Principle

The tire repair set is used to temporarily seal minor tire damage so that it is possible to continue driving.

General information

▷ The filled in tire sealant closes the damage from the inside when it hardens.

▷ Follow the instructions for using the tire repair set, which are provided on the compressor and sealant bottle.

▷ The tire repair set may be insufficient if the tire damage measures more than approx. 0.16 in/4 mm.

▷ Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated the tire. Remove foreign objects only when they are visibly protruding from the tire.

▷ The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

Overview

Storage

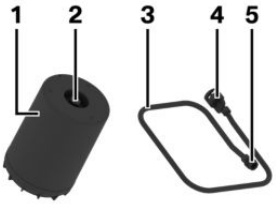
Depending on vehicle equipment, the tire repair set is stored as follows:

▷ In the cargo area under the cargo area floor.

▷ In the cargo area on the left or right side.

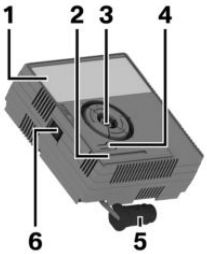
▷ In the cargo area behind a side trim panel.

Sealant bottle and filler hose



1 Sealant bottle
2 Sealant bottle outlet
3 Filler hose
4 Sealant bottle connection
5 Wheel valve connection

Compressor



1 Compressor
2 Tire pressure display
3 Sealant bottle mount
4 Pressure reducing valve button
5 Connector for socket
6 Power switch

Safety precautions

▷ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.

▷ Turn on the hazard warning system.

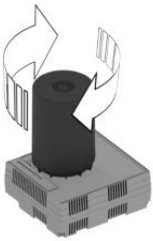
▷ Set the parking brake.

- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up the hazard triangle or hazard warning lights at an appropriate distance.
- Remove the warning label for the maximum permissible speed from the sealant bottle and attach it in the visible area in the vehicle interior.

Preparing the tire repair set

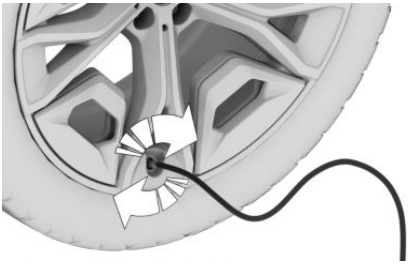
1. Insert the sealant bottle into the mount on the compressor housing.

2. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise by 90° to the stop.



3. Connect the filler hose to the outlet of the sealant bottle and turn clockwise by 90° to the stop.

4. Unscrew the valve cap on the wheel.
5. Screw the filler hose connector clockwise onto the valve.



6. With the compressor switched off, insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

Filling the tire with sealing compound

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

NOTICE

The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of property damage. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 minutes.

Filling the tire with sealing compound

1. With standby state or drive-ready state on, turn on the compressor on the device.

   Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill in the tire sealant and reach a tire pressure of 2.5 bar/36 psi.

   While the tire is being filled with tire sealant, the tire pressure can briefly reach approx. 6 bar/87 psi. Do not turn off the compressor in this phase.
2. Turn off the compressor on the device.

Checking the tire pressure

Read the tire pressure on the tire pressure display of the compressor. The tire pressure must be at least 2.5 bar/36 psi.

Tire pressure too high

If the tire pressure is too high, reduce the tire pressure with the pressure reducing valve on the compressor.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is not reached

Do not continue driving unless a minimum tire pressure of 2.5 bar/36 psi is reached. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached

1. Pull the connector out of the socket in the vehicle interior.
2. Disconnect the filler hose from the sealant bottle and the valve on the wheel.
3. Screw the valve cap onto the valve.
4. Stow the tire repair set in the cargo area.
5. Immediately drive 6 miles/10 km to ensure that the tire sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

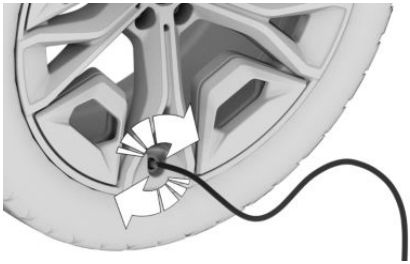
   Do not exceed the speed limit of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

   Tire sealant may spray from the damaged area during the initial wheel rotations.

Adjusting the tire pressure

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Connect the filler hose directly to the compressor, then turn it clockwise 90° in the mount until it engages audibly.
3. Unscrew the valve cap on the wheel.
4. Screw the filler hose connector onto the valve.



5. Insert the connector into the socket in the vehicle interior.
6. Read the tire pressure on the tire pressure display of the compressor.

   Do not continue driving unless a minimum tire pressure of 1.3 bar/19 psi is displayed. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
7. Correct the tire pressure to 2.5 bar/36 psi.
   - ▷ Increase tire pressure: with standby or drive-ready state turned on, turn on the

compressor and let it run for a maximum of 10 minutes.

▷ Reduce tire pressure: Press the pressure reducing valve button on the compressor.

Removing and stowing the tire repair set

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Pull the connector out of the socket in the vehicle interior.
3. Disconnect the filler hose from the compressor and the valve on the wheel.
4. Screw the valve cap onto the valve.
5. Stow the tire repair set together with the filler hose in the cargo area.

Continuing the trip

Continue driving immediately once finished with the tire repair set.

Do not exceed the speed limit of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Do not exceed a maximum distance traveled of 125 miles/200 km.

Re-initialize the flat tire monitor or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Replace the faulty tire and the sealant bottle from the tire repair set as soon as possible.

Additional information:

▷ Flat tire monitor, refer to page 361.

▷ Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 353.

System limits

If the tire cannot be made drivable, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With Tire Pressure Monitor: Using sealant can damage the air pressure sensor. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.

Emergency wheel

Principle

In the event of a flat tire, the emergency wheel can be used in place of the wheel with the faulty tire. The emergency wheel is only intended for temporary use until the faulty tire/wheel has been replaced.

General information

Mount one emergency wheel only.

Also check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

Safety information

Warning

The emergency wheel has particular dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, changed driving properties may occur, for instance reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distance, and changed self-steering properties in the limit range. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Overview

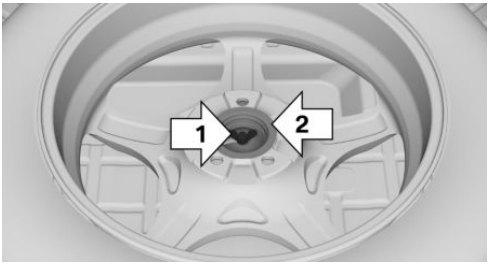
The emergency wheel and wheel change set are located in the cargo area under the cargo area floor.

Removing the emergency wheel

1. Depending on the vehicle equipment: press the button. The electric cargo cover travels up.
2. Fold up the cargo area floor.
3. Depending on the equipment version: remove the cross member. For this purpose,

remove the wingnuts on both sides of the cross member.

4. Remove the tool holder from the emergency wheel.
5. Unscrew the wing screw, arrow 1.



6. Remove the holder, arrow 2.
7. If necessary, open the lower tailgate.
8. Remove the emergency wheel from the storage tray.

Inserting the emergency wheel

1. Depending on the vehicle equipment: press the button. The electric cargo cover travels up.
2. Fold up the cargo area floor.
3. Open the lower tailgate.
4. Place the emergency wheel in the storage tray.
5. Position the holder.
6. Screw on and tighten the wing screw.
7. Insert the tool holder.
8. Depending on the vehicle equipment: insert the cross member and screw it tight with the wingnuts.
9. Push the cargo area floor downward.

Changing wheels/tires

General information

When using runflat tires or a flat tire kit, a wheel does not always need to be changed immediately in case of a breakdown when there is a tire pressure loss due to a flat tire.

If necessary, a suitable wheel change tool, e.g., a jack, is available as an accessory from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

The jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety precautions are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling if the jack tips over. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. When the vehicle is raised with the jack, do not lie under the vehicle and do not switch on the drive-ready state.

Warning

Placing supports, e.g., wooden blocks or similar, under the jack may reduce its ability to bear weight because of the limited height. The load-carrying capacity of the wooden blocks may be exceeded and the vehicle may tip over. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Do not place supports under the jack.

Warning

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use, e.g., changing from summer to winter tires. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury

and risk of property damage. Only use the jack to change an emergency or spare wheel in the event of a breakdown.

Warning

The jack may slip on soft, uneven, or slippery ground, e.g., snow, ice, tiles, etc. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, slip-resistant surface.

Warning

The jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the jack.

Warning

When the jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. When cranking up the jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel well.

Warning

A vehicle that is raised on a jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral effort on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

Using an impact wrench to loosen or tighten the wheel lock bolt can damage the wheel lock bolt. There is a risk of property damage. Only use a lug wrench to loosen and tighten the lug bolt lock.

Securing the vehicle against rolling away

General information

The vehicle manufacturer recommends to additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away when changing a wheel.

On a level surface

Place chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel being changed.

On a slight downhill gradient

Place wheel chocks or other suitable objects, e.g., rocks, under the wheels of the front axle and rear axle, opposite the rolling direction.

Lug bolt lock

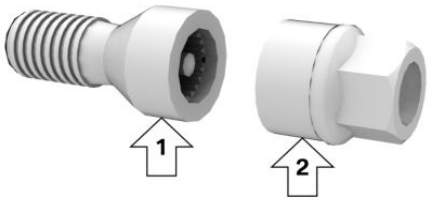
Principle

The wheel lug bolts have a special coding. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

Overview

Depending on vehicle equipment, store the lug bolt lock adapter as follows:

- ▷ In the cargo area under the cargo area floor.
- ▷ In the cargo area on the left or right side.
- ▷ In the cargo area behind a side trim panel.



- ▷ Lug lock bolt, arrow 1.
- ▷ Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt.
2. Unscrew the lug lock bolt.
3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

Screwing on

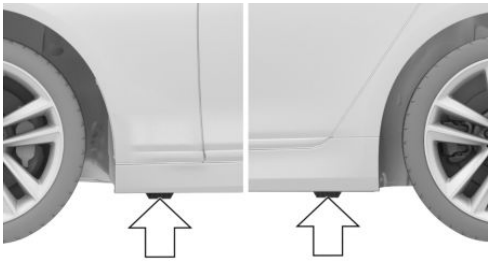
1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt. Turn the adapter until it fits onto the wheel lock bolt.
2. Screw on the lug lock bolt. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
3. Remove the adapter and stow it after screwing on the lug bolt.

Safety precautions

- ▷ Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from road traffic.
- ▷ Turn on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- ▷ Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.
- ▷ As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ If necessary, set up the hazard triangle or hazard warning lights at an appropriate distance.
- ▷ Depending on vehicle equipment, remove the wheel change set and, if necessary, the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- ▷ Secure the vehicle additionally against rolling away.
- ▷ Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.
- ▷ For air suspension: disable the air suspension level adjustment.

Two-axle ride level control, refer to page 273.

Jacking points



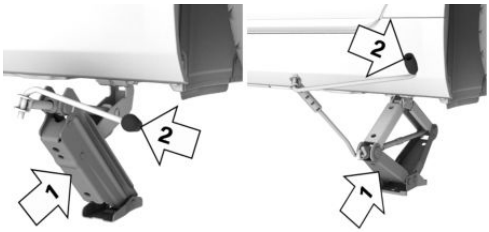
The jacking points are located at the indicated positions.

Jacking up the vehicle

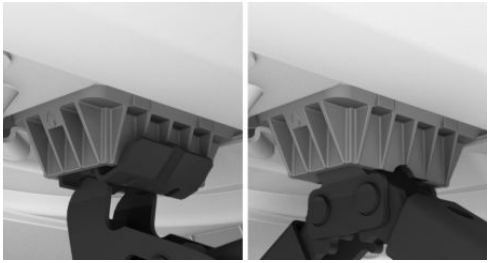
Warning

Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and do not change this position while using the jack.

1. Hold the jack with one hand, arrow 1. With the other hand, grip the jack crank handle or the lever, arrow 2.



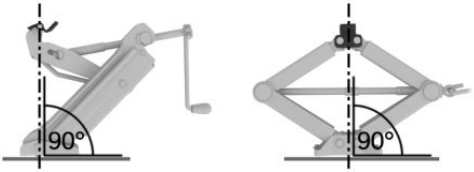
2. Insert the jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.



3. Extend the jack by turning the jack crank handle or lever clockwise.

4. Take your hand away from the jack as soon as the jack is under load and continue turning the jack crank handle or lever with one hand.

5. Make sure that the car jack foot extends vertically and is at a right angle beneath the jacking point.



6. Crank the vehicle up until the entire jack surface is on the ground and the corresponding wheel is lifted max. 1.2 inches/3 cm above the ground.

Mounting a wheel

Warning

Unsuitable wheel studs such as single-section wheel studs may loosen or come off. The wheel may come loose while driving. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Use only two-section wheel studs that are recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the respective wheel type.

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

   When non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.
4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
5. Turn the jack crank handle counterclockwise to retract the jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the jack and stow it securely.

After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the faulty wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.
3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Re-initialize the flat tire monitor or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.
5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Drive to the nearest authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, then have the damaged tire replaced.

Engine compartment

Vehicle features and options

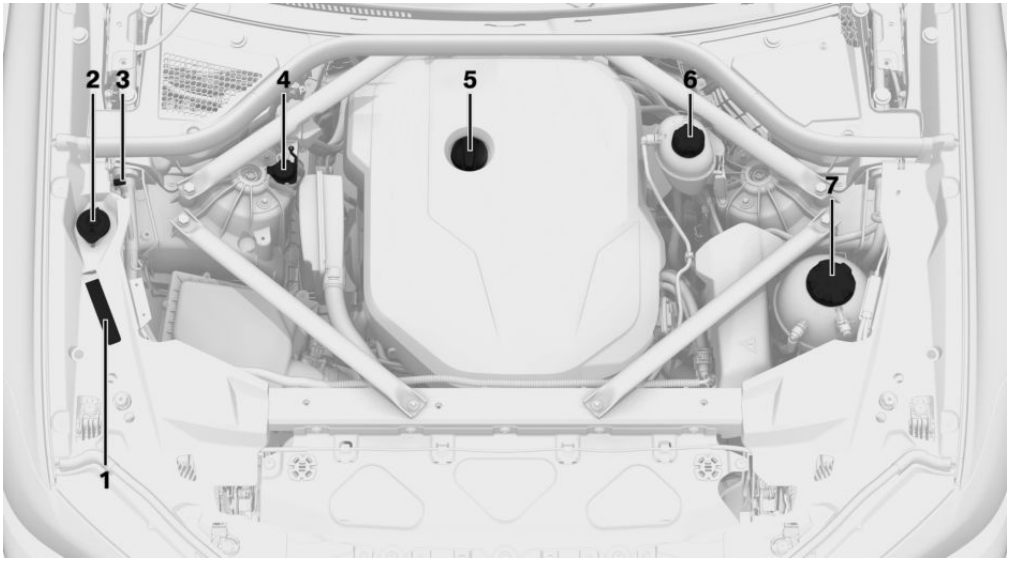
This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

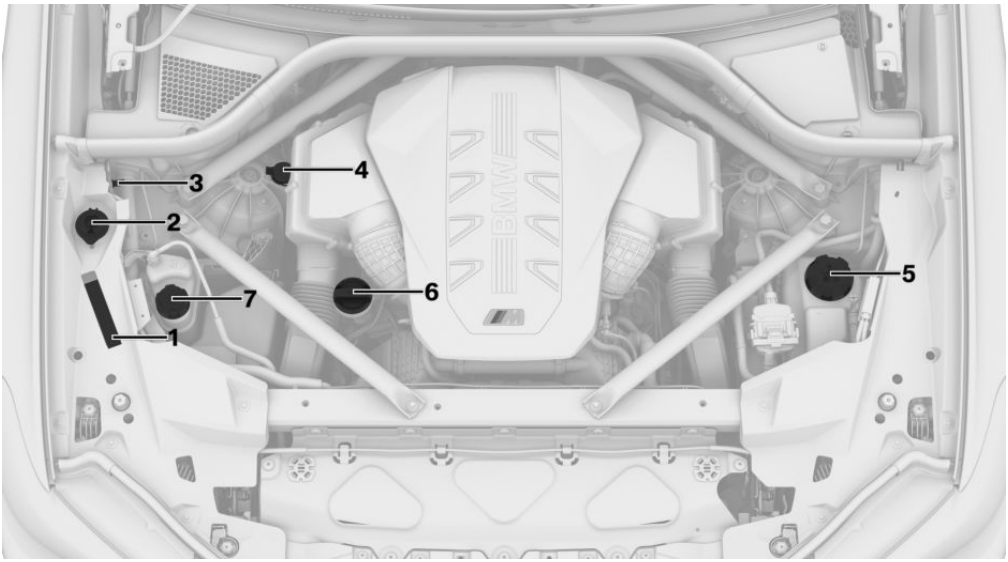
Overview

Engines with 4 or 6 cylinders



1 Vehicle identification number
2 Filler neck for washer fluid
3 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal
4 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal
5 Oil filler neck
6 Coolant reservoir, auxiliary cooling
7 Coolant reservoir, engine

8-cylinder engine



1 Vehicle identification number
2 Filler neck for washer fluid
3 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal
4 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal
5 Coolant reservoir, engine
6 Oil filler neck
7 Coolant reservoir, auxiliary cooling

Hood

Safety information

Warning

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage components and lead to a safety hazard. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The vehicle manufacturer recommends having work in the engine compartment performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, for instance the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

Warning

There are protruding parts, for instance locking hooks, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.

Warning

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the travel path of the hood is clear while opening and closing.

NOTICE

Folded-out wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

NOTICE

When the hood is closed, it must engage on both sides. Pressing again can damage the hood. There is a risk of property damage. Open the hood again and then close it energetically. Avoid pressing again.

Opening hood

1. Pull the lever, arrow 1.

   Hood is unlocked.

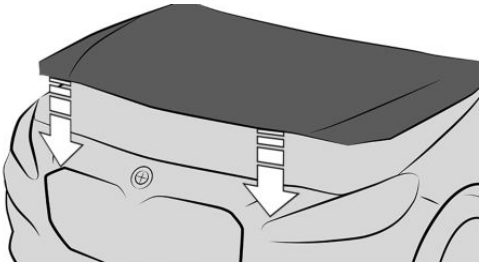
   An acoustic signal and a notice in the instrument cluster indicate that the hood is open.

2. Release the lever and pull it again, arrow 2.

   Hood can be opened.

3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.

Closing the hood



Energetically close the hood from approx. 20 in/50 cm.

The hood must engage on both sides.

Operating fluids

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Fuel recommendation

General information

Depending on the region, many filling stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter, for instance helps make a cold start easier.

Gasoline

General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 10 %, i.e., E10, may be used for refueling.

The power and consumption specifications refer to operating with RON 98 E10 fuel.

Knocking noises, strange sounds, and driving issues may occur when using fuel with an ethanol content of 10 % to max. 15 %. These have no effect on the engine service life.

Safety information

Caution

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for additional maintenance.

Warning

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. Furthermore, the catalytic converter can be permanently damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- ▷ Leaded gasoline.
- ▷ Metallic additives, for instance manganese or iron.

Do not turn on standby after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

87 AKI fuel or lower can cause the engine to malfunction or become damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not refuel with 87 AKI fuel or lower.

NOTICE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use fuels with a higher ethanol content than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.

Recommended gas quality

91 AKI.

M Performance model:

93 AKI.

Minimum fuel grade

87 AKI.

Using fuel with this minimum AKI rating may result in driving issues and strange sounds. Knocking noises may occur, especially when starting the engine at high temperatures. This has no effect on engine service life.

Engine oil

General information

The engine oil consumption and engine oil properties depend on the driving style and operating conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling by taking a detailed measurement.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for instance:

- Sporty driving style.
- Break-in of the engine.
- Idle operation of the engine.
- With use of engine oil types that are not recommended.

Different Check Control messages are shown on the control display depending on the engine oil level and engine oil properties.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having the engine oil changed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. The suitable viscosity grade is indicated on a sign in the engine compartment.

Safety information

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is excess engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. It is recommended that you do not exceed the service intervals indicated in the vehicle.

Electronic oil measurement

General information

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

- ▷ Monitoring.
- ▷ Detailed measurement.

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, for instance when cornering aggressively, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

Monitoring

Principle

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and can be shown on the control display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measured value. In this case, the measured value for the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Principle

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

General information

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is turned on by pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ The engine is at operating temperature.
- ▷ Selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.

Performing a detailed measurement

1. ⠿ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Engine oil level"
5. "Oil level measurement"
6. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Adding engine oil

General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The top-up quantity is indicated in the message shown on the control display.

Only add suitable types of engine oil.

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Safety information

Warning

Operating fluids, e.g., oil, grease, coolant, fuel, may contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Follow the instructions on the containers. Do not allow operating fluids to come into contact with your clothing, skin, or eyes. Do not fill operating fluids into different bottles. Store operating fluids out of reach of children.

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is excess engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

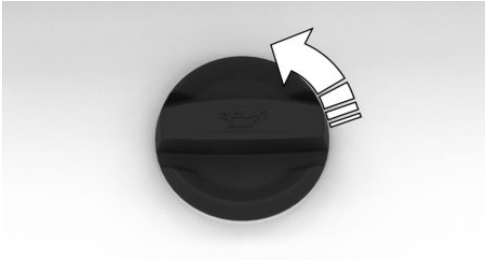
The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 373.

Adding engine oil

1. Opening the hood.
   Opening, refer to page 375.
2. Open the lid counterclockwise.



3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the lid.

Engine oil types to add

General information

The engine oil grade is critical for the service life of the engine.

Only add with the types of engine oil which are listed.

Safety information

NOTICE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use oil additives.

NOTICE

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of property damage. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil specification.

Suitable engine oil types

When topping up engine oil, the following oil specification applies:

Gasoline engine
BMW Longlife-01 FE.
BMW Longlife-22 FE++.

The BMW Longlife-22 FE++ oil specification is not suitable for the 60i gasoline engine.

Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

Oil specification
API SL.
API SM.
API SN.

Viscosity grades

When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has a suitable viscosity grade. The suitable viscosity grade is indicated on a sign in the engine compartment.

More information about suitable oil specifications and engine oil viscosity grades can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.

Coolant

General information

Coolant consists of water and coolant additive.

Not all commercially available coolant additives are suitable for the vehicle. The vehicle manufacturer recommends using coolant with the BMW LC-18 specification. Do not mix coolant additives of different colors. Use a 50:50 mixing ratio of water to coolant additive. Information on suitable coolant additives can be provided by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.

Warning

Additives are harmful to health. Using the wrong additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.

NOTICE

Too much water reduces the coolant's frost protection and corrosion protection. There is a risk of property damage. Use a 50:50 mixing ratio of water to coolant additive.

Coolant level

General information

Depending on the drive variant, there are up to two coolant reservoirs in the engine compartment. Check and add the coolant levels on a regular basis.

The coolant reservoir may be overfilled with coolant when the vehicle is delivered from the factory or following maintenance measures. The specified coolant level is achieved with longer operating periods.

The nominal coolant level is indicated by the maximum mark in the filler neck of the coolant reservoir.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 373.

Checking the coolant level

1. Let the engine cool down.
2. Turn off the climate control system.

   Climate control, refer to page 279.
3. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 375.
4. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
5. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
6. The coolant level is correct when it is just below the max. level mark on the filler neck.

   This can be found on the filler neck or on the outside of transparent coolant tanks.
7. Close the coolant reservoir cap.

Adding coolant

1. Let the engine cool down.
2. Turn off the climate control system.

   Climate control, refer to page 279.
3. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 375.
4. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
5. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
6. If necessary, slowly add coolant up to the specified fill level. Be careful not to spill coolant.
7. Close the coolant reservoir cap.

Disposal

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

Washer fluid

General information

All spray nozzles are supplied from one tank.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity: 0.4 US gal/2 liters.

Safety information

Warning

Some types of antifreeze can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and an injury hazard. Follow the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not fill operating fluids into different bottles. Store operating fluids out of reach of children.

United States: The washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.

Warning

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.

NOTICE

Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the car wash. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.

NOTICE

Mixing different windshield washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washer system. There is a risk of property damage. Do not mix different windshield washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixture ratios provided on the containers.

Overview

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer fluid concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5°F/-15°C.

Maintenance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Maintenance system

Principle

The maintenance system provides service notifications and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

General information

In some cases, scopes and intervals of the maintenance system may vary according to the country version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Condition Based Service

Principle

Condition Based Service determines the maintenance recommendation using sensors and special algorithms that take into account the operating conditions of the vehicle.

The maintenance measures are determined taking into account the individual usage profile of the vehicle.

General information

Service notifications can be displayed on the control display.

Additional information:

Service notifications, refer to page 155.

Service data in the vehicle key

Information on the service notifications is continuously stored in the vehicle key. An authorized service center can read this data out and suggest a maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Stationary periods

Stationary periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are taken into account.

Have any time-dependent maintenance measures, e.g., replacing operating fluids, performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Maintenance Booklet for US Models

Please consult your Maintenance Booklet for additional information on the performance of service and maintenance work.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

Diagnostic socket

General information

Disconnect devices from the diagnostic socket before locking the vehicle or starting a Remote Software Upgrade.

Additional information:

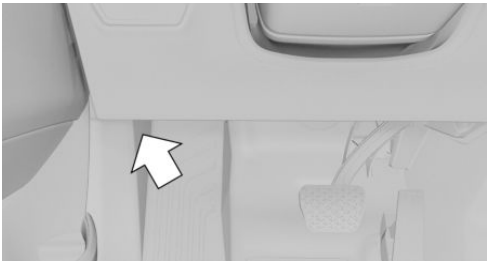
Indicator/warning lights, refer to page 139.

Safety information

NOTICE

The diagnostic socket is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the diagnostic socket, or contact with the diagnostic socket for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, it is strongly recommended that access to the diagnostic socket is limited to an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the diagnostic socket.

Overview



On the driver's side, there is a diagnostic socket for reading out vehicle data.

Exhaust emissions

- The warning light illuminates:

  The exhaust gas quality is declining, e.g., because the fuel filler cap is fitted incorrectly. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Taking the vehicle out of service

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Deep sleep mode, refer to page 41.

Replacing components

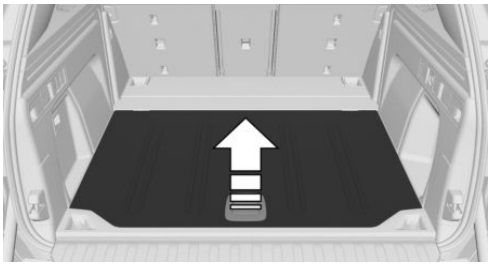
Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Onboard vehicle tool kit



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located under the cargo area floor.

Wiper blades

Safety information

NOTICE

The window may sustain damage if the wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade installed. There is a risk of property damage. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold in or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.

NOTICE

Folded-out wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

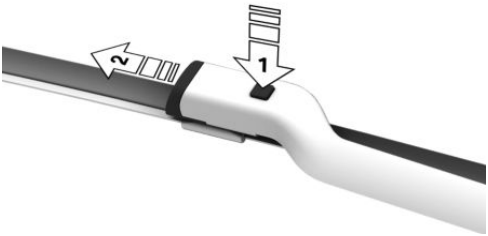
Replacing the front wiper blades

1. To change the wiper blades, bring wipers into fold-out position.

   Fold-out position of the wipers, refer to page 166.

2. Lift the wiper off of the windshield and hold.

3. Press the button, arrow 1, turn the wiper blade slightly clockwise, and pull it forward and out, arrow 2.



4. Insert the new wiper blade and press it on until it you hear it snap into the holder.
5. Fold in the wipers.

Replacing the rear wiper blade

The wiper blade engages on the end of the wiper arm.

1. Lift off the wiper fully and pull off the wiper blade, arrow.

2. Attach a new wiper blade. The wiper blade must engage audibly.
3. Fold in the wipers.

Lights and bulbs

General information

Bulbs and lights make an essential contribution to driving safety.

All headlights and lights are designed using LED technology at least.

In the event that they are no longer operating properly, have the headlights and lights checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Intense brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.

Headlight glass

The inside of the headlight glass can fog up in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If, despite driving with the headlights switched on, moisture such as water droplets increasingly forms in the light, have the headlights checked.

Vehicle battery

General information

The vehicle battery is maintenance-free.

In the event of a malfunction, the vehicle manufacturer recommends having any corresponding work, e.g., replacing the vehicle battery, performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

More information on the vehicle battery can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

Warning

Vehicle batteries that are not recommended can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use vehicle batteries recommended by the vehicle manufacturer. For information on suitable vehicle batteries, contact an authorized service cen-

ter or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Registering the vehicle battery in the vehicle

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been changed. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will be available without limitation and any Check Control messages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

Hazard icons

The following hazard icons can be found on the vehicle battery:

Icon	Meaning
	No smoking, no open flames, no sparks.
	Wear safety goggles.
	Keep away from children.
	Risk of chemical burn: wear gloves, do not tilt battery.
	Flush acid splashes with water immediately. In the event of contact with the eyes or swallowing, seek a physician immediately.
	No direct daylight, no frost.
	Follow the operating instructions.
	Explosive gas mixture. Do not close any openings of the battery.

Charging the vehicle battery

General information

Make sure that the vehicle battery is always sufficiently charged to ensure that the vehicle battery can be used for its entire service life.

A discharged battery is indicated by a red indicator light.

Charge the vehicle battery when the drive-off power is insufficient.

The following circumstances can negatively affect the vehicle battery's performance:

- ▷ Frequent short-distance drives.
- ▷ Stationary periods of more than one month.

Safety information

Warning

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery via sockets or cigarette lighters in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12 V electrical system. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

Charging the vehicle battery

To charge the vehicle battery, first switch off the combustion engine, then use the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

With mild hybrid technology: Open the hood before charging the vehicle battery.

Additional information:

Jump-start terminals, refer to page 393.

Power interruption

After a power interruption, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- Parking brake, refer to page 132.
- With Memory function: store the positions again.
- Time: update.
- Date: update.
- Glass sunroof: initialize the system.

Deep sleep mode

Use deep sleep mode for long stationary periods.

Additional information:

Deep sleep mode, refer to page 41.

Mild Hybrid technology

Principle

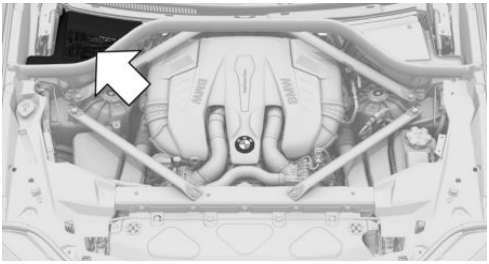
Part of the Mild Hybrid technology is a battery that works with a voltage of 48 volts. Mild Hybrid technology can lower the fuel consumption.

Safety information

DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

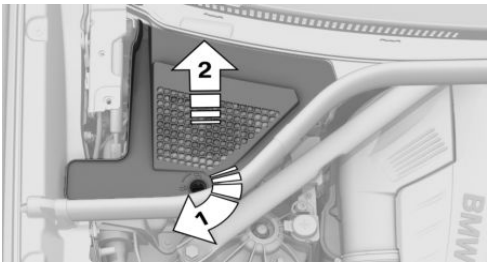
Overview



The battery for the Mild-Hybrid technology is located under a cover in the engine compartment on the front passenger side.

Removing the cover

1. Turn lid up to the opened lock icon arrow 1.



2. Remove cover, arrow 2.

Notice

Do not exchange or work on the battery for the Mild Hybrid technology.

Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, or take them to a collection point.

Transport and store full vehicle batteries in an upright position. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

Batteries contain harmful chemicals. Disposing of batteries with household waste is prohibited by law.

Fuses

General information

The fuses are located at different places in the vehicle.

Information on the fuse layout and the positions of the fuse boxes is available on the Internet: fusecard.bmw.com.

Safety information

Warning

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire, injury and a risk of damage to property damage. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having the fuses replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Breakdown Assistance

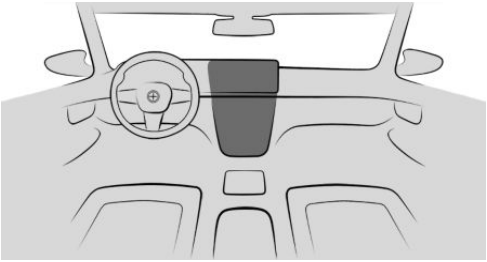
Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Hazard warning system



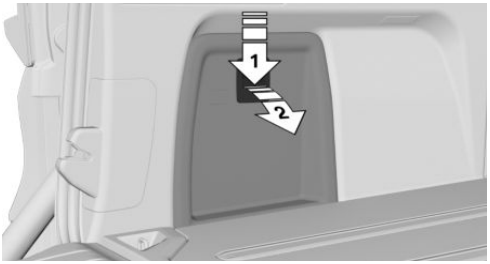
Hazard warning system button

The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning system is turned on.

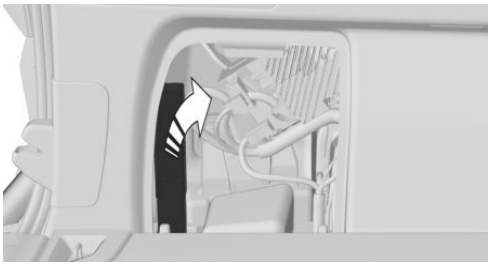
Warning triangle

The warning triangle is located in the left storage compartment of the cargo area.

1. Unlock the cover of the left side trim panel, arrow 1, and fold open, arrow 2.



2. Take the warning triangle out in the direction of the car's interior.



First-aid kit

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle is equipped with a first-aid kit.

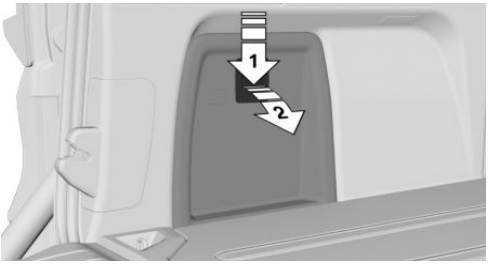
Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

Storage

Storage for the first-aid kit is provided in the left storage compartment of the cargo area.

1. Unlock the cover of the left side trim panel, arrow 1, and fold open, arrow 2.



2. If necessary, remove the cargo cover from the storage under the cargo area floor.

Emergency Call

Principle

In case of an emergency, an emergency call can be triggered automatically by the system or manually.

Intelligent emergency call

The vehicle features an Intelligent Emergency Call system, depending on vehicle equipment.

The Intelligent Assist system establishes a connection with the BMW Response Center.

Intelligent emergency calls are made using a SIM card that is integrated into the vehicle.

The BMW Response Center then makes contact with the occupants of the vehicle and initiates further steps to help.

If an intelligent emergency call is made, the data used to determine necessary rescue measures, e.g., the vehicle's current location if it can be determined, is sent to the BMW Response Center.

Even if the driver is unable to respond, the BMW Response Center can, under certain circumstances, initiate steps to provide further assistance.

Even if the BMW Response Center is no longer heard through the loudspeakers, the BMW Response Center may still be able to hear the occupants of the vehicle.

The BMW Response Center ends the emergency call.

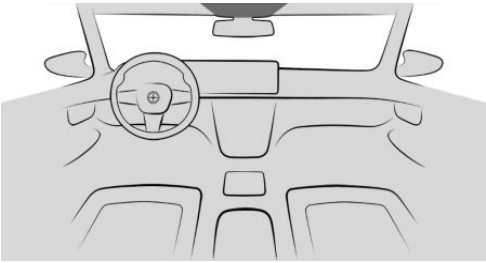
General information

Only press the SOS button in the headliner in an emergency.

For technical reasons, the emergency call cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

The Head-up display may turn off while an emergency call is ongoing.

Overview



The SOS button is located in the headliner.

Functional requirements

To use the emergency call, the following functional requirements must be met:

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ The Emergency Call system is functioning correctly.
- ▷ The integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.

Automatic triggering

Under certain conditions, for example if the airbags are deployed, an emergency call is automatically triggered immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

If an emergency call is placed, all other signal tones and audio sources such as the Park Distance Control are muted.

Manual triggering

To initiate an emergency call manually, proceed as follows:

1. Tap the cover flap.
2. Press and hold the SOS button in the headliner until the LED near the button illuminates green.
   - ▷ The LED is illuminated green when an Emergency Call has been initiated.

     If a cancel prompt appears on the control display, the emergency call can be aborted. If the situation allows, wait in the vehicle until the voice connection has been established.
   - ▷ The LED flashes green when the connection to the BMW Response Center has been established.

Malfunction

The function of the emergency call may be impaired.

The LED near the SOS button flashes for approximately 30 seconds. A Check Control message is displayed.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Jump-starting

General information

If the battery is discharged, the combustion engine can be started using the battery on another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

⚠ Warning

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, spark formation may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.

⚠ Warning

In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur while jump-starting. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that no body contact occurs.

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electrical components in both vehicles.

Jump-start terminals

The jump-start terminals are located in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 373.

Open the covers of the jump-start terminals.

Connecting jumper cables

Before you begin, switch off all unnecessary electronic systems/components such as the radio on the assisting and receiving vehicles.

1. Open the lid of the jump-start terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding jump-start terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding jump-start terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.

   If the vehicle to be started has a diesel engine: let the engine of the assisting vehicle run for approx. 10 minutes.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.

   If the first attempt to start the engine is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge, if needed.

Tow-starting/towing

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, deactivate two-axle level control.

Additional information:

Two-axle ride level control, refer to page 273.

Safety information

Warning

When towing while safety systems or driver assistance systems are activated, the behavior of the individual systems may lead to an accident, e.g., due to automatic braking or acceleration. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the corresponding safety systems or driver assistance systems when towing.

Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from the hazard area, it can be pushed for distances of approx. 328 ft/100 m at a speed of max. 6 mph/10 km/h.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 125.

Transporting the vehicle

General information

The vehicle must be transported on a loading platform or tow dolly.

The vehicle must be transported by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

NOTICE

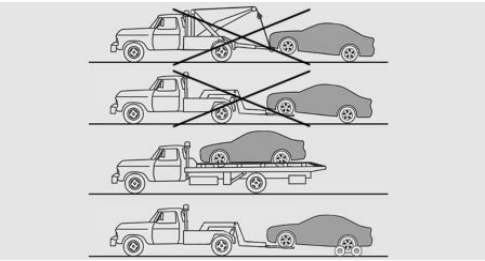
The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a single lifted axle. There is a risk of property damage. Have vehicle transported on a loading platform or use a tow dolly. Tow dollies must be used under the rear wheels only. Also make sure that no wheel is touching the ground.

Warning

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage.

- ▷ Only lift the vehicle using a suitable device.
- ▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle on the towing eye, rims, body components, or chassis components.
- ▷ For transport, secure the vehicle by placing special tire straps over the tire tread surfaces in the vehicle's longitudinal direction.

Tow truck



Have vehicle transported on a loading platform or use a tow dolly.

When using a tow dolly, make sure that none of the wheels touch the ground. This method should be used for distances of max. 124 miles/200 km. Follow the instructions, as well as specified loads and speeds, given by the tow dolly manufacturer.

Towing other vehicles

Principle

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

Warning

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the towing eye can tear off or it will not be possible to control vehicle handling. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.

NOTICE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of property damage. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the towing eye.

Tow bar

The towing eyes used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

If it is impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an inclination, note the following:

- ▷ Free movement is limited when cornering.
- ▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an inclination.

Tow rope

Observe the following notes when using the tow rope:

- ▷ Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.
- ▷ Make sure the tow rope is not twisted when fastening.
- ▷ Check the attachment of the towing eye and tow rope in regular intervals.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing distance of 3 miles/5 km.
- ▷ When driving off to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

Towing eye

Principle

The towing eye is a device that can be screwed onto the vehicle in order to, e.g., secure tow cables or tow rods.

General information

The screw-in towing eye should always be carried in the vehicle.

The towing eye can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the towing eye is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the towing eye. There is a risk of property damage. Follow the notes on using the towing eye.

Storage

Depending on vehicle equipment, the towing eye may be stored in a bag as follows:

- ▷ In the cargo area under the cargo area floor.
- ▷ In the cargo area on the left or right side.
- ▷ In the cargo area behind a side trim panel.

Using the towing eye

When using the towing eye, note the following:

- ▷ Use only the towing eye provided with the vehicle.
- ▷ Turn the towing eye at least 5 turns clockwise and screw it in as far as it will go. If necessary, tighten with a suitable object.

- After use, unscrew the towing eye counter-clockwise.
- Use the towing eye for towing on paved roads only.
- Avoid lateral loading of the towing eye, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the towing eye.
- Check the attachment of the towing eye in regular intervals.

Towing eye thread

The towing eye thread is located behind a cover on the front and rear bumper.

To remove the cover, press the mark on the edge of the cover. To make removal easier, simultaneously pull on the opposite side of the cover.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Start the engine by jump-starting, if possible.

Have the cause of starting issues corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Jump-starting, refer to page 392.

Vehicle care

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Washing the vehicle

General information

Regularly remove by hand foreign objects, e.g., leaves or snow, from the area below the windshield or from the air inlets at the front of the vehicle.

Wash the vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense contamination and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Additional information:

Fold-out position of the wipers, refer to page 166.

Safety information

Warning

When driving, high temperatures can occur underneath the vehicle body, e.g., due to the exhaust system, brakes or radiator. Contact with the hot components can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch hot components. Do not perform work in the vicinity of hot components until after they have cooled down.

NOTICE

When washing with an open fuel filler flap, damage may occur. There is a risk of property damage. Close the fuel filler flap before washing. Clean dirt behind the fuel filler flap with a cloth.

Steam-jet cleaner and high pressure cleaner

Safety information

NOTICE

When using high-pressure cleaners, components can be damaged due to the pressure or high temperatures or because an insufficient distance was maintained. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that sufficient distance is maintained. Do not spray continuously on one spot. Follow the operating instructions for the high pressure cleaners.

Distances and temperature

When cleaning with a steam/high-pressure cleaner, make sure to use the specified temperatures and distances.

Maximum temperature: 140°F/60°C.

Minimum distance to glass sunroof: 31.5 in/80 cm.

Minimum distance of 12 in/30 cm to the following components:

- Sensors.
- Cameras.
- Seals.
- Lights.
- Air inlets in front of vehicle.

- Cables.
- Plug connectors.

Automatic car washes or car washes

Safety information

NOTICE

Improper use of automatic car washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of property damage. Follow the following instructions:

- Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- Note the permissible vehicle dimensions for the car wash.
- Do not drive through a car wash with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the body.
- Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the window wiper system.
- Take off all removable attachments, e.g., antennas.

Driving into a car wash

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. The wheels are blocked. There is a risk of property damage. Do not switch off standby if the vehicle is meant to coast, e.g., in a car wash.

In a car wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

Some car washes do not permit persons in the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal sounds when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 125.

Driving out of a car wash

Ensure that the vehicle key is in the car.

Turn on drive-ready state.

Additional information:

Drive-ready state, refer to page 42.

Lights

Do not rub wet lights dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents or cleaning agents containing alcohol.

Soak areas that have been dirtied, for instance from insects, with auto shampoo and wash off with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. Otherwise, their braking effect may be reduced. The heat generated while braking dries brake disks and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Vehicle care products

General information

BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning agents from BMW. Suitable vehicle care products are available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Cleaning agents can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use cleaning agents that are intended for cleaning the respective component. Follow the instructions on the packaging.

Vehicle paintwork

General information

Regular vehicle care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of the vehicle care to these influences.

Aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings must be removed immediately to prevent alterations or discolorations of the finish.

Matte paintwork

Only use cleaning and care products suitable for vehicles with matte paintwork.

Plastic wrap

Use only cleaning and care products that are suitable for vehicles with a plastic wrap.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather regularly, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to heavy abrasion and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because contamination on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective coating of the leather surface.

Remove aggressive substances, e.g., sunscreen, immediately to prevent alterations or discolorations of the leather.

Synthetic leather care

Clean synthetic leather regularly with a damp microfiber cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, dust and road grime particles will rub into pores and folds, causing significant abrasion and premature degradation of the surface.

In case of major soiling, use a moist soft sponge or microfiber cloth with suitable interior cleaners.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, e.g., sunscreen, to prevent alterations or discolorations of the synthetic leather.

Fabric care

General information

In case of major contaminations such as beverage stains, use a moist soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaners.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, e.g., sunscreen, to prevent alterations or discolorations of the fabric.

Safety information

NOTICE

Open hook and loop fasteners, zippers, or applications, e.g., studs on clothing can damage the seat covers and the other fabric and leather covers in the vehicle. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the fasteners are closed.

Upholstery material care

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

Clean extensively down to the seams. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Textile care

Use a microfiber cloth for cleaning minor contamination.

Dampen the cloth with water.

Alcantara

Use microfiber cloth soaked with water to clean minor soiling. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Caring for special components

Displays, operating elements, and protective glass of the Head-up display

NOTICE

Surfaces can be damaged by improper cleaning, e.g., by using chemical cleaners, or from moisture or liquid of any kind. There is a risk of property damage.

- ▷ Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.
- ▷ Use a dry, clean antistatic microfiber cloth for cleaning displays.
- ▷ Clean the operating elements and, depending on vehicle equipment, the protective glass of the Head-up display with a damp microfiber cloth and standard household dish soap.

Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral rim cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam-jet cleaners above 140°F/60°C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Corrosive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents can damage the rim surface and the protective layer on adjacent components, e.g., the brakes.

After cleaning, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. The heat generated while braking dries brake disks and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean chrome-like surfaces, especially if exposed to road salt, using plenty of water as well as auto shampoo as needed.

Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface contamination of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care products at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

Wiper blades

The wiper blades are cleaned by using the window washer system.

Avoid cleaning the wiper blades manually, as this may reduce wiper performance.

Fine wood parts

Clean the fine wood veneer and fine wood components with a damp cloth. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Plastic components

NOTICE

Solvent cleaners that contain alcohol or solvents such as lacquer thinners, cold cleaning agents, fuel and such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of property damage. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Moisten the cloth lightly with water if necessary.

When cleaning plastic parts, make sure that no fabric parts, e.g., the headliner, become wet.

Carbon parts

For easy cleaning of carbon parts, use a microfiber cloth, water, and silicone-free cleaner to remove everyday soiling.

Corrosive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents can alter the surface.

If necessary, have carbon parts removed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Seat belts

Warning

Chemical solvent cleaners can destroy the fabric of the seat belts and lead to seat belts no longer having their protective effect. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Use only a mild soap solution for cleaning the seat belts.

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus should be avoided for safety reasons.

Use only a mild soap solution for cleaning the installed belt straps.

Seat belts should only be allowed to retract if they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats

Warning

Objects in the driver's footwell can limit the pedal travel or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's footwell. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

The floor mats can be removed from the interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very contaminated, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the car-

pet, rub back and forth in the driving direction only.

Sensors and camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

Technical data

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

General information

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. Vehicle-specific data may deviate from this, for instance due to the optional equipment chosen, national-market version, or country-specific measuring process. More specific values can be obtained in approval documents, on the vehicle info label, or from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment version or country-specific measurement procedure.

The height of the vehicle can also differ, e.g., due to tires and vehicle load.

Detailed technical data

BMW X5 Dimensions		
Width with mirrors	in	87.3
	mm	2,218
Width without mirrors	in	78.9
	mm	2,004
Height	in	69.5
	mm	1,765
Length	in	194.2
	mm	4,932
Wheelbase	in	117.1
	mm	2,975
Turning circle Ø, without Integral Active Steering	ft	41.3
	m	12.6

BMW X5 Dimensions		
Turning circle Ø, with Integral Active Steering	ft	39.4
	m	12.0
Fuel tank, approx.	US gal	21.9
	Liters	83

BMW X5 M60i xDrive Weight		
Maximum permissible payload, two seat rows	lb	1,193
	kg	541
Maximum permissible total weight, two seat rows	lb	6,768
	kg	3,070
Maximum permissible front axle load, two seat rows	lb	3,153
	kg	1,430
Maximum permissible rear axle load, two seat rows	lb	3,902
	kg	1,770

BMW X5 M60i xDrive Trailer towing		
Maximum permissible trailer load without brakes	lb	1,653
	kg	750
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient, two seat rows, retrofitted trailer hitch	lb	5,952
	kg	2,700
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient, two seat rows, factory-fitted trailer hitch	lb	7,209
	kg	3,270
Maximum permissible drawbar nose weight	lb	551
	kg	250

BMW X5 M60i xDrive Trailer towing		
Maximum permissible rear axle load, towing vehicle, two seat rows	lb	3,902
	kg	1,770
Maximum permissible total weight, towing vehicle, two seat rows	lb	6,768
	kg	3,070

BMW X5 sDrive40i Weight		
Maximum permissible payload, two seat rows	lb	1,054
	kg	478
Maximum permissible total weight, two seat rows	lb	6,173
	kg	2,800
Maximum permissible front axle load, two seat rows	lb	2,866
	kg	1,300
Maximum permissible rear axle load, two seat rows	lb	3,616
	kg	1,640

BMW X5 sDrive40i Trailer towing		
Maximum permissible trailer load without brakes	lb	1,653
	kg	750
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient, two seat rows, retrofitted trailer hitch	lb	5,952
	kg	2,700
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient, two seat rows, factory-fitted trailer hitch	lb	7,209
	kg	3,270
Maximum permissible drawbar nose weight	lb	551

BMW X5 sDrive40i Trailer towing		
	kg	250
Maximum permissible rear axle load, towing vehicle, two seat rows	lb	3,616
	kg	1,640
Maximum permissible total weight, towing vehicle, two seat rows	lb	6,173
	kg	2,800

BMW X5 xDrive40i Weight		
Maximum permissible payload, two seat rows	lb	1,058
	kg	480
Maximum permissible total weight, two seat rows	lb	6,360
	kg	2,885
Maximum permissible front axle load, two seat rows	lb	2,998
	kg	1,360
Maximum permissible rear axle load, two seat rows	lb	3,704
	kg	1,680

BMW X5 xDrive40i Trailer towing		
Maximum permissible trailer load without brakes	lb	1,653
	kg	750
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient, two seat rows, retrofitted trailer hitch	lb	5,952
	kg	2,700
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient, two seat rows, factory-fitted trailer hitch	lb	7,209
	kg	3,270

BMW X5 xDrive40i Trailer towing		
Maximum permissible drawbar nose weight	lb	551
	kg	250
Maximum permissible rear axle load, towing vehicle, two seat rows	lb	3,704
	kg	1,680
Maximum permissible total weight, towing vehicle, two seat rows	lb	6,360
	kg	2,885

Appendix

General information

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

The following chapters were updated in the printed version of the Owner's Manual after the editorial deadline for the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle had closed:

- Operation: opening and closing: BMW Digital Key.
- Operation: Opening and closing: Key Card: Deactivating the Key Card.
-
- Mobility: Operating fluids: Fuel quality: Gasoline: Safety instructions.

Everything from A to Z

Index

0–9

2-axle air suspension, see Two-axle level control 273
3D view 249
48-volt technology, see Mild Hybrid technology 388

A

ABS, see Antilock Braking System 207
Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control 128
Acceleration sensor, see G-Meter 152
Accessories and parts 9
Accident prevention, see Active Protection 203
Acoustic pedestrian protection 172
Activated carbon filter, see Interior filter 290
Activation points, panorama view 251
Activation, trailer towing 330
Activation word 54
Active Blind Spot Detection 188
Active Cruise Control, see Speed control systems 215
Active damping control, see Adaptive M suspension 272
Active Guard, see Collision warning systems 172
Active M Sport differential 210
Active Park Distance Control 257
Active Protection 203
Active roll stabilization 272
Active seat ventilation 288
Active Steering, integral 212
Adaptive 2-axle air suspension, see Two-axle level control 273
Adaptive lighting functions 161
Adaptive M suspension 272
Adaptive M suspension Professional 272
Adaptive suspension 272
Adding engine oil types 379
Additional camera view displays 245
Additives, engine oil types 379
Adjusting speed to route 240
Advanced Real Time Traffic Information, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
After run of fan, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 321
Airbags 168
Airbags, warning light 170
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 285
Air conditioning, climate 285
Air conditioning system 279
Air distribution, manual 284
Air drying, see air conditioning 285
Air flow, air conditioning system 283
Air outlets, see Ventilation 289
Air pressure, tires 342
Air quality 290
Air suspension, see Two-axle level control 273
Air vent, see Ventilation 289
Alarm, avoiding 92
Alarm system 91
Alcantara, care, see Fabric care 400
All-season tires, see Winter tires 350
All-season tires, tread 348
All-wheel drive, see BMW xDrive 209
Amazon Alexa Car Integration 57
Ambient Air package 291
Ambient light 163
Android Auto, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Antifreeze, see Washer fluid 381
Antilock Braking System 207
Anti-slip rails 313
Anti-theft protection, lug bolt lock 370
Anti-trap mechanism, glass sunroof 98
Anti-trap mechanism, windows 95
Apple CarPlay, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Applications see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Applications, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Apps, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Armrest heating 287
Articulation angle, Trailer Assistant 331
Artificial engine noise, see Acoustic pedestrian protection 172
Assistance with breakdown 390
Assistance with driving off on inclines, see Drive-off Assistant 130
Assisted Driving Mode, lane keeping, see Speed control systems 215
Assisted Driving Mode Plus, see Speed control systems 215
Assisted View 151
Audio player, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
AUTO H, see Automatic Hold 133
Automatic camera perspective 248
Automatic car wash, see Washing the vehicle 397
Automatic control, headlight 159
Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror 112
Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags 170
Automatic dimming, see High Beam Assistant 156
Automatic headlight control 159
Automatic Hold 133
Automatic Lane Change Assistant, Lane Change Assistant, automatic 231
Automatic locking 90
Automatic Parking Assistant 259
Automatic Parking Assistant Professional 259
Automatic Parking Assistant, see Maneuver Assistant 265
Automatic sliding and anti-slip rails 313
Automatic transmission 124
Automatic unlocking 90
Automatic wiper system, see Rain sensor 165
Automating routines, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 58
AUTO program, climate control 281
Auto Start/Stop function 121
Average consumption, see Trip data 149

B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support 102
Backrest, seats 100
Backrest tilt 101
Backrest tilt, rear seats 106
Backrest width 102
Back-up Assistant 269
Ball head, removable 328
Bandages, see First-aid kit 390
Banner, see Pennant holder 324
Bar for tow-starting/towing 395
Base position, rear seats 105
Battery, disposal 388
Battery, vehicle 386
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing 393
Belts, see Seat belts 106
Belt tension 106
Beverage holder, front 308
Beverage holder, rear 309
Blind spot collision warning 188
Blocking, power window, see Safety switch 95
Blower, see Air flow 283
Bluetooth audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Bluetooth connection, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
BMW app, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
BMW Assist, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
BMW Curved Display 47
BMW Digital Key 74
BMW Drive Recorder 200
BMW IconicSounds 278
BMW ID 65
BMW iDrive 44
BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 53

BMW Live Cockpit Plus, see BMW Curved Display 47
BMW Live Cockpit Professional, see BMW Curved Display 47
BMW maintenance system, see Maintenance system 383
BMW Operating System, see BMW iDrive 44
BMW SIM Reader, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
BMW Theater Screen, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
BMW xDrive 209
Bottle holder, front, see Cup holder, front 308
Bottle holder, rear, see Cup holder, rear 309
Brake assistant 207
Brake Controller 334
Brake disks, see Brake system 320
Brake pads, see Brake system 320
Brake system 320
Braking, information 323
Breakdown assistance 390
Break-in 320
Break-in procedures 320
Break recommendation, see Fatigue Alert 204
Brightness, control display 48
Bulbs and lights 386
Button, central locking system 87
Buttons on the steering wheel 30
Button, SOS, see Intelligent emergency call 391
Button, Start/Stop, see Start/Stop button 121
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 392

C

Cable for tow-starting/towing 395
Calibration of the front seats 104
California Proposition 65 Warning 9
Camera cleaning 402
Camera, instrument cluster, see Driver Attention Camera 205
Camera lenses, care 402
Camera perspective, automatic 248
Camera perspective, semi-automatic 248
Camera, Rear View Camera 247
Cameras, see Vehicle sensors 35
Camera view aid lines 245
CANCEL button, see Speed control systems 215
Care 397
Care, displays, screens 400
Care, Head-up display 400
Care, light-alloy wheels 400
Care, vehicle 399
Cargo 311
Cargo area 311
Cargo area, enlarging 314
Cargo cover 316
Cargo cover, electrical 317
Cargo straps, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 312
Car key, see Vehicle key 70
Carpet, care 401
Car seats, see Transporting children safely 115
Cartridge replacement, see Ambient Air package 291
Car washes, automatic 397
Car wash, see Washing the vehicle 397
Car wash view 250
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust system 321
CBS, see Condition Based Service 383
Cell phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Center armrest, front 307
Center armrest, rear 307
Center console 32
Central display area, instrument cluster 149
Central Information Display (CID), see Control display 48
Central locking switch, see Central locking system 87
Central locking system 87
Central screen, see Control display 48
Changes, technical, see For Your Own Safety 9
Change, wheels and tires 349
Changing parts 385
Changing wheels 368
Charging a smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 304
Charging cradle 304

Charging tray for smartphones, see Wireless charging tray 304
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 13
Check Control 138
Checking the engine oil level, electronic 378
Checking the oil level, electronic 378
Children, seating position 115
Children, transporting safely 115
Child restraint seats 115
Child restraint system LATCH 117
Child restraint systems, mounting 116
Child restraint systems, see Transporting children safely 115
Child safety latch 120
Child safety locks 120
Child seat installation 116
Child seat, mounting 116
Child seats, see Transporting children safely 115
Chrome-plated surfaces, care 400
Chrome surfaces, care 400
Cleaning, see Vehicle care 399
Climate control 279
Closing with the smartphone, see BMW Digital Key 74
Clothes hooks 310
Coasting 336
Coasting with idling engine 336
Coat hooks 310
Collision warning systems 172
Comfort Access, see Comfort Access 79
COMFORT, see Driving Experience Control 129
Communication, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Compact wheel, see Emergency wheel 367
Comparison of entries, see Entry comparison 46
Compressor 364
Condensation water under the parked vehicle 324
Condensation, windshield 286
Condition Based Service 383
Confirmation signals 90
ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
ConnectedDrive services, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Connected Music, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle 58
Connection, electrical devices, see Sockets 300
Consumption, see Trip data 149
Contactless trunk opening/closing 86
Contacts, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Continuing driving with flat tire, see Flat tire monitor 361
Continuing driving with flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 353
Control display 48
Controller 49
Control systems, driving stability 207
Convoy Assistant, Assisted Driving Mode Plus, see Speed control systems 215
Coolant 380
Coolant level 381
Coolant temperature, see Engine temperature 147
Cooling, maximum 285
Cooling system 380
Cornering light 162
Corrosion, brake disks 324
Cosmetic mirror 300
Cross Traffic Warning 198
Cruise Control, Cruise Control, see Speed control systems 215
Cruise Control, see Speed control systems 215
Cruising range 153
Cup holder, front 308
Cup holder, rear 309
Current driving condition 154
Curved Display 47

D

Damage, tires 348
Damping control, active, see Adaptive M suspension 272
Dashboard 30

Dashboard, see Instrument cluster 135
Dashcam, see BMW Drive Recorder 200
Data memory 11
Data protection, settings 64
Data, see Personal data, deleting 64
Data, technical 404
Date 152
Day, see Date 152
Daytime driving lights 161
Daytime running lights 161
Deep sleep mode 41
Defrosting, windshield 286
Deleting, personal data 64
Departure schedule, see Pre-ventilation 294
Departure time, pre-conditioning via Remote Engine Start 296
Departure time, pre-ventilation 294
Destination input 6
Diagnostic port 384
Diagnostic socket 384
Differential lock 210
Digital Key 74
Digital key, see BMW Digital Key 74
Dimmable interior mirror 112
Dimming exterior mirror 112
Direct access 47
Direct access buttons 47
Direct dial buttons, see Shortcuts 47
Display and operating concept, see BMW iDrive 44
Display, iDrive 46
Displaying information on parking assistance, see Assisted View 151
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 162
Display panel, see Instrument cluster 135
Displays 135
Displays and icons 7
Displays for the vehicle, see Live Vehicle 136
Display SPRINT 128
Disposal, coolant 381
Disposal, vehicle battery 388
Distance Control, see Speed control systems 215
Distance, see Speed control systems 215
Distance Warning, see Park Distance Control 254
Door handle lighting, see Welcome lights 160
Door opening angle 252
Downhill control, see Hill Descent Control 210
Drive-off Assistant 130
Drive-Off Monitoring 258
Drive power reduced 146
Driver activity, see Driver Attention Camera 205
Driver Assistance, parking, see Parking assistance systems 242
Driver assistance systems 213
Driver Attention Camera 205
Drive-ready state, see Operating state of vehicle 40
Drive Recorder 200
Driver profiles 65
Driver profiles, welcome screen 65
Drive sound, see BMW IconicSounds 278
Driving 121
Driving Assistant, see Collision warning systems 172
Driving comfort 272
Driving condition, display 154
Driving Experience Control 129
Driving mode, see Driving Experience Control 129
Driving noise, artificial, see Acoustic pedestrian protection 172
Driving notes 320
Driving on poor roads 324
Driving stability control systems 207
Driving through flood 322
Driving through water 322
Driving tips, see General driving notes 321
DSC, see Dynamic Stability Control 207
Dynamic damping, see Adaptive M suspension 272
Dynamic Drive 272
Dynamic shock absorber, see Adaptive suspension 272
Dynamic Stability Control 207
Dynamic Traction Control 209

E

ECO PRO 337

ECO PRO driving mode 337
ECO PRO driving program 337
ECO PRO mode 337
ECO PRO, see Driving Experience Control 129
EDR, see Event data recorder 13
Efficiency Coach, Efficient mode 337
Efficient rolling, see Current driving condition 154
Electromechanical parking brake 130
Electronic oil measurement 378
Electronic stability program, see Dynamic Stability Control 207
Emergency brake, see Emergency Stop Assistant 197
Emergency braking, see PostCrash iBrake 204
Emergency call 391
Emergency release, fuel filler flap 341
Emergency release, transmission lock 126
Emergency Stop Assistant 197
Emergency wheel 367
Emissions, see Pollutant emissions 384
Energy savings, see Gear shift indicator 146
Engine, Auto Start/Stop function 121
Engine compartment 373
Engine coolant 380
Engine idling when driving, see Coasting 336
Engine noise, artificial, see Acoustic pedestrian protection 172
Engine oil filler neck 378
Engine oil, refilling 378
Engine oil types to add 379
Engine sound, see BMW IconicSounds 278
Engine starting, see Vehicle operating state 40
Engine start, see Jump-starting 392
Engine temperature 147
Entering a destination, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, selection list in the instrument cluster 145
Entry comparison 46
Error indicators, see Check Control 138
eSIM telephony, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
ESP, see Dynamic Stability Control 207
Evasion Assistant, see Forward Collision Mitigation 173
Event data recorder 13
Exchange, wheels and tires 349
Exhaust emissions, see Pollutant emissions 384
Exhaust gas particulate filter 321
Exhaust, see Exhaust system 321
Exhaust system 321
Exit Warning 182
Exterior lighting, locked vehicle 161
Exterior mirror 111
Exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor 112
Exterior mirror cameras, see Vehicle sensors 35
External start, see Jump-starting 392
Eye for towing 395
Eyes, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 312

F

Factory settings, see Vehicle data, resetting 64
Failure message, see Check Control 138
Fan after run, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 321
Fastening seat belts, see Seat belts 106
Fatigue Alert 204
Fatigue Alert, see Driver Attention Camera 205
Fatigue warner, see Fatigue Alert 204
Fault indicators, see Check Control 138
Filler neck for engine oil 378
Filter, see Interior filter 290
Fine wood parts, care 401
First-aid kit 390
Fittings for trailer safety chain, trailer towing 329
Flag, see Pennant holder 324
Flat tire, changing wheels 368
Flat tire, continuing driving, see Flat tire monitor 361
Flat tire, continuing driving, see Tire Pressure Monitor 353
Flat tire monitor 361

Flat tire notification, see Flat tire monitor 361
Flat tire notification, see Tire Pressure Monitor 353
Flat tire, repairing 363
Flat tire, see Flat tire monitor 361
Flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 353
Flat tire warning light, see Flat tire monitor 361
Flat tire warning light, see Tire Pressure Monitor 353
Floor carpet, care 401
Floor mats, care 401
Fold-away position, wiper 166
Fold-out position 166
Foot brake 323
Forward Collision Mitigation 173
Forward Collision Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation 173
For Your Own Safety 9
Fragrance cartridge, see Ambient Air package 291
Fragrance, see Ambient Air package 291
Fragrancing, see Ambient Air package 291
Front airbags 168
Front camera, see Vehicle sensors 35
Front lights, replacing, see Bulbs and lights 386
Front passenger's side exterior mirror, tilting down, see Automatic Curb Monitor 112
Front passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 170
Front passenger seat functionality 103
Front radar sensor, see Vehicle sensors 35
Front-seat passenger airbag, indicator light 171
Front seats 100
Fuel 376
Fuel filler cap 340
Fuel filler flap 340
Fuel gauge 152
Fuel quality 376
Fuel recommendation 376
Fuses 389

G

Garage door opener, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 298
Gasoline 376
Gasoline particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 321
Gasoline particulate filter, see Exhaust particulate filter 321
Gasoline quality 377
Gear change, see Automatic transmission 124
Gear position, see Automatic transmission 124
Gearshift indicator 146
General driving notes 321
Gentleman function, see Front passenger seat functionality 103
Glare shield, see Sun visor 300
Glass sunroof 96
Glass sunroof, initializing the glass sunroof and sun protection 98
Glove compartment 306
G-Meter 152
GPS navigation, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Ground clearance, see xOFFROAD package 276
Guest profile, see BMW ID 65

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake 130
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 299
Hands-free device, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Hands-free system 6
Hazard warning system 390
HDC, see Hill Descent Control 210
Head airbag 169
Headlight control, automatic 159
Headlight flasher 156
Headlight glass 386
Headlights, care 398
Headlights, replacing, see Bulbs and lights 386
Headlights, turning up, dimming, see High Beam Assistant 156
Headliner 34
Head restraint pillow 110
Head restraints and seats 100

Head restraints, front 108
Head restraints, rear 109
Head-up display 137
Head-up display, care 400
Head-up display, store position, see Memory function 113
Heated steering wheel 288
Heavy cargo, stowing 312
High Beam Assistant 156
High-beam headlights 156
Higher speed range 321
Highway Assistant, Assisted Driving Mode Plus, see Speed control systems 215
Hill Ascent Control, see Drive-off Assistant 130
Hill Descent Control 210
Hills 323
HomeLink, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 298
Homepage, see Internet 7
Hood 373
Horn 30
Hotel function, see Valet parking mode 88
Hot exhaust system 321

I

iBrake PostCrash 204
Ice warning, see Outside temperature 148
IconicSounds 278
Icons and displays 7
Identification marks, tires 346
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 13
Idle state, see Operating state of vehicle 40
iDrive 44
Inclination 101
Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag 171
Indicator lights 139
Individual air distribution 284
Individual settings, see BMW ID 65
Inductive charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 304
Information 6
Information on Driver Assistance, displaying, see Assisted View 151
Information window, control display 47
Input, iDrive 46
Inserts, see Supplementary documentation 7
Installation of child restraint systems 116
Instrument cluster 135
Instrument lighting 162
Instrument panel, see Instrument cluster 135
Integral Active Steering 212
Integrated key 71
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle 6
Integrated Universal Remote Control 298
Intelligent emergency call 391
Intelligent Personal Assistant 53
Intelligent Safety, see Collision warning systems 172
Intended use 9
Interior equipment 298
Interior filter 290
Interior lights 162
Interior lights, locked vehicle 161
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 112
Interior motion sensor 92
Internet page 7
Intersection Collision Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation 173
Interval indicator, see Service notifications 155
Ionization, see Ambient air package 291
Ionizer 291

J

Jacking points 371
Jacking points for the vehicle jack 371
Journey data 149
Joystick, see Automatic transmission 124
Jump-starting 392
Jump-starting terminals 393
Jump-start terminals 393

K

Key Card 77
Key, mechanical 71
Key, see Vehicle key 70
Kickdown, see Automatic transmission 124
Knee airbag 169

L

Labeling 346
Lane boundary 184
Lane Change Assistant 230
Lane change with active destination guidance 233
Lane control assistant with active side collision mitigation, see Side Collision Protection 190
Lane Departure Warning 184
Lane keeping, Assisted Driving Mode, see Speed control systems 215
Lane lines, additional camera view displays 245
Lane threshold, warning 184
Lashing eyes in the cargo area 312
LATCH child restraint system 117
Lateral Parking Aid 248
Launch Control 128
Leather care 399
LED headlights, changing, see Bulbs and lights 386
Left Turn Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation 173
Letters and numbers, entering 46
Level control, see Two-axle level control 273
Light-alloy wheels, care 400
Light carpet, see Welcome Light Carpet 160
Light in exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection 188
Light in exterior mirror, see Cross Traffic Warning 198
Lighting 158
Lighting, speakers 164
Light replacement, see Bulbs and lights 386
Lights 156
Lights, care 398
Light switch 158
List, instrument cluster, see Selection lists 145
Live Cockpit Plus, see BMW Curved Display 47
Live Cockpit Professional, see BMW Curved Display 47
Live Vehicle 136
Load 312
Loading 311
Loading the cargo area, see Loading 311
Local time, see Time 152
Locking, see Opening and Closing 70
Locking, settings 89
Locking the rear air conditioning 281
Lock, lug bolts 370
Long stationary periods, see Deep sleep mode 41
Loop, see Towing eye 395
Low-beam headlights 160
Lower back support, see Lumbar support 102
Lug bolt lock 370
Luggage rack, refer to Roof bars 325
Luggage straps 312
Lumbar massage, see Seat massage 103
Lumbar support 102

M

Maintenance 383
Maintenance recommendation, see Condition Based Service 383
Maintenance system 383
Make-up mirror 300
Malfunction, vehicle key 73
Maneuver Assistant 265
Manually unlocking doors, see Integrated key 71
Manual mode, transmission 126
Map, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Map update, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Marking, run-flat tire 351
Matte paintwork 399
Matt paint, care 399
Maximum cooling 285
Maximum speed, winter tires 350
Medical supplies, see First-aid kit 390
Memory function 113
Messages, see Check Control 138
Messages, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Meters, see Instrument cluster 135
Microfilter, see Interior filter 290
Mild Hybrid technology 388
Minimum tread depth, tires 348

Mobile devices, connecting 58
Mobile phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Mobility system, see Tire repair set 364
MODE button, see Speed control systems 215
Modifications, technical, see For Your Own Safety 9
Moisture in headlight, see Headlight glass 386
Monitor, see Control display 48
Motorsport, see Driving on a race track 325
Mount for trailer hitch, care 328
Mounting of child restraint systems 116
MP3 player, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
M Sport differential 210
M suspension, adaptive, see Adaptive M suspension 272
Mug holder, front, see Cup holder, front 308
Mug holder, rear, see Cup holder, rear 309
Multifunction hook 313
Multi-function steering wheel 30
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 30
My BMW app, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

N

Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints, front 108
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints, rear 109
Net, cargo area 313
Neutral cleaner, light-alloy wheels, see Care 400
Notifications, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
No-touch opening and closing of the tailgate 86
No Turn on Red function 196
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 395

O

OBD, see Diagnostic socket 384
Obstacle marking, additional camera view displays 245
Octane number, see Gasoline quality 377
Odometer, see Trip data 149
OFF indicator, see Standby and drive-ready state 147
Off-road capability, see xOFFROAD package 276
Off-road driving, see Driving on poor roads 324
Oil filler neck 378
Oil, refilling 378
Oil service interval, see Service notifications 155
Oil types to add, engine 379
Old battery 388
On-board computer, see Trip data 149
On-board diagnosis, see Diagnostic socket 384
Onboard toolkit 385
One-touch signaling 156
Opening and closing 70
Opening and closing the cargo area 83
Opening and closing the tailgate 83
Opening with the smartphone, see BMW Digital Key 74
Operating fluids 376
Operating principle, see BMW iDrive 44
Operating state of vehicle 40
Operating system, see BMW iDrive 44
Operating temperature, see Engine temperature 147
Operation via voice 53
Optional equipment, see Vehicle equipment 8
Outside temperature 148
Overheating of the engine, see Engine temperature 147
Overwintering, see Long-term vehicle storage 384
Owner's Manual via voice operation, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 55

P

Paint, vehicle care 399
Paintwork 399
Panic alarm, see Panic mode 92
Panic mode 92
Panorama View 251

Panorama View, see Panorama View 251
Panoramic display, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Panoramic glass sunroof, see Glass sunroof 96
Park Distance Control 254
Parking 242
Parking aid lines, additional camera view displays 245
Parking assistance systems 242
Parking assistant 259
Parking Assistant Plus, see Parking assistance systems 242
Parking Assistant Professional, see Parking assistance systems 242
Parking Assistant, see Park Distance Control 254
Parking Assistant, see Parking assistance systems 242
Parking brake 130
Parking brake function, see Active Park Distance Control 257
Parking lights 159
Parking lock, see Engaging selector lever positions 124
Parking lock, see Selector lever positions 124
Parking with Automatic Hold 133
Particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 321
Parts and accessories 9
Pathway lighting 161
Pathway lighting, turning on 161
Payload 312
PDC, see Park Distance Control 254
Pedestrian protection, acoustic 172
Pedestrian Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation 173
Pennant 324
Pennant holder 324
Performance display, see Sport displays 154
Performing initialization 361
Personal Assistant 53
Personal data, deleting 64
Personal eSIM, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Personal hotspot, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Personal profile, see BMW ID 65
Personal settings 64
Physical units, see Setting units of measurement 153
Pillow for head restraints in the rear 110
Plastic parts, care 401
Pollutant emissions 384
Pop-up 47
PostCrash iBrake 204
Power Display, instrument cluster 146
Power failure 388
Power interruption 388
Power Meter, see Power Display 146
Power windows 93
Pre-conditioning through Remote Engine Start 295
PreCrash functions, see Active Protection 203
Pressure monitor, tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 353
Pressure, tires 342
Pressure warning, see Flat tire monitor 361
Pressure warning, see Tire Pressure Monitor 353
Pretensioning, seat belt 106
Pre-ventilation 294
Prevention of rear-end collision, see Rear-End Collision Preparation 192
Primary user, see BMW ID 67
Protective function, glass sunroof, see Anti-trap mechanism 98
Protective function, windows, see Anti-trap mechanism 95
Push-and-turn reel, see Controller 49

R

Race track 325
Radar sensors, see Vehicle sensors 35
Radiator fan, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 321
Radiator fluid 380
Radio information, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Radio stations, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Rain sensor 165
Rain sensor mode 165
READY indicator, see Standby and drive-ready state 147
Rear air conditioning 279
Rear carrier 334
Rear-End Collision Preparation 192
Rear light, replacing, see Bulbs and lights 386
Rear-mounted luggage rack, see Rear carrier 334
Rear-seat area ventilation 290
Rear seat backrests, folding down 314
Rear seat backrest tilt 106
Rear seats 105
Rear ventilation, third row of seats, ventilation, third row of seats 290
Rear View Camera 247
Rear View Camera, see Vehicle sensors 35
Rear-view mirror, exterior 111
Rear-wheel steering, see Integral Active Steering 212
Rear window defroster 287
Rear window wiper, operation 166
Rear wiper 166
Recirculated-air mode 285
Recirculating air filter, see Interior filter 290
Recommended gear, see Gearshift indicator 146
Recommended tire brands 350
Reduced drive power 146
Refueling 340
Release fuel filler flap, manual 341
Remote 3D View 253
Remote control, see Remote Control Parking 268
Remote control, see Vehicle key 70
Remote control, universal 298
Remote Engine Start, see Pre-conditioning 295
Remote parking 268
Remote services, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote Software Upgrade 60
Renewal, wheels and tires 349
Replacement, wheels and tires 349
Replacing bulbs, see Bulbs and lights 386
Replacing light-emitting diodes, see Bulbs and lights 386
Replacing parts 385
Replacing the battery, vehicle key 71
Reporting safety malfunctions 14
Reserve warning, see Range 153
Reservoir, washer fluid 381
Resetting, vehicle data 64
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor 355
Reset, vehicle settings 64
Restricted Driving, see BMW Digital Key 74
RESUME button, see Speed control systems 215
Retreaded tires 350
Reversing Assistant 269
Reversing Assistant Professional 269
Risk of collision when exiting 182
Roadside parking lights 160
Rollback Prevention, see Drive-off Assistant 130
Roller cover, electrical, see Cargo cover, electrical 317
Roller sunblinds, rear side windows 95
Rolling code hand-held transmitter 299
Rolling to a stop with engine decoupled, see Coasting 336
Roll stabilization, see Active roll stabilization 272
RON, see gasoline quality 377
Roof bars 325
Roofliner 34
Roof luggage rack, refer to Roof bars 325
Rope for tow-starting/towing 395
Rough roads 324
Route and Intersection Assistant, see Adjusting speed to route 240
Route, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
RSC, see Runflat tires 351
Rubber components, care 401
Runflat tires 351
Runflat tires, see Runflat tires 351

S

Safe braking 323
Safe Exit, see Exit Warning 182
Safe Share function, see BMW Digital Key 74
Safety 168
Safety and warning, see Collision warning systems 172
Safety locks, doors, and windows 120
Safety package, see Active Protection 203
Safety switch, windows 95
Safety systems, see Airbags 168
Safety systems, see Collision warning systems 172
Satellite radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Saved stations, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Screen, see BMW Curved Display 47
Screen, see Control display 48
Sealant, see Tire repair set 364
Seamless mode change, see Remote Control Parking 268
Seat and armrest heating 287
Seat belt reminder, see Seat belt warning 107
Seat belts 106
Seat belts, care 401
Seat belt warning 107
Seat calibration 104
Seat climate control 114
Seat heating 287
Seating position for children 115
Seat massage 103
Seats and head restraints 100
Seats, front 100
Seats, rear 105
Seat ventilation, active 288
Securing, cargo 312
Securing vehicle to prevent rolling away, see Parking brake 130
Selection list on the instrument cluster 145
Selector lever, see Automatic transmission 124
Semi-automatic camera perspective 248
Sensors, care 402
Service and warranty 10
Service notifications 155
Service notifications, see Condition Based Service 383
Servotronic 211
SET button, see Speed control systems 215
Setting the language, see Setting the system language 56
Setting the system language 56
Setting the time 152
Setting units of measurement 153
Shift lights 148
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 126
Shift point indicator, tachometer 148
Shortcuts, iDrive 47
Side airbag 168
Side Collision Protection 190
Side protection, see Automatic camera perspective 248
Side view 249
Signaling, horn 30
SIM Reader, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Sitting safely 100
Slipperiness, see Outside temperature 148
Slippery road, see Outside temperature 148
Smartphone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Smartphone, using via voice control 57
Snow chains 352
Socket for on-board diagnosis, see Diagnostic socket 384
Sockets, electrical devices 300
Soft-close automatic, doors 88
Soft-close automatic function 88
Software Update, see Remote Software Upgrade 60
Software Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade 60
Soot particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 321
SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call 391
Sound settings, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Sound system, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Spare tire, see Emergency wheel 367
Speaker lighting 164

Speed control systems 215
Speed Limit Assist 238
Speed Limit Assistant 238
Speed limit device, speed limiter, see Speed control systems 215
Speed limit, display, see Speed Limit Info with no-passing indicator 213
Speed limiter, manual, see Speed control systems 215
Speed Limit Info with no-passing indicator 213
Speed warning 213
Sport differential 210
Sport displays 154
Sport program, see Automatic transmission 124
SPORT, see Driving Experience Control 129
Sport suspension, see Adaptive M suspension 272
Sport suspension, see Adaptive M suspension Professional 272
Sprint function 128
Stability control systems 207
Standard equipment, see Vehicle equipment 8
Standby state, see Operating state of vehicle 40
Start/Stop, automatic, see Auto Start/Stop function 121
Start/Stop button 121
Starting aid terminals 393
Starting, see Vehicle operating state 40
Starting the engine, see Vehicle operating state 40
Starting the vehicle, see Start/Stop button 121
Stationary periods, see Deep sleep mode 41
Stations, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Status control display, tires 355
Status information, iDrive 45
Status of Owner's Manual 8
Status, vehicle 153
Steering column adjustment 112
Steering, see Integral Active Steering 212
Steering support, see Servotronic 211
Steering wheel, adjusting 112
Steering wheel, buttons 30
Steering wheel heating 288
Steptronic Sport transmission, see Automatic transmission 124
Steptronic transmission, see Automatic transmission 124
Storage compartment, cargo area 313
Storage compartment, center console 307
Storage compartments 306
Storage, tires 351
Store Mirror position, see Memory function 113
Store seat position, see Memory function 113
Store steering wheel position, see Memory function 113
Storing the vehicle 384
Stowage, cargo 312
Straps for cargo, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 312
Summer tires, tread 348
Sun visor 300
Supplementary documentation 7
Supplementary Owner's Manuals, see Supplementary documentation 7
Suspension 272
Suspension settings, see Driving Experience Control 129
Swinging of trailer, see Trailer stabilization control 333
Switches, see Dashboard 30
Switch for driving dynamics, see Driving Experience Control 129
Switching off the engine, see Vehicle operating state 40
SYNC program, Climate control 286

T

Tachometer 147
Tailgate, opening and closing with no-touch activation 86
Taillights, replacing, see Bulbs and lights 386
Taking the vehicle out of service 384
Technical changes, see For Your Own Safety 9
Technical data 404
Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Telephone, selection list in the instrument cluster 145

Teleservices, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Temperature, air conditioning system 283
Temperature display, see outside temperature 148
Terrain View, see BMW xDrive 209
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 91
Thigh support 102
Tilt alarm sensor 92
Tilt, backrest 101
Tilting down, front passenger's side exterior mirror, see Automatic Curb Monitor 112
Time settings, see Date and time 152
Time zone 152
Tire brands, recommendation 350
Tire change 349
Tire damage 348
Tire identification marks 346
Tire inflation pressure 342
Tire marking 346
Tire pressure 342
Tire Pressure Monitor 353
Tire pressure monitoring, see Tire Pressure Monitor 353
Tire Pressure Monitor, reset 355
Tire Pressure Monitor, see Flat tire monitor 361
Tire pressure, tires 342
Tire pressure warning, see Flat tire monitor 361
Tire repair set 364
Tires and wheels 342
Tire sealant, see Tire repair set 364
Tire settings 354
Tires, run-flat 351
Tire tread 348
Toggle, see Automatic transmission 124
Tools 385
Torque display, see Sport displays 154
Touchpad, Controller 51
Tow bar 395
Towing 393
Towing eye 395
Tow rope 395
Tow-starting 393
Traction Control 209
Traction control system, see Dynamic Stability Control 207
TRACTION, driving dynamics 209
Traction, see Dynamic Traction Control 209
Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Traffic Jam Assistant, Assisted Driving Mode Plus, see Speed control systems 215
Traffic Light And Sign Warning 193
Trailer angle, Trailer Assistant 331
Trailer Assistant 331
Trailer hitch, ball head, removable 328
Trailer hitch, care 328
Trailer hitch, mount for 328
Trailer hitch view 250
Trailer stabilization control 333
Trailer towing 327
Trailer towing, activation 330
Transporting children safely 115
Travel & Comfort System 303
Tread, tires 348
Trip data 149
Trip odometer, see Trip data 149
Trunk, see Cargo area 311
Tunnel car wash 397
Turn indicators, see Turn signals 156
Turning circle lines, additional camera view displays 245
Turning display, see No Turn on Red function 196
Turn signal, indicator light 143
Turn signal, replacing bulbs, see Bulbs and lights 386
Turn signals 156
Two-axle level control 273

U

Ultrasonic sensors, see Vehicle sensors 35
Unintended alarm, see Unintentional alarm, avoiding 92
Unintentional alarm, avoiding 92
Units, see Setting units of measurement 153
Universal remote control 298
Unlocking, see Opening and Closing 70
Unlocking, settings 89

Unlocking the transmission lock, electronic 126
Unpaved roads, see Driving on poor roads 324
Updates made after the editorial deadline 8
Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade 60
Upholstery material care 400
Upper backrest, front 102
Upper retaining strap, top tether 119
USB audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
USB connection 301
USB port, position in vehicle 301
Used battery, disposing of 388
Use, intended 9
User, see BMW ID 65
Using menus, see BMW iDrive 44

V

Valet parking mode 88
Vanity mirror 300
Variable steering, see Integral Active Steering 212
Vehicle battery 386
Vehicle breakdown, see Breakdown assistance 390
Vehicle care 399
Vehicle care products 399
Vehicle data, resetting 64
Vehicle equipment 8
Vehicle identification number 13
Vehicle issues 390
Vehicle key 70
Vehicle key, additional 70
Vehicle key, loss 70
Vehicle paint, care 399
Vehicle paintwork 399
Vehicle rolling away, see Parking brake 130
Vehicle sensors 35
Vehicle starting, see Start/Stop button 121
Vehicle status 153
Vehicle storage 384
Ventilation 289
Ventilation, see Pre-ventilation 294
Venting, see Ventilation 289
Version Software, see Remote Software Upgrade 60
Video recording, see BMW Drive Recorder 200
Video, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
VIN, see Vehicle identification number 13
Voice activation system 53
Voice control 53
Voice control, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 53
Voice recognition 53
Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

W

Wake word 54
Warning for crossing traffic 198
Warning function for incorrect driving direction, see Wrong Way Warning 195
Warning function for oncoming traffic, see Forward Collision Mitigation 173
Warning function, rear-end collision 192
Warning light in exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection 188
Warning light in exterior mirror, see Cross Traffic Warning 198
Warning lights 139
Warning messages, see Check Control 138
Warning systems for collision hazards 172
Warning triangle 390
Warning when exiting 182
Warning when opening doors, see Exit Warning 182
Warranty 9
Warranty Booklet, see Warranty 9
Washer fluid 381
Washer nozzles, windshield 166
Washing the vehicle 397
Washing, vehicle 397
Water on road 322
Water, see Condensation water under the parked vehicle 324
Website, see Internet 7
Welcome Light Carpet, see Welcome light 160
Welcome lights 160
Welcome screen, driver profiles 65
Wheel change 368

Wheels and tires 342
Wheels and tires, exchange 349
Widgets, iDrive 45
Widgets, instrument cluster, see Central display area 149
Wi-Fi connection, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Wind deflector, defrosting 286
Wind deflector, removing condensation 286
Window, defrosting 286
Windows, powered 93
Windshield cleaning system, see Wiper system 164
Windshield, defrosting 286
Windshield, removing condensation 286
Windshield washer fluid, see Washer fluid 381
Windshield washer nozzles 166
Windshield wipers, see Wiper system 164
Winter storage, see Long-term vehicle storage 384
Winter tires 350
Winter tires, tread 348
Wiper blades, replacing 385
Wiper fluid, see Washer fluid 381
Wiper, fold-away position 166
Wipers, see Wiper system 164
Wiper system 164
Wireless charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 304
Wireless charging tray for smartphones 304
Wood parts, care 401
Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison 46
Wrong Way Warning 195

X

xDrive 209
xOFFROAD package 276

Y

Yield warning 193

01405B64677 ue

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B64677 - II/25

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California:

California Proposition 65 Warning

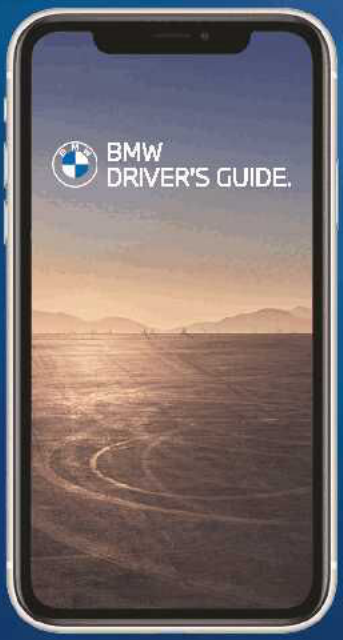
WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

BMW DRIVER'S GUIDE APP.

YOUR DIGITAL VEHICLE INFORMATION.

The BMW Driver's Guide app explains the equipment of your vehicle and offers further scopes and functions:



- All information surrounding navigation, entertainment and communication
- Photorealistic animations for various vehicle functions
- Keyword search
- 360° view: Explore your vehicle interactively inside and out
- Smart Scan for Apple iPhone: Icon and optical character recognition on the buttons in the vehicle
- Available in more than 30 languages
- Can be used offline after download

01405B64677 ue

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B64677 - II/25